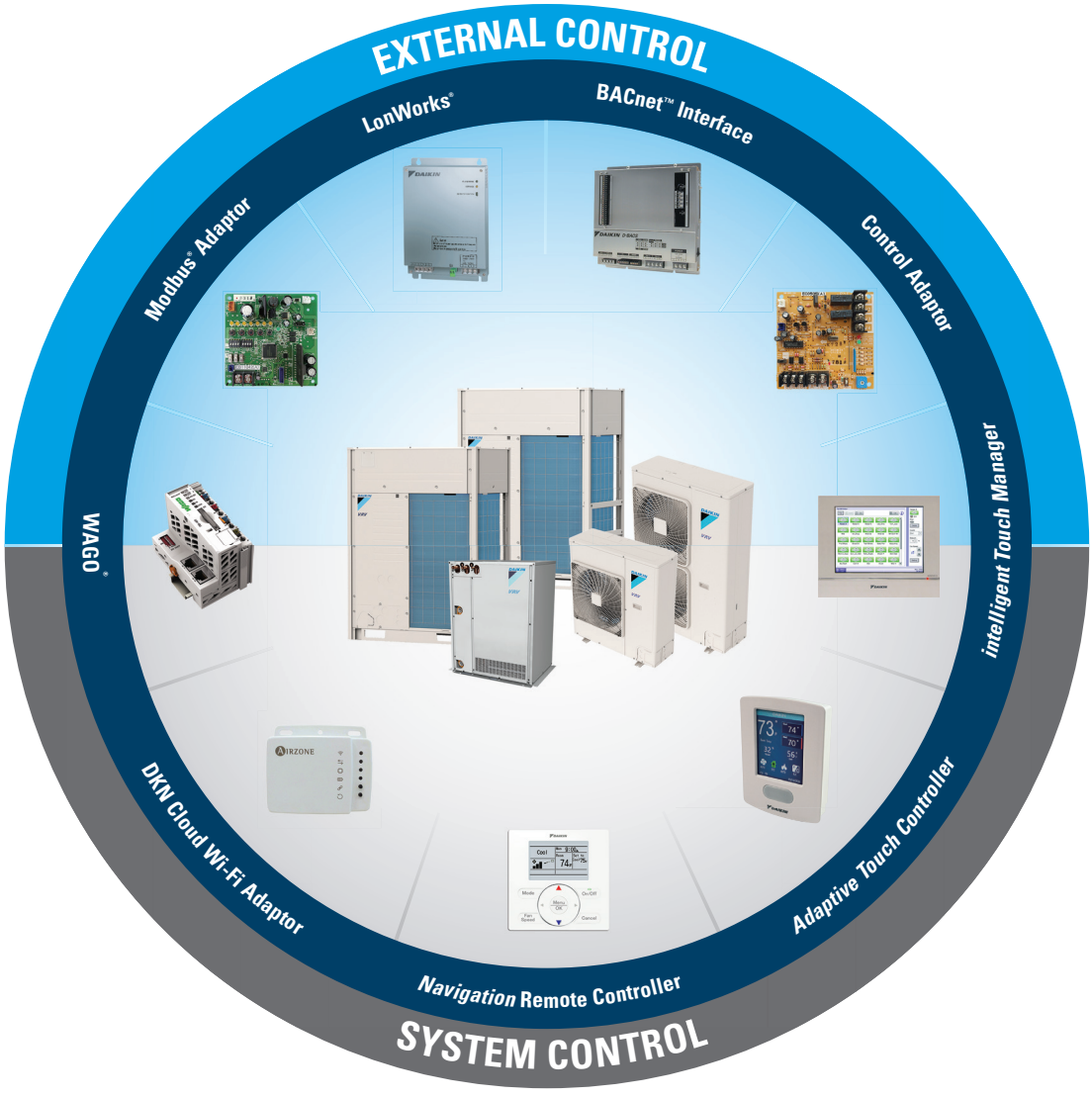
DAIKIN

EDUS721909B-T
202403

Engineering Data



Controls

R-410A

VRV

Controls

1. Control Systems

1.1 Optional Accessories of Operation Control System

No.	Item	FXFQ-AAVJU	FXFQ-TVJU	FXZQ-TBVJU	FXZQ-TAVJU	FXUQ-PAVJU	FXUQ-PVJU
1	Navigation Remote Controller	BRC1E73		BRC1E73		BRC1E73	
2	DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor	AZAI6WSCDKA		AZAI6WSCDKA		AZAI6WSCDKA	
3	Wireless Remote Controller	—		BRC082A42W BRC082A41W	BRC082A42W BRC082A42S BRC082A41W	—	
4	Remote sensor	KRCS01-5B	KRCS01-4B	KRCS01-6B	KRCS01-4B	KRCS01-6B (Note 4)	KRCS01-4B (Note 4)
5	Installation Box for Adaptor PCB	KRP1J98A KRP1H98A (Note 2, 3)		KRP1BB101		KRP1BA97	
6	External control adaptor for outdoor unit	DTA104A62*		—		—	
7	DIII-NET expander adaptor	DTA109A51		DTA109A51		DTA109A51	
8	Wiring adaptor PCB	KRP1C77*	KRP1C75*	KRC1C77*	KRC1C75*	—	
9	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)	KRP4A74*		KRP4A74*		KRP4A74*	
10	PCB adaptor for humidifier	—		—		—	
11	Sensor unit (Sensor kit)	—		BRYQ60AAW	BRYQ60A2W BRYQ60A2S	BRE49B2F (Note 4)	BRE49B1F (Note 4)
12	Adaptor for multi tenant	DTA114A61-9* (Note 5)	DTA114A61-9*	—		—	—
13	Madoka Wired Remote Controller	BRC1H71W		BRC1H71W		BRC1H71W	
14	Daikin One+ Smart Thermostat	DTST-ONE-ADA-A		DTST-ONE-ADA-A		DTST-ONE-ADA-A	
15	Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat	DTST-TOU-ADA-A		DTST-TOU-ADA-A		DTST-TOU-ADA-A	
16	Adaptive Touch Controller	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01		BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01		BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	
17	DKN Plus Interface	AZAI6WSPDKC		AZAI6WSPDKC		AZAI6WSPDKC	
18	Button Sensor Kit	KRCSH2018-01		KRCSH2018-01		KRCSH2018-01	
Drawing No.		C: 3D141051B	C: 3D086933C	C: 4D137353A	C: 4D110595	C: 3D133251	C: 3D090253A

Note:

1. Adaptors with * required installation box (No.5).
2. Up to two adaptors can be fixed for each installation box.
3. Only one installation box can be installed to each indoor unit.
4. The remote sensor cannot be installed when applying the Sensor unit (Sensor kit).
5. A separate long relay harness for connecting Adaptor for multi tenant is required. (DNA local option)

No.	Item	FXEQ-PVJU	FXDQ-MVJU	FXSQ-TBVJU	FXSQ-TAVJU	FXMQ-TBVJU	FXMQ-PBVJU
1	Navigation Remote Controller	BRC1E73	BRC1E73	BRC1E73		BRC1E73	
2	DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor	AZAI6WSCDKA	AZAI6WSCDKA	AZAI6WSCDKA		AZAI6WSCDKA	
3	Wireless Remote Controller	—	BRC4C82	BRC082A43		BRC082A43	
4	Remote sensor	KRCS01-4B	KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-6B	KRCS01-4B	KRCS01-6B	KRCS01-4B
5	Installation Box for Adaptor PCB	KRP1BB101	KRP1BB101	KRP4A98 (Note 2, 3)		KRP4A98 (Note 2, 3)	KRP4A96 (Note 2, 3)
6	External control adaptor for outdoor unit	—	DTA104A53*	DTA104A61*	—	DTA104A61*	
7	DIII-NET expander adaptor	DTA109A51	DTA109A51	DTA109A51		DTA109A51	
8	Wiring adaptor PCB	KRP1C75*	KRP1C75*	KRP1C76*	KRP1C74*	KRP1C76*	KRP1C74*
9	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)	KRP4A74*	KRP4A74*	KRP4A71*		KRP4A71*	
10	PCB adaptor for humidifier	—	—	—		—	—
11	Sensor unit (Sensor kit)	—	—	—		—	—
12	Adaptor for multi tenant	—	—	DTA114A61-9*	—	DTA114A61-9*	
13	Madoka Wired Remote Controller	BRC1H71W	BRC1H71W	BRC1H71W		BRC1H71W	
14	Daikin One+ Smart Thermostat	DTST-ONE-ADA-A	DTST-ONE-ADA-A	DTST-ONE-ADA-A		DTST-ONE-ADA-A	
15	Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat	DTST-TOU-ADA-A	DTST-TOU-ADA-A	DTST-TOU-ADA-A		DTST-TOU-ADA-A	
16	Adaptive Touch Controller	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01		BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	
17	DKN Plus Interface	AZAI6WSPDKC	AZAI6WSPDKC	AZAI6WSPDKC		AZAI6WSPDKC	
18	Button Sensor Kit	KRCSH2018-01	KRCSH2018-01	KRCSH2018-01		KRCSH2018-01	
Drawing No.		C: 3D098723	C: 3D043022H	C: 3D140718B	C: 3D112077	C: 3D140813B	C: 3D068551B

No.	Item	FXMQ-MVJU	FXHQ-MVJU	FXAQ-PVJU	FXLQ-MVJU9	FXNQ-MVJU9
1	Navigation Remote Controller	BRC1E73	BRC1E73	BRC1E73	BRC1E73	BRC1E73
2	DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor	AZAI6WSCDKA	AZAI6WSCDKA	AZAI6WSCDKA	AZAI6WSCDKA	AZAI6WSCDKA
3	Wireless Remote Controller	BRC4C82	BRC7E83	BRC7E818	BRC4C82	BRC4C82
4	Remote sensor	KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-1B
5	Installation Box for Adaptor PCB	—	KRP1C93	—	—	—
6	External control adaptor for outdoor unit	DTA104A61	DTA104A62*	—	DTA104A61	DTA104A61
7	DIII-NET expander adaptor	DTA109A51	DTA109A51	DTA109A51	DTA109A51	DTA109A51
8	Wiring adaptor PCB	KRP1C74	KRP1C74*	—	KRP1C74	KRP1C74
9	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)	KRP4A71	KRP4A72*	KRP4A71	KRP4A71	KRP4A71
10	PCB adaptor for humidifier	—	—	—	—	—
11	Sensor unit (Sensor kit)	—	—	—	—	—
12	Adaptor for multi tenant	—	—	DTA114A61-9	—	—
13	Madoka Wired Remote Controller	BRC1H71W	BRC1H71W	BRC1H71W	BRC1H71W	BRC1H71W
14	Daikin One+ Smart Thermostat	DTST-ONE-ADA-A	DTST-ONE-ADA-A	DTST-ONE-ADA-A	DTST-ONE-ADA-A	DTST-ONE-ADA-A
15	Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat	DTST-TOU-ADA-A	DTST-TOU-ADA-A	DTST-TOU-ADA-A	DTST-TOU-ADA-A	DTST-TOU-ADA-A
16	Adaptive Touch Controller	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01
17	DKN Plus Interface	AZAI6WSPDKC	AZAI6WSPDKC	AZAI6WSPDKC	AZAI6WSPDKC	AZAI6WSPDKC
18	Button Sensor Kit	KRCSH2018-01	KRCSH2018-01	KRCSH2018-01	KRCSH2018-01	KRCSH2018-01
Drawing No.		C: 3D043022H	C: 3D043022H	C: 3D043022H	C: 3D094932	C: 3D094932

Note:

1. Adaptors with * required installation box (No.5).
2. Up to two adaptors can be fixed for each installation box.
3. Only one installation box can be installed to each indoor unit.
4. The remote sensor cannot be installed when applying the Sensor unit (Sensor kit).
5. A separate long relay harness for connecting Adaptor for multi tenant is required. (DNA local option)

No.	Item	FXTQ-TBVJUA FXTQ-TBVJUD	FXTQ-TAVJUA FXTQ-TAVJUD	CXTQ	VAM-GVJU		FXMQ-MFVJU
					300/470/600	1200	
1	Navigation Remote Controller	BRC1E73		BRC1E73	BRC1E73		BRC1E73
2	DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor	AZAI6WSCDKA		AZAI6WSCDKA	—		—
3	Wireless Remote Controller	—		BRC4C82	—		BRC4C82
4	Remote sensor	KRCS01-2UA		KRCS01-2UA	—		KRCS01-1B
5	Installation Box for Adaptor PCB	KRP1BB101		KRP1BB101	KRP50-2A90	—	—
6	External control adaptor for outdoor unit	DTA104A53*		DTA104A53*	—		DTA104A61
7	DIII-NET expander adaptor	DTA109A51		DTA109A51	—		DTA109A51
8	Wiring adaptor PCB	KRP1C75*		KRP1C75*	—		KRP1C74
9	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)	KRP4A74*		KRP4A74*	KRP4A72		KRP4A71
10	PCB adaptor for humidifier	—		—	KRP50-2		—
11	Sensor unit (Sensor kit)	—		—	—		—
12	Adaptor for multi tenant	DTA114A61-9*		—	—		—
13	Madoka Wired Remote Controller	BRC1H71W		BRC1H71W	BRC1H71W		BRC1H71W
14	Daikin One+ Smart Thermostat	DTST-ONE-ADA-A		DTST-ONE-ADA-A	—		DTST-ONE-ADA-A
15	Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat	DTST-TOU-ADA-A		DTST-TOU-ADA-A	—		DTST-TOU-ADA-A
16	Adaptive Touch Controller	BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01		BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	—		BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01
17	DKN Plus Interface	AZAI6WSPDKC		AZAI6WSPDKC	—		AZAI6WSPDKC
18	Button Sensor Kit	KRCSH2018-01		KRCSH2018-01	—		KRCSH2018-01
Drawing No.		—		—	C: 3D073395A		C: 3D043022H

Note:

1. Adaptors with * required installation box (No.5).
2. Up to two adaptors can be fixed for each installation box.
3. Only one installation box can be installed to each indoor unit.
4. The remote sensor cannot be installed when applying the Sensor unit (Sensor kit).
5. A separate long relay harness for connecting Adaptor for multi tenant is required. (DNA local option)

1.2 Individual Control Systems

1.2.1 Navigation Remote Controller (wired) (Optional) BRC1E73

Navigation Remote Controller

– Selectable Screen Display
3 types of displays are available; Standard, Detailed and Simple.

– Clear Display
Equipped with backlight and large sized character display and buttons.

– Stylish
Basic tone is white and arrow keys are located at the center.

– Simple Operation
Simple operation used with arrow keys and menu-driven method.

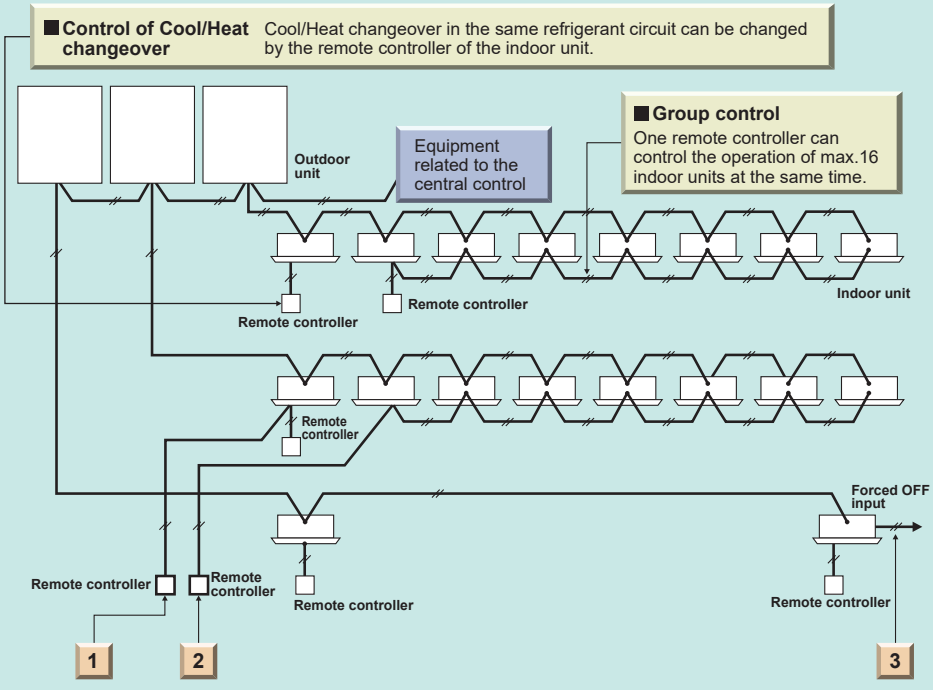
– Multilingual Display
3 languages available to select: English, French and Spanish.

– Convenient Features
Schedule function and Daylight Saving Time function.

– Face Decal Options
Hides unnecessary (locked/prohibited) buttons.

Used with	Single Setpoint mode			Dual Setpoint mode		
	BRC1E72RMF	BRC1E72RF	BRC1E72RM	BRC1E72RMF2	BRC1E72RF2	BRC1E72RM2
Model						

The Navigation Remote Controllers supports a wide range of control functions



1 Control by two remote controllers

The indoor unit can be connected with two remote controllers, for example one in the room and the other one in the control room, which can control the operation of indoor unit freely.
(The last command has a priority.)

2 Remote control

The wiring of remote controller can be extended to max.1640 ft. (500 m) and it is possible to install the remote controllers for different indoor units in one place.

3 Expansion of system control

The system can be expanded to add several controllers, such as BMS, Forced OFF input and etc.

1.2.2 Madoka Wired Remote Controller (wired) (optional) BRC1H71W

Madoka Remote Controller

– Sleek Stylish Design
Much like the perfection of its circular shape, the remote controller gives you perfect control over your individual climate.

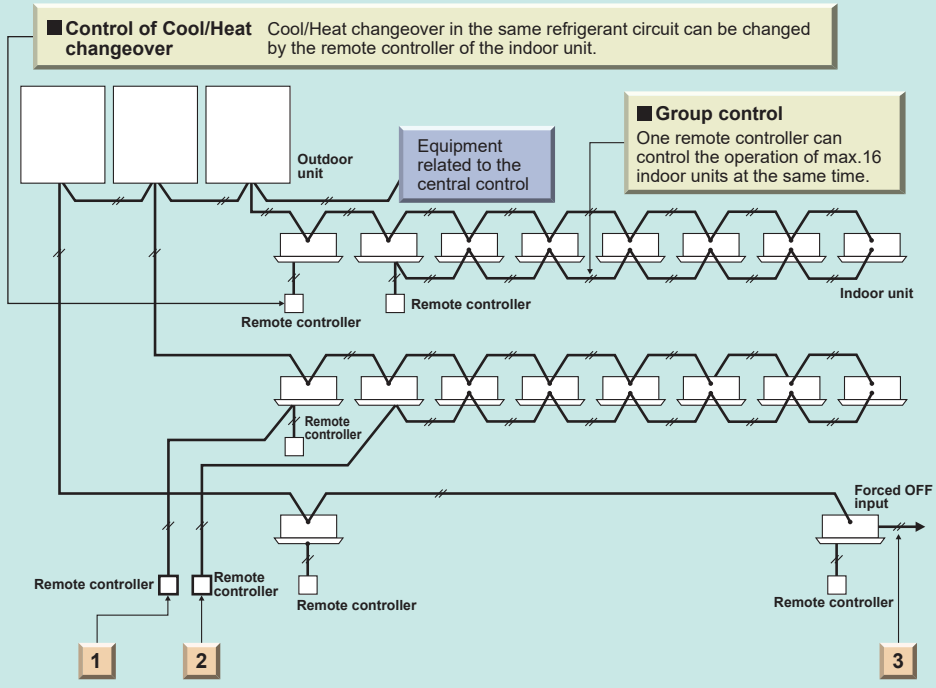
– Simple Interface
The remote controller combines functionality and simplicity.
The minimalistic touch button control enlarges the display and makes the remote controller easy to use.

– The Madoka Quick Set APP for Installer
Simplifies the advanced settings such as field settings and the controller configuration via Daikin's Bluetooth® furnace connectivity.

– Shorter and Easier Installation
The application connected to this controller provides 2 modes, Owner / Administrator mode and Installer mode (no end-user mode).

– Display
Provides 3 selectable options for the display view: Text, Icon and Scale.

The Madoka Remote Controllers supports a wide range of control functions



1 Control by two remote controllers
The indoor unit can be connected with two remote controllers, for example one in the room and the other one in the control room, which can control the operation of indoor unit freely.
(The last command has a priority.)

2 Remote control
The wiring of remote controller can be extended to max.1640 ft. (500 m) and it is possible to install the remote controllers for different indoor units in one place.

3 Expansion of system control
The system can be expanded to add several controllers, such as BMS, Forced OFF input and etc.

1.2.3 Wireless Remote Controller (Optional) BRC4C/BRC7E Type

Wireless Remote Controller


Signal receiver unit
(Separate type)

– ON/OFF operation
– Temperature setting
– Change of operation mode
– Airflow setting
– A compact light receiving unit to be mounted into a wall or ceiling is included.
  • A light receiving unit for ceiling-suspended type and wall-mounted type is mounted into the indoor unit.

1.2.4 Daikin One+ Smart Thermostat DTST-ONE-ADA-A

DAIKIN

ONE ECOSYSTEM

DAIKIN *ONE+*
SMART THERMOSTAT

The first smart thermostat to offer full two-way communications with Daikin communicating HVAC systems

The Daikin *One+* smart thermostat is an intelligent home air controller from the world's leading heating, ventilating, and air conditioning (HVAC) manufacturer. It is a cloud-connected hub of sophistication, integrated for controlling temperature, humidity, and air quality.

1 **The high-resolution color touch screen display** is protected by the same toughened glass used in smart phones.

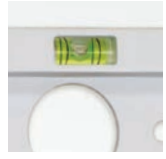
A number of screen savers are available, including this analog clock.

2 **The anodized aluminum bezel and dial** are precision manufactured. The surfaces have a fine bead blast with a warm hued anodized finish. The dial rotation is extraordinarily smooth because it rests on a bearing assembly typically found in precision instruments. A switch behind the dial enables users to return to the home screen from any menu with a single tap.

Turning the dial changes the temperature set-point.

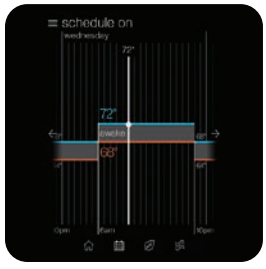
3 **An integrated WiFi radio** connects to the internet (via a home router) to the cloud and on to the homeowner's mobile application. The Daikin cloud will also seamlessly integrate with open smart home architectures, including *Amazon Alexa* and *Google Assistant*, enabling consumers to effortlessly use features such as voice control.

4 **A thin LED light bar** sits flush within the bottom surface and runs from edge to edge, delicately illuminating the wall beneath. Emitting a soft emotive glow, the light bar indicates the current system mode: red-orange for heating, blue for cooling.



5 **Built-in bubble level** aids professional installation.

The **home screen** displays the current temperature, the current system mode, and adjustment slider, as well as icons leading to the top level screens.



The **schedule screen** displays upcoming set-point changes and scheduled times. It also offers access to edit mode, where you can adjust the schedule.

The **away screen** displays energy saving set-points. Energy saving can be invoked manually or automatically when the mobile app recognizes everyone is away.

The **air quality screen*** displays indoor air quality levels when a Daikin *One* home air monitor is connected. Outdoor air quality and weather will be displayed when connected to the internet and thermostat added in the mobile app under home location.

*Actual screen may vary for different indoor unit models. The Daikin *One* home air monitor only works with ducted units.

The One for Connectivity

The Daikin *One+* smart thermostat is a cloud-connected hub of sophistication, designed for controlling temperature, humidity, and air quality. With a variety of connectivity options, there's a comfort solution for every project and customer.

EQUIPMENT COMPATIBILITY:

Equipment Type	Equipment Part Number	Compatible Model
Air Conditioners	DX20VC, DX18TC, Daikin *Fit* (DX17VSS), DX16TC	DTST-CWBSA-NI-A
Heat Pumps	Daikin *Fit* (DZ17VSA), DZ20VC, DZ18VC, DZ18TC, DZ16TC	DTST-CWBSA-NI-A
Gas Furnaces	DM97MC, DC97MC, DM96VC, DC96VC, DM96SC, DM80VC, DC80VC, DM80SC	DTST-CWBSA-NI-A
Air Handlers	DVFEC, DVPEC, DVPTC, MBVC	DTST-CWBSA-NI-A
Single & Multi-Zone (S21)	CDXS, CTXS, FDXS, FTK_N, FTX_N, FTX_U, FTXG*, FTXR, FTXS, FVXS, FDMQ, FFQ	DTST-ONE-ADA-A
Single & Multi-Zone (P1P2)	FDMQ, FFQ	DTST-ONE-ADA-A
VRV & *VRV LIFE* (P1P2)	CXTQ, FXAQ, FXDQ, FXEQ, FXFQ, FXHQ, FXLQ, FXMQ, FXNQ, FXSQ, FXTQ, FXUQ, FXZQ	DTST-ONE-ADA-A
SkyAir (P1P2)	FAQ, FBQ, FTQ, FCQ, FHQ	DTST-ONE-ADA-A
Indoor Air Quality	Daikin *One* Home Air Monitor (Only compatible with ducted units)	DTST-CWBSA-NI-A, DTST-ONE-ADA-A

*The Sarara drying function of the *QUATERNITY* units is not supported with Daikin *One+* smart thermostat, but the dehumidification function of the Daikin *One+* can be used with the *QUATERNITY* indoor units.

DAIKIN *ONE+* SMART THERMOSTAT SPECIFICATIONS:

Model Number	DTST-CWBSA-NI-A/DTST-ONE-ADA-A
Description	Daikin *One+* Smart Thermostat
Dimensions	6.8" x 3.4" x 0.8"
Weight	10.5 oz
Operation Temperature	32°F to 120°F
Thermostat Compliance	Compliant to California Title 24 (OCST listed), FCC Certified (Adapter FCC Part 15 subpart B), UL Listed

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Before purchasing this appliance, read important information about its estimated annual energy consumption, yearly operating cost, or energy efficiency rating that is available from your retailer.

Control is available through popular voice-activated speakers.

JUST ASK alexa

works with the Google Assistant

TO LEARN MORE ABOUT THE DAIKIN *ONE+* SMART THERMOSTAT, SCAN CODE OR VISIT:
www.daikincomfort.com/go/daikinone/

THE DAIKIN *ONE+* SMART THERMOSTAT IS BACKED BY AN OUTSTANDING 12-YEAR[1] LIMITED WARRANTY*

* Complete warranty details available from your local dealer/contractor or at www.daikincomfort.com. To receive the 12-Year Limited Warranty, online registration must be completed within 60 days of installation. Online registration is not required in California or Québec.

[1] 12-Year Limited Warranty is available for owner-occupied residences only. For non-owner-occupied residences, the warranty period is 10-years. For multi-family and/or commercial applications, the warranty period is 5-years.

PF-ONE+ST_11-21

1.2.5 Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat DTST-TOU-ADA-A

DAIKIN

ONE ECOSYSTEM

DAIKIN *ONE* TOUCH
SMART THERMOSTAT

Say hello to the Daikin *One* touch smart thermostat.

The Daikin *One* touch smart thermostat is the newest addition to the Daikin *One* ecosystem line of products, joining the Daikin *One*+ smart thermostat as a control solution for Daikin's communicating unitary equipment, including Daikin *Fit*.

With customizable settings and the power to wirelessly control heating and cooling from anywhere, homeowners may never want to change their thermostat manually again. However, the touchscreen interface supports a user-friendly experience when they do. Additionally, voice control is possible with compatible Amazon and Google devices. Plus, every Daikin *One* touch includes one year of Daikin *One* cloud services at no added cost, allowing contractors to support their customers' systems remotely and offer homeowners additional peace of mind!

Features:

- Simple, elegant industrial design
- Capacitive touchscreen user interface
- Wi-Fi-enabled smart thermostat with iOS and Android app control
- Voice control by Amazon Alexa and Google Assistant
- Control and comfort functions: Away mode, geo-fencing
- Outdoor environment monitoring: outdoor temperature, outdoor humidity, and weather forecast
- Compatible with Daikin *One* home air monitor for IAQ visualization
- Error and service notifications
- Multi-language support: English, Spanish, and French
- Programmable 4-event schedule with adjustable hold function
- Compatible with Daikin *One* cloud services

First year of Daikin *One* cloud services included with purchase. Ask your Daikin contractor for more information!

The **home screen** displays the current temperature, the system mode, a set-point adjustment slider, and icons leading to the other top-level screens.

The **schedule screen** displays upcoming set-point changes and their scheduled times, and access to edit mode for changing the schedule events.

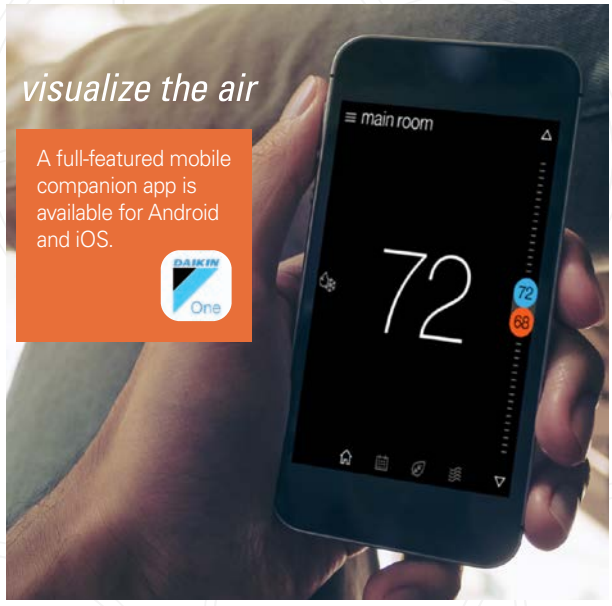
The **away screen** displays energy saving set-points. Away mode can be selected manually or entered automatically using geo-fencing in the Daikin *One* home app.

The **air quality screen*** displays indoor air quality levels when a Daikin *One* home air monitor is connected. Outdoor air quality and weather will be displayed when the thermostat is connected to the internet and added to the mobile app.

*Actual screen may vary for different indoor unit models. The Daikin *One* home air monitor only works with ducted units.

Additional Features

- Over-the-air software update capable (requires Wi-Fi connection)
- 1 Auxiliary output (dry contact), configurable as a humidifier, dehumidifier, or primary or secondary heat source
- Open API compatible for home control systems such as Control4 and Crestron
- Title 24 compliant
- This model (DTST-TOU-A) is a base version for use with Daikin unitary systems.



EQUIPMENT COMPATIBILITY:

Equipment Type	Equipment Part Number	Compatible Model
Air Conditioners	Daikin *Fit* (DX17VSS & DX6VS), DX9VC, DX7TC	DTST-TOU-A
Heat Pumps	Daikin *Fit* (DZ17VSA & DZ6VS), DZ9VC, DZ7TC	DTST-TOU-A
Gas Furnaces	DM97MC, DC97MC, DM96VC, DC96VC, DM80VC, DC80VC, DM96SC-U, and DM80SC-U	DTST-TOU-A
Air Handlers	DFVE, DMVE, DMVT, MBVC	DTST-TOU-A
Indoor Air Quality Daikin *One* home air monitor (Only compatible with ducted units)	DESEN-HAQA	DTST-TOU-A

DAIKIN *ONE* TOUCH SMART THERMOSTAT SPECIFICATIONS:

Model Number	DTST-TOU-A
Description	Daikin *One* touch smart thermostat
Dimensions	0.86"L x 3.4"W x 4.74"H
Weight	6.5 oz
Operation Temperature	32°F to 120°F
Thermostat Compliance	Compliant to California Title 24 (OCST listed), FCC Certified, and UL Listed.

Control is available through popular voice-activated speakers.

JUST ASK alexa

works with the Google Assistant

TO LEARN MORE ABOUT THE DAIKIN *ONE* TOUCH SMART THERMOSTAT, SCAN CODE OR VISIT:
www.daikinone.com

12 YEAR LIMITED WARRANTY*

THE DAIKIN *ONE* TOUCH SMART THERMOSTAT IS BACKED BY AN OUTSTANDING 12-YEAR[1] LIMITED WARRANTY*

* Complete warranty details available from your local dealer/contractor or at www.daikincomfort.com. To receive the 12-Year Limited Warranty, online registration must be completed within 60 days of installation. Online registration is not required in California or Québec. The duration of warranty coverages in Texas differs in some cases.

[1] 12-Year Limited Warranty is available for owner-occupied residences only. For non-owner-occupied residences, the warranty period is 10-years. For multi-family and/or commercial applications, the warranty period is 5-years.

DAIKIN

PF-ONETOUCH_10-22

1.2.6 Adaptive Touch Controller BACRC-T-P01/ BACRC-TH-P01/ BACRC-THO-P01/ BACRC-THOC-P01

DAIKIN
AIR INTELLIGENCE

Daikin *Adaptive Touch Controller (ATC)*

Advanced and Configurable Control Logic

The Daikin *Adaptive Touch Controller (ATC)* is used to control *VRV*, *SkyAir,* Single and Multi-Zone systems (P1P2) with advanced and configurable control logic. The *ATC* comes in 4 different models with a built-in temperature sensor, humidity sensor, CO_2 sensor, and occupancy sensor. The *ATC* will also provide analog input, analog output, digital input, and digital output terminals to monitor auxiliary sensors and control auxiliary equipment. The built-in sensors can be combined with advanced logic to create actionable tasks based upon the sensor values. The *ATC* controller can be integrated with a compatible building management system (BMS) using BACnet™ MS/TP.

Indoor Unit	Models
BACRC-T-P01	*ATC* with Temperature Sensor
BACRC-TH-P01	*ATC* with Temperature/Humidity Sensor
BACRC-THO-P01	*ATC* with Temperature/Humidity/Occupancy Sensor
BACRC-THOC-P01	*ATC* with Temperature/Humidity/Occupancy/CO_2 Sensor

BACRC-T-P01
BACRC-TH-P01

BACRC-THO-P01
BACRC-THOC-P01

Features

» Color LCD touchscreen

» Available with four different built-in sensor combinations including temperature, humidity, CO_2, and occupancy sensors

» Basic indoor unit control and monitoring:
- — On/Off
- — Mode (Cool, Heat, Fan, Dry, Auto)
- — Set-point
- — Room temperature (°C/°F)
- — Humidity (%)*
- — CO_2 (ppm)*
- — Occupancy sensor*
- — Fan speed
- — Louver position
- — Alarm status and error code
- — Dirty filter indicator
- — Changeover master identification

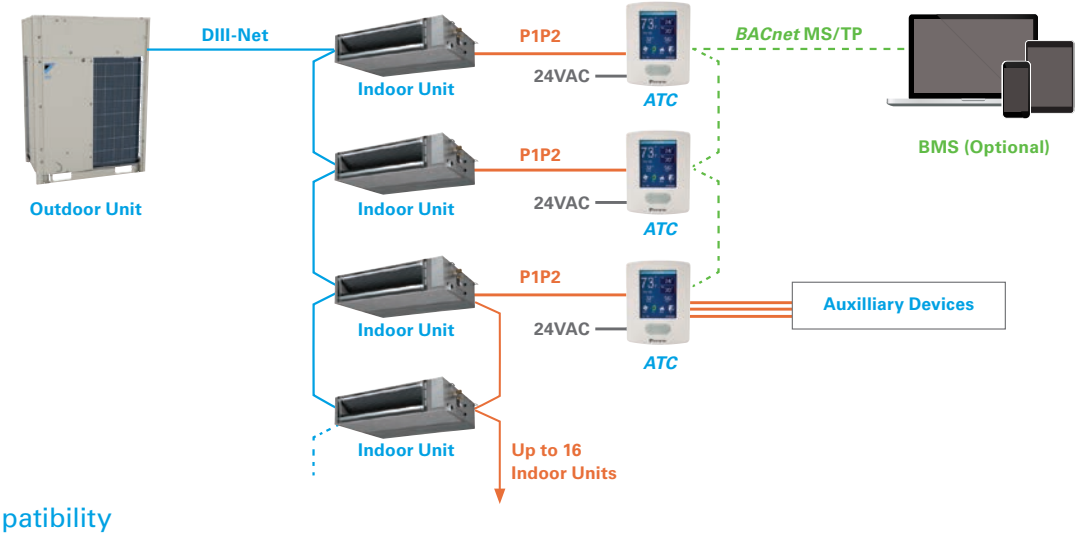
» Integration to a compatible building management system (BMS) using the BACnet™ MS/TP.
- — Control and monitor the *ATC* operation using the various *BACnet* objects.
- — Indoor unit operation data *BACnet* points

» Indoor unit control logic:
- — Auto changeover logic with guard timer
- — Dual/Single temperature set-point (°C/°F)
- — Set-point range limitation
- — Setback set-points control
- — Target humidity set-point used to manage humidity via the indoor unit dry mode, over cool logic or external humidifier/dehumidifier*
- — Target CO_2 set-point used to control external equipment via the *ATC* auxiliary output*
- — Schedule
- — Configurable occupancy sensor logic*

» Advanced and configurable inputs and outputs:
- — Aux heater control: primary/secondary/emergency heat
- — Interlock through digital and analog outputs: heating stage 1, heating stage 2, cooling thermo-on, heating thermo-on, fan on/off, unit on/off, alarm status, CO_2 alarm, occupancy sensor, and humidifier/dehumidifier control

* Depends on *ATC* model

System Overview



Compatibility

Indoor Unit Family	Model Number
VRV* and *VRV LIFE	CXTQ, FXAQ, FXDQ, FXEQ, FXFQ, FXHQ, FXLQ, FXMQ, FXNQ, FXSQ, FXTQ, FXUQ, FXZQ
SkyAir	FAQ, FBQ, FTQ, FCQ, FHQ
Single and Multi-Zone	FDMQ, FFQ

To learn more about the *Adaptive Touch Controller (ATC)*, contact your local sales representative, visit www.daikincity.com and/or www.daikinac.com.

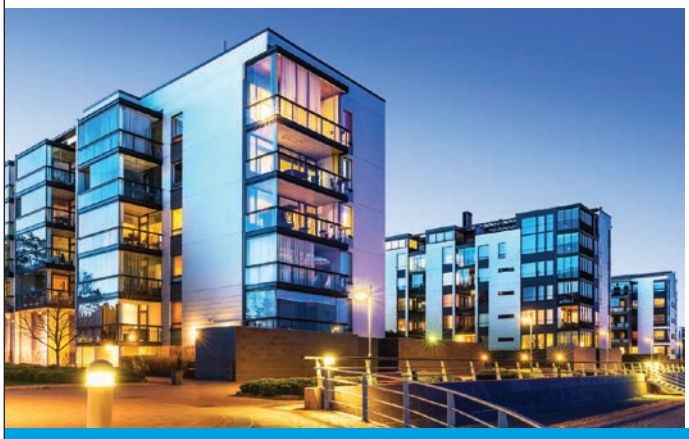
BACnet™ is a trademark of ASHRAE.

PF-ATC 09-20

1.2.7 DKN Plus Interface AZAI6WSPDKC

DAIKIN
AIR INTELLIGENCE

DKN Plus Interface



Energy-Efficient Control

The DKN Plus Interface (AZAI6WSPDKC) enables the energy-efficient control of Daikin air conditioners by a third-party thermostat or an automation system. With this interface, third-party devices or systems can control the *VRV, SkyAir*, and Daikin Single/Multi-Zone indoor units through Cloud API, Modbus®, BACnet™ MS/TP, or thermostat relay contacts. This interface can be commissioned with ease through the DKN Cloud North America (NA) app via Bluetooth® Low Energy (BLE).

NORTH AMERICA

Features

» Versatile interface adaptor that can integrate with a third-party thermostat/BMS through multiple approaches:
  — Cloud API
  — *Modbus*
  — *BAC*net MS/TP
  — Backup thermostat G/Y/W (Fan/Cool/Heat) relay control through thermostat wire:
    – Automatically disables thermostat relay logic when cloud API connection detected
    – Advanced control logic to maximize indoor unit efficiency
» Easy commissioning with the BLE configuration app (DKN Cloud NA app)

» Indoor unit control and monitoring points*
  — On/Off
  — Set-point
  — Room temperature
  — Mode (Auto, Cool, Heat, Fan, Dry)
  — Fan speed
  — Louver position
  — Error code
  — Interlock control with indoor unit On/Off
» Auxiliary Heater Control
  — Auxiliary heater controlled as a secondary heat source

*Availability depends on indoor unit model

Compatibility

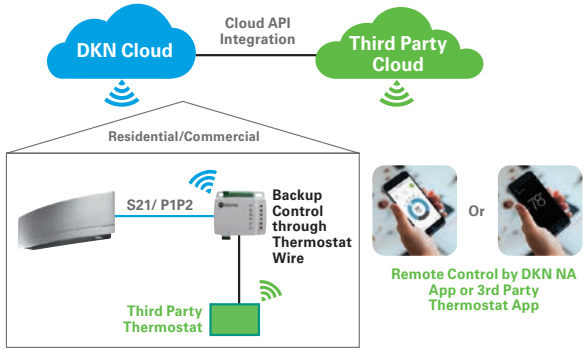
Indoor Unit Family	Model	Indoor Unit Type
VRV* and *VRV LIFE	CXTQ, FXAQ, FXDQ, FXEQ, FXFQ, FXHQ, FXLQ, FXMQ, FXNQ, FXSQ, FXTQ, FXUQ, FXZQ	P1P2
SkyAir	FAQ, FBQ, FTQ, FCQ, FHQ	P1P2
Single-Zone and Multi-Zone	FDMQ, FFQ	P1P2
	CDXS, CTXS, FDXS, FTK, FTX, FTXG, FTXR, FTXS, FVXS	S21

System Diagram

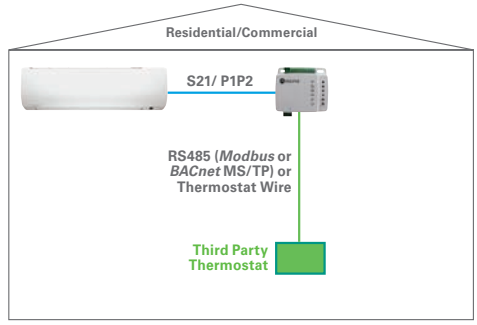
Integration with 3rd party thermostat

» The adaptor provides 4 different approaches for a 3rd party thermostat to control the Daikin indoor units

Integration with smart thermostats through 3rd party Cloud API

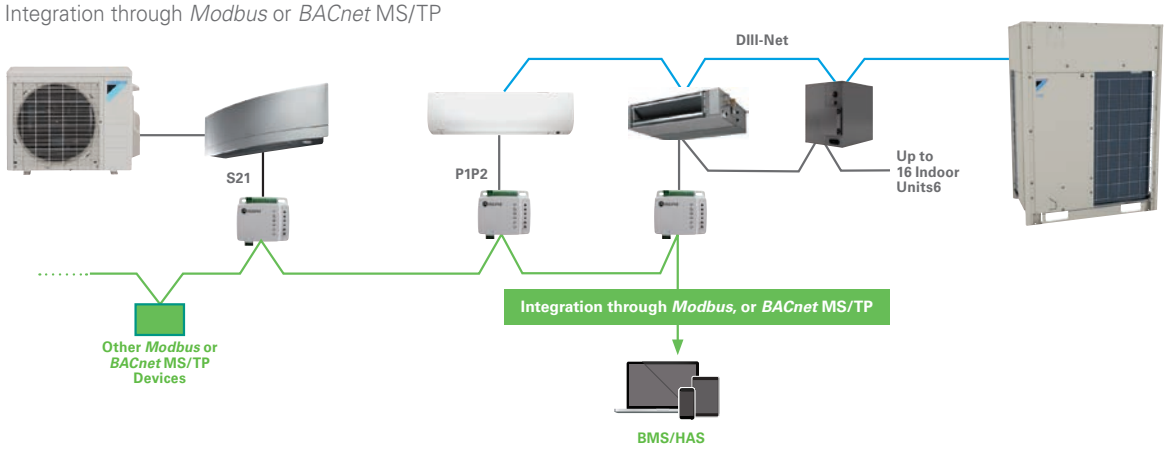


Integration with traditional thermostats

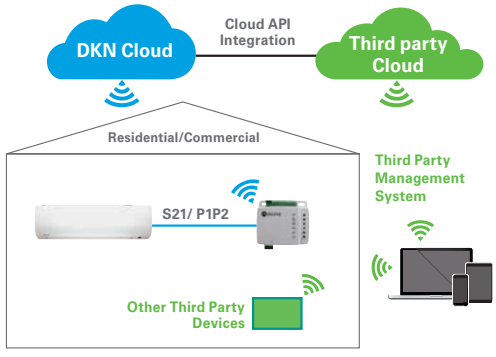


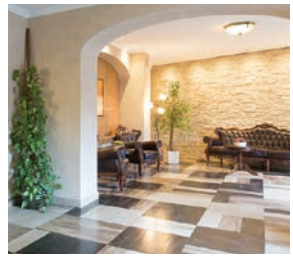
Integration with Building Management System (BMS) or Home Automation System (HAS)

» Integration through *Modbus* or *BACnet* MS/TP



» Integration through Cloud API





Modbus® is a registered trademark of Schneider Electric USA, Inc.

BACnet™ is a trademark of ASHRAE.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks are under license.

To learn more about the DKN Plus Interface, contact your local sales representative, visit www.daikincity.com or www.daikinac.com.

PF-DKNPLUS 01-21

1.2.8 DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor AZAI6WSCDKA

DAIKIN AIR INTELLIGENCE

VRV

DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor for *VRV* (P1P2)

Connect Your Daikin System with the DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor for *VRV* (P1P2)

The DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor for *VRV* (P1P2) enables the remote control of your Daikin indoor units through an iOS/Android App. With the app, the DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor provides remote control and monitoring of P1P2 indoor units' ON/OFF, mode, set-point, fan speed, louver position, room temperature, and error alert status from an iOS/Android smartphone. Voice control is also possible through *Google Assistant* and *Amazon Alexa*.

NORTH AMERICA

Google play

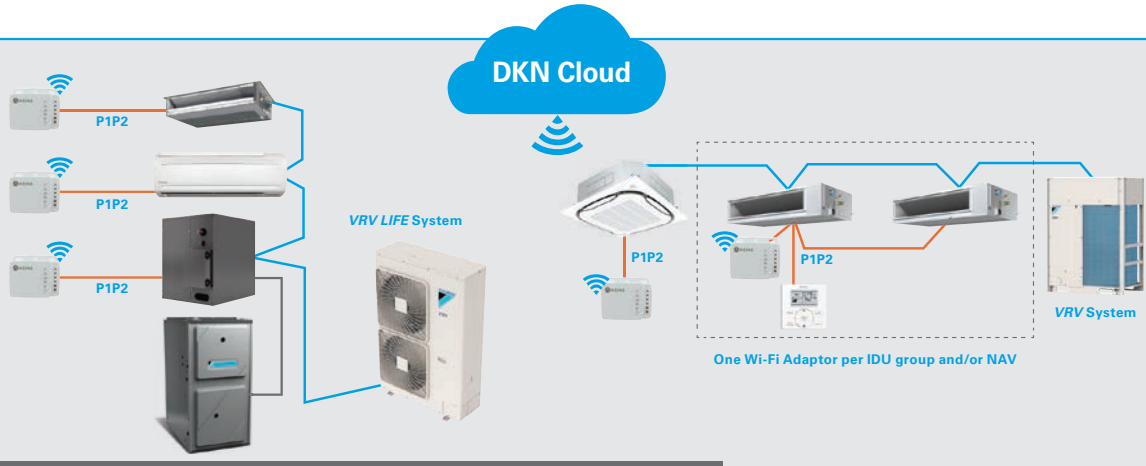
Available on the App Store

works with the Google Assistant

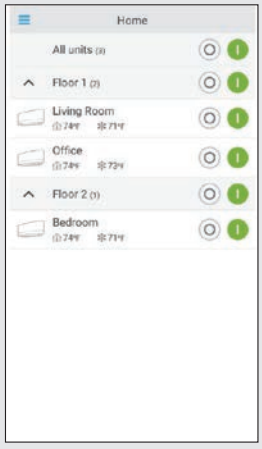
JUST ASK alexa

System Overview

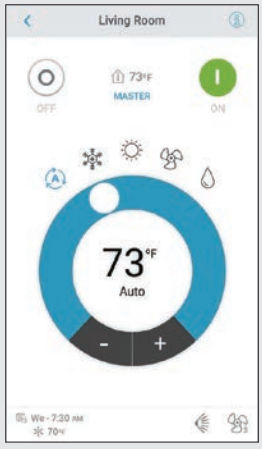
The adaptor can be connected to the indoor unit as a standalone controller. It can also be connected to the indoor units as a main or sub remote controller if used with a wired remote controller. When connected to a Daikin indoor unit, the adaptor can monitor and control up to 16 indoor units together on the same P1P2 communication bus.



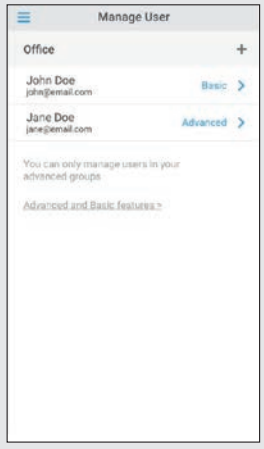
App Features



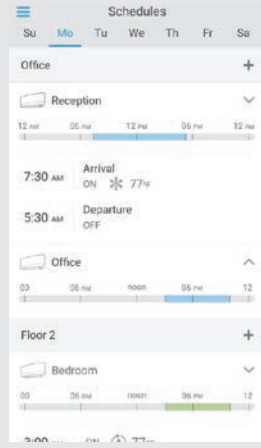
Indoor unit control and monitoring. Unlimited indoor units can be added to one account. Control indoor units as a group.



Control and monitor indoor unit's ON/OFF, mode, set-point, fan speed, louver position, room temperature, and error status.



Leveled user authority options: Basic/Advanced

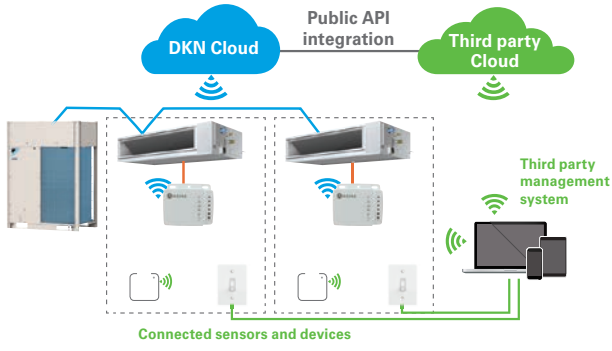


7 Days Schedule

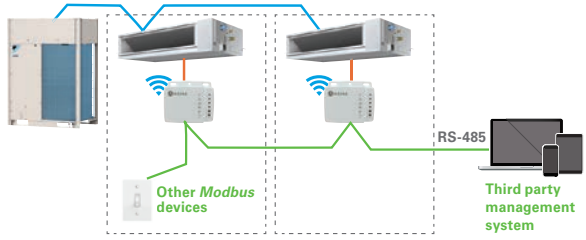
Integration

This adaptor enables the control and monitoring of the indoor unit for third party management systems such as a home automation system or hotel automation system. With this adaptor, the energy management system can integrate with Daikin system through either Modbus® RS-485 or public API.

Integration through Cloud API



Integration through *Modbus*



Compatibility

The adaptor is compatible with all Daikin indoor unit models that communicate with the P1P2 protocol. It is also backward compatible with previous P1P2 indoor unit models.

Series	Compatible Indoor Unit Models
Single-Zone	FDMQ_RVJU, FFQ_Q2VJU
SkyAir	FAQ_PVJU, FBQ_PVJU, FCQ_PAVJU, FHQ_PVJU, FHQ_MVJU, FTQ_PBVJU, FXAQ_TAVJU, FCQ_TAVJU, FTQ_TAVJU
VRV LIFE	CXTQ_TASBLU, FXDQ_MVJU, FXAQ_PVJU, FXEQ_PVJU, FXFQ_TVJU, FXHQ_MVJU, FXLQ_MVJU9, FXMQ_PBVJU, FXMQ_MVJU, FXNQ_MVJU9, FXSQ_TAVJU, FXTQ_TAVJUAD, FXUQ_PVJU, FXZQ_TAVJU
VRV	FXAQ_PVJU, FXDQ_MVJU, FXEQ_PVJU, FXFQ_TVJU, FXHQ_MVJU, FXLQ_MVJU9, FXMQ_PBVJU, FXMQ_MVJU, FXNQ_MVJU9, FXSQ_TAVJU, FXTQ_TAVJUAD, FXUQ_PVJU, FXZQ_TAVJU

To learn more about the DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor for *VRV* (P1P2), contact your local sales representative, or visit www.daikincity.com and/or www.daikinac.com

Google, Google Assistant, and all related logos are trademarks of Google, or its affiliates.
Amazon, Alexa, and all related logos are trademarks of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.

PF-DKNCLOUD-VRV 09-20

1.3 System Monitoring for the HERO Simple Edge

OVERVIEW

The *HERO* Cloud Service and *HERO* Simple Edge

The Daikin *HERO* Simple Edge provides a connection of a Daikin *VRV** system to the *HERO* Cloud Services network for remote monitoring. The *HERO* Simple Edge is mounted onto the outdoor unit, and the built-in SIM card provides wireless connectivity.

When a Daikin *VRV* system is connected to the *HERO* Cloud Services, users now have the ability to visualize their system data for each connected indoor and outdoor unit. The animated piping diagram provides the operation status of each unit which is also tied to predictive logic alerting users of potential compressor or sensor failures and refrigerant leaks. The *HERO* Cloud Services also helps optimize the equipment operation based upon outdoor unit ambient temperatures.

Elevate control through remote monitoring:

» **Time and cost-saving opportunities –** Helps reduce unnecessary truck rolls and expand awareness of potential system issues.

» **An owner-oriented design with a customizable dashboard –** Provides a quick overview of all connected sites and *VRV* systems.

HERO Cloud Services is based upon a recurring licensing fee to access site information. Licenses can be purchased in 1-year, 3-year, or 5-year increments, with no additional cost for the first-year access after the device is activated.

* Compatible with select Daikin *VRV* models. Please visit daikinac.com to learn more.

IOT Monitoring Center

HERO CLOUD SERVICES

HERO Cloud Services monitors your Daikin HVAC systems 24/7 to help optimize system operation.

The result? A cloud-based tool that can help you run your building efficiently without sacrificing comfort due to unexpected downtime.

- Remote monitoring to help manage and diagnose system performance.
- Uses predictive logic to notify of impending compressor or sensor failures.
- Visualize system performance through the integrated dashboard (web-based access from phone, laptop, and tablet).
- Streamline service and maintenance for projects.
- Secure cellular communication to the *HERO* Cloud Service using a built-in SIM card.

HERO Cloud Services license options: 1-year, 3-year, and 5-year licenses. Learn more at www.daikinhero.com

Daikin *HERO* Simple Edge

There are many benefits Daikin *HERO* Cloud Services can offer:

Building Owners

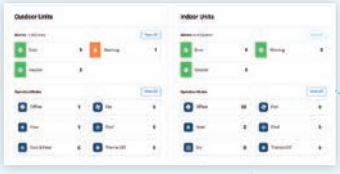
- Peace of mind
- Remote monitoring via the energy dashboard
- Multisite access
- Intuitive user interface

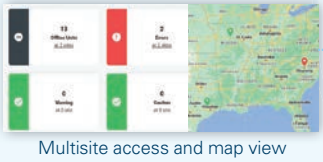
Daikin Representatives

- Remote access to all buildings in your territory
- Continuous commissioning.
- Provide a service solution to the end-user

Contractors

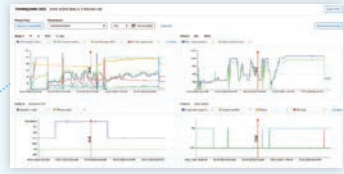
- Remotely diagnose technical issues.
- Easy troubleshooting using multiple tools, live data, graphs, history trends, alarm console…etc.
- Error prediction and notifications

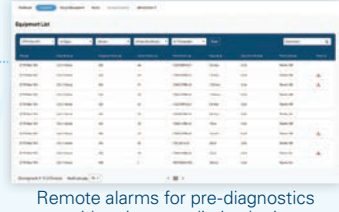

Remote monitoring anytime, from anywhere


Multisite access and map view


Energy Savings

- **Monitor and control** your building no matter where you are
- **Manage multiple sites**
- **Visualize energy** consumption and **benchmark** between different sites **to help reduce energy costs**
- **Remote diagnostic** support to help increase your systems lifetime
- **Predictive maintenance** to help prevent breakdowns
- **Remote troubleshooting** in case of malfunctions


Trending and report generation


Remote alarms for pre-diagnostics with unique predictive logic


Optimization recommendation by Daikin experts

MULTISITE DASHBOARD

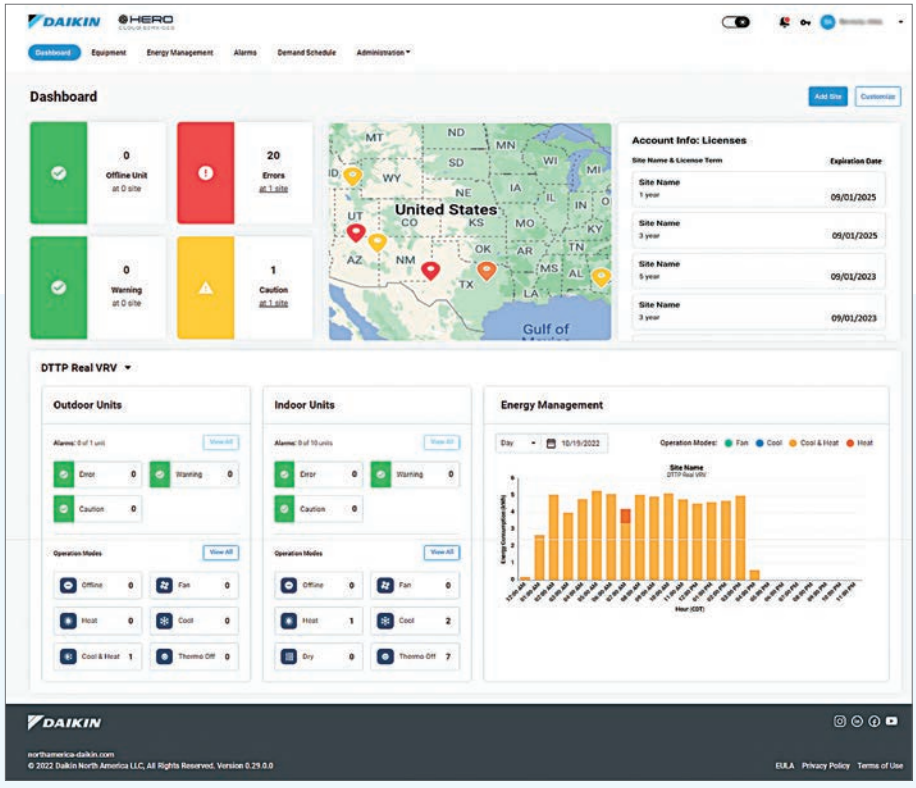
Multisite Dashboard

The *HERO* Cloud Services dashboard offers an overview of the accessible sites and provides the status of the total number of units displaying alarms, errors, warnings, or offline. The dashboard can be customized using the "Customize" button on the top right side of the page to fit the user's role. The Customize button allows users to add or remove the widgets (Map, Subscription, and Energy management). For example:

» The Subscription widget will display the currently subscribed sites and the expiration date.

» The "Energy Management" widget offers customized bar chart views for the energy consumption of the selected unit. This widget will also give users a quick view of their site's outdoor unit and indoor unit error status and mode of operation.

On the top right of the dashboard, users can switch to dark mode, check the current errors through the notification icon, request site access control through the "key icon," and edit the user profile.



EQUIPMENT LIST/DETAIL

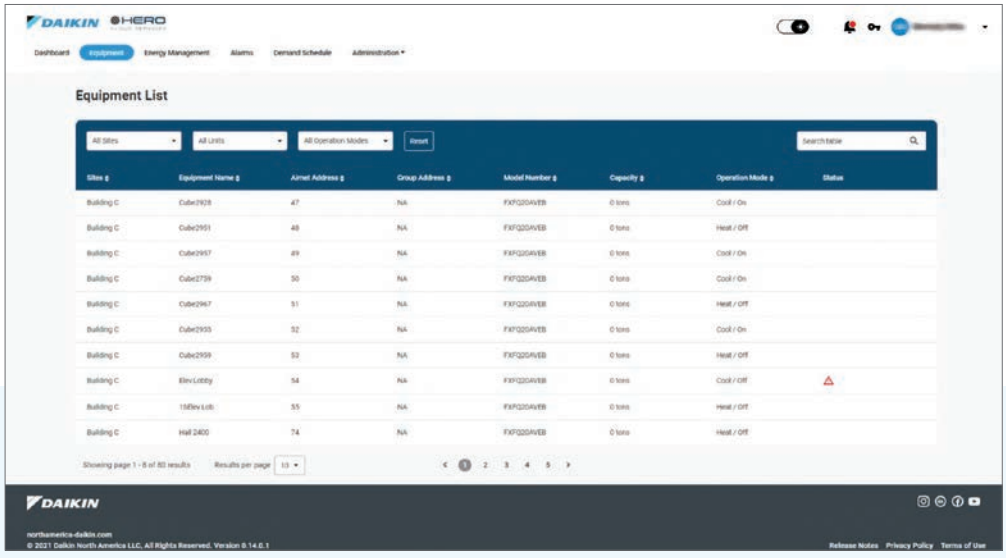
Equipment List/Detail

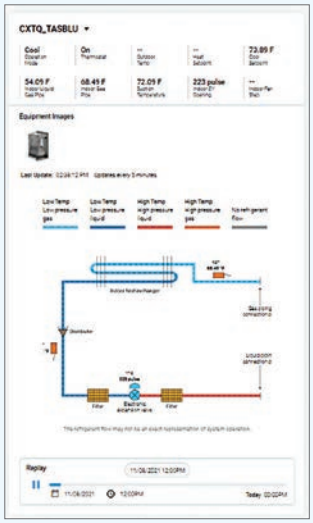
» The "Equipment List" widget lists all equipment for each site, including the indoor (IDU) and outdoor (ODU) units. The filter or the search bar allows users to search for specific units.

» The "Equipment Detail" widget can be viewed by selecting the desired equipment row.

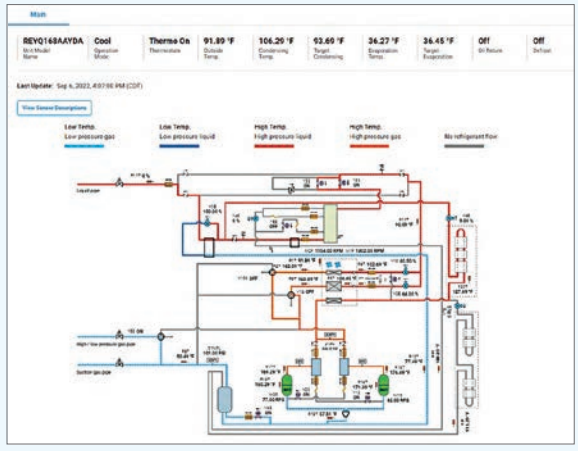
Equipment Details

The piping diagram provides dynamic graphics with real-time data for sensor values with the option to view the sensor description. System operation data is updated in 1 min increments based upon a change of value. In addition, system data can be "Replayed" in 1 hour increments from the stored data (5 years) on the piping diagram.





IDU Piping Diagram

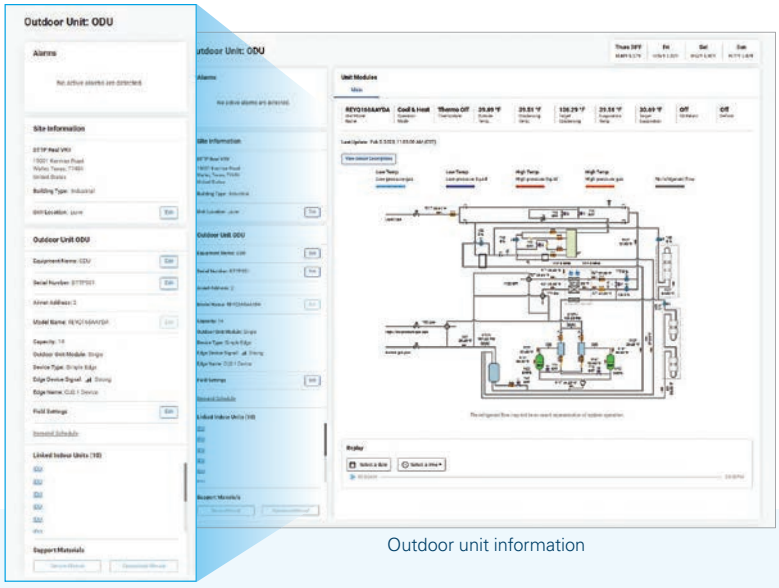


ODU Piping Diagram

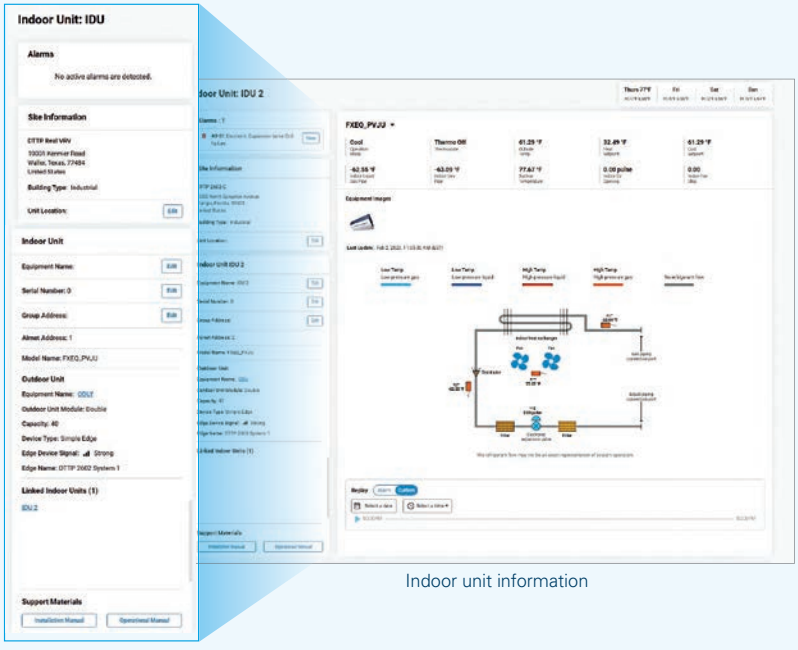
EQUIPMENT LIST/DETAIL (CONT.)

The "Outdoor Unit" information side widget provides the outdoor unit model name, serial number, Airnet Address, and linked indoor units and allows remote configuring of the outdoor unit field settings. It also includes links to the manuals for the displayed equipment.

» The "Indoor Unit" information side widget provides the indoor model name, serial number, Airnet Address, group address, and linked outdoor/indoor units.



Outdoor unit information



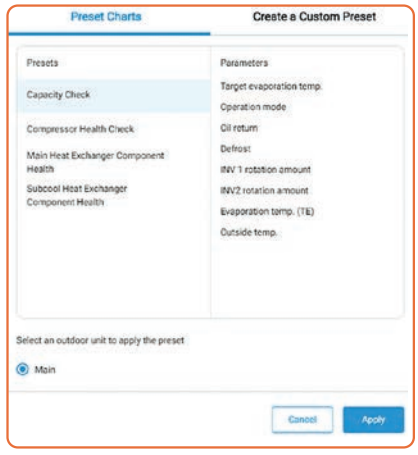
Indoor unit information

EQUIPMENT LIST/DETAIL (CONT.)

Trend Data

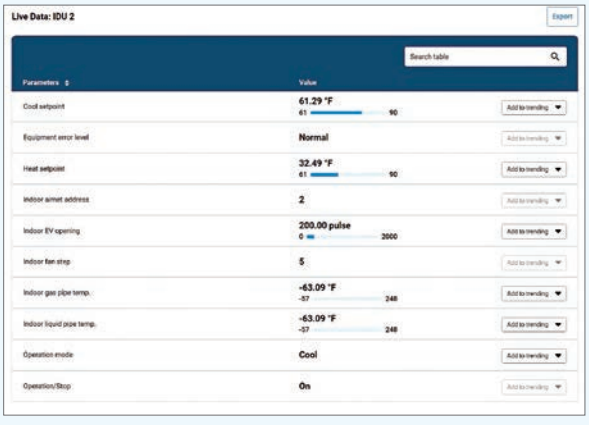
The Trend Data charts section provides four separate graphs (based on the unit of measurement) to make detailed plots of outdoor or indoor unit data. The chart can be plotted for a specific day or week. The data is available for the past five years. Errors are displayed (red arrow) on the trend graph with the time stamp of error occurrence.

The "Preset" button offers preset data points for items like the Capacity Check and Compressor Health Check, and provides the ability to create a customized preset chart.

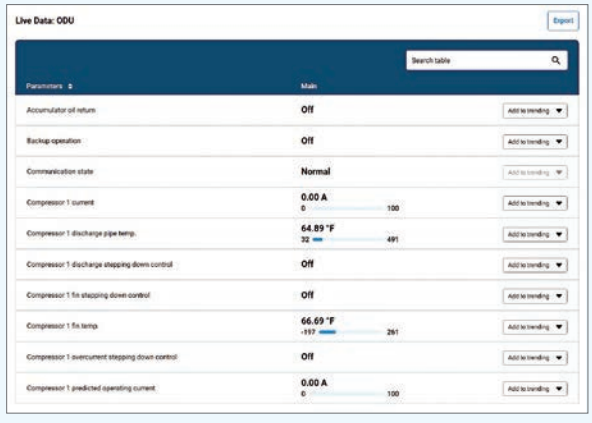


Live Data

The live data from the unit is available for viewing. Users can use the navigation buttons to view additional data or search for particular data. In addition, the data points can be added directly to the trend graphs using the "Add to trending" button.



Indoor unit Live Data



Outdoor unit Live Data

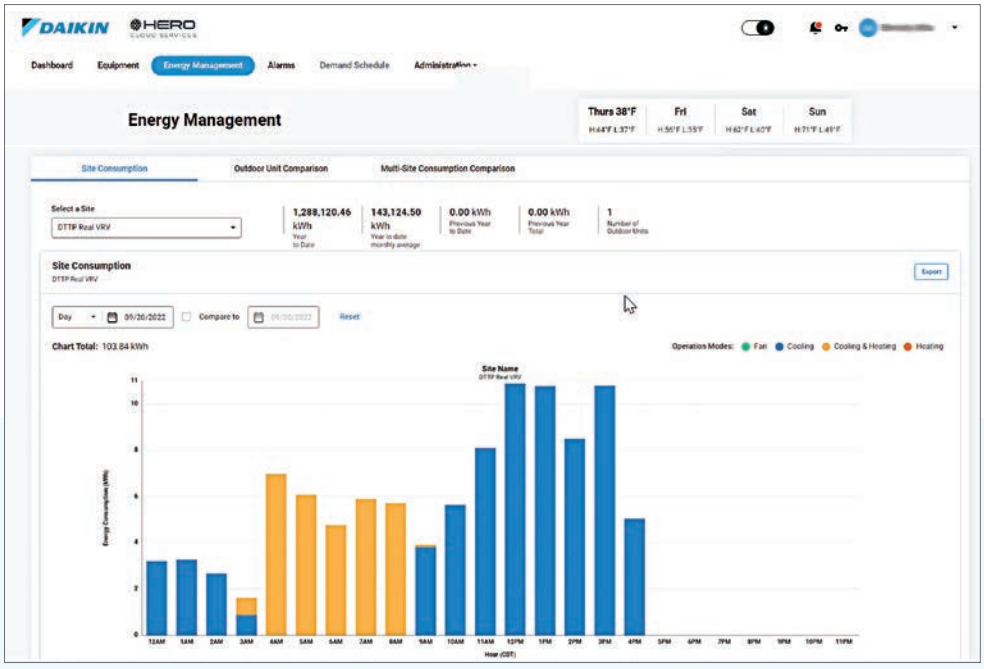
ENERGY MANAGEMENT

Energy Management

The "Energy Management" widget provides detailed energy monitoring for the connected equipment. Three types of charts are available on the energy management page:

1. Site Comparison
2. Outdoor Unit Comparison
3. Multisite Consumption

When the mouse pointer hovers on a bar in the graph, a tooltip displays the actual energy consumption value with more details. The compare feature of the graph provides a way to compare the selected data with past data. Also, the plotted data can be exported using either PNG or CSV file formats.

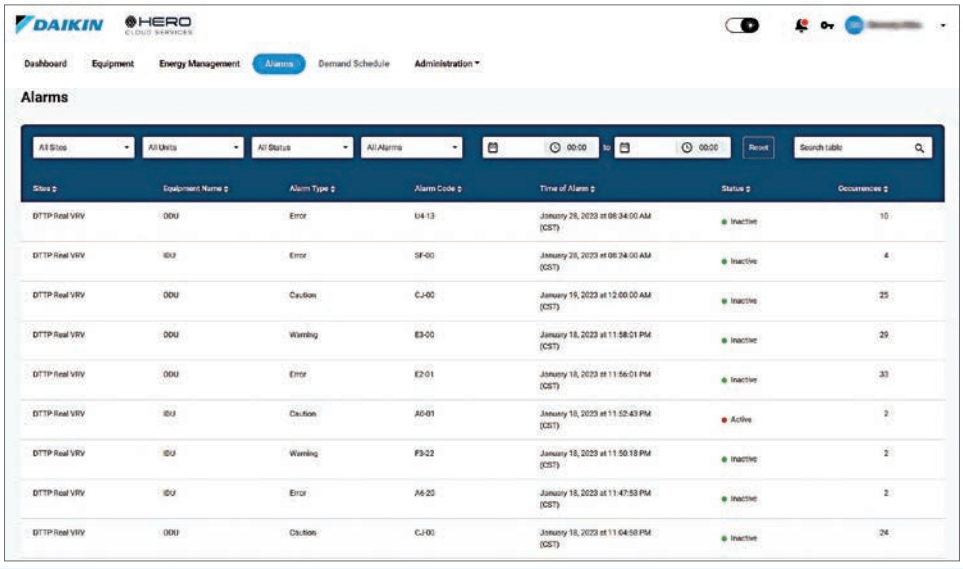


The bar chart allows the user to view energy data for the selected site. The energy consumption data bars are broken down into modes of operation of the outdoor unit, such as Cooling, Heating, Cooling & Heating, and Fan modes.

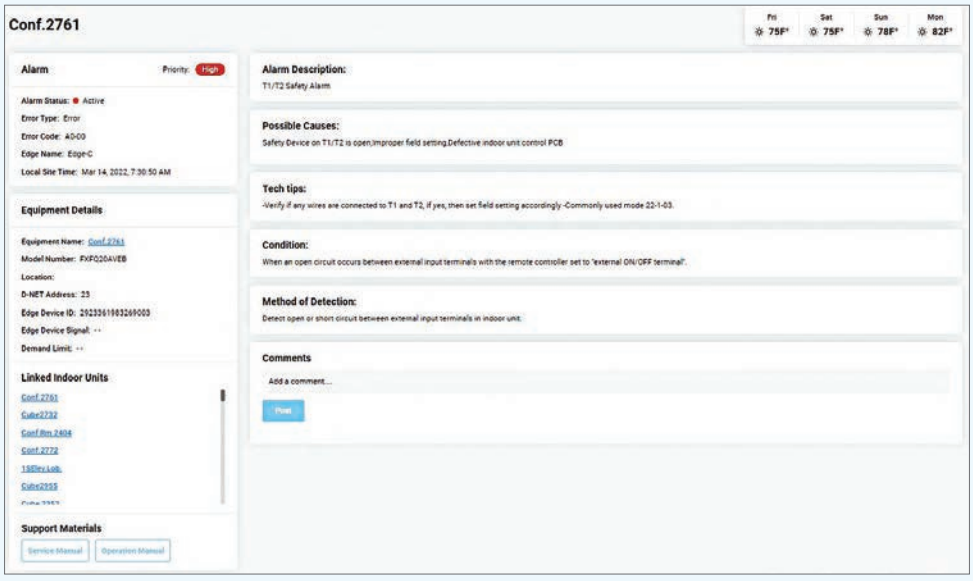
ALARMS CONSOLE

Alarms Console

The widget provides users with a view of current active or inactive alarms with the option to filter among sites, units, and statuses for a specific duration.



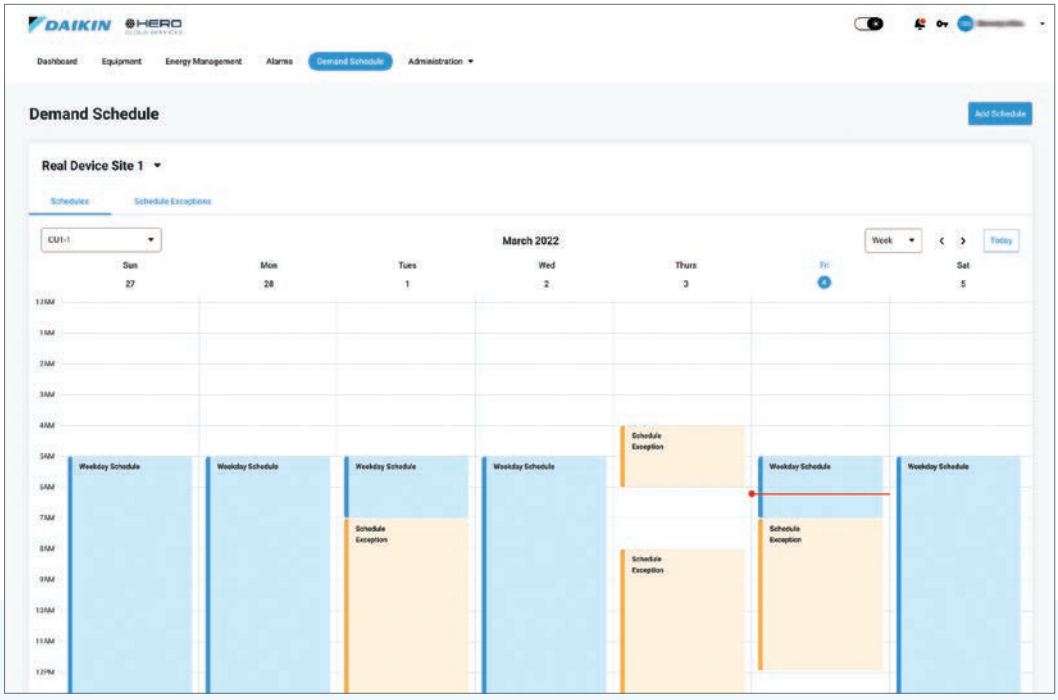
The Error Details widget provides information on the error generated, possible causes, and technician tips. It also provides a comments section to create a history of actions taken on the equipment. Support materials are also available, so the technician never has to leave the Daikin *HERO* Cloud Services dashboard to get more information.



DEMAND SCHEDULE / ADMINISTRATION

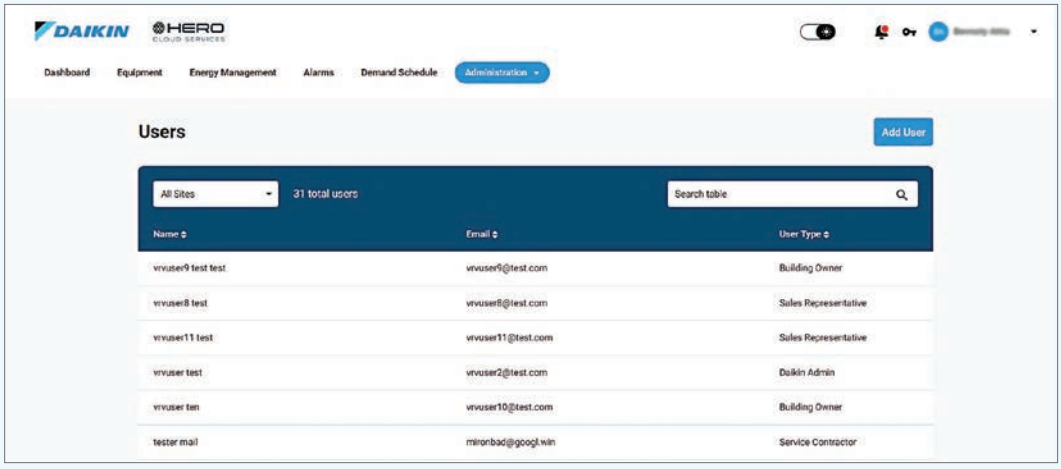
Demand Schedule

Provides monitoring and configuration for the outdoor unit demand limit and low noise schedule operation



Administration

The "Administration" widget provides user management with customizable access for the specified user type. In addition, multiple user roles are available to fit different user types (manufacturer rep, distributor, Dealer, Engineer, Building owner) to support quick access and identification.



SPECIFICATIONS

HERO Simple Edge	
Model	DSE401A71/DSE401B71
Description	*HERO* Simple Edge Cloud Communication Adaptor
Maximum Connections	64 Indoor Units / 1 Outdoor Unit
Communication to Outdoor unit	Proprietary
Communication to Cloud	A71 use existing text for Continental United States, Alaska and Hawaii (only)
	B71 use LTE-CAT-M1 (multi Carrier) Continental Unites States, Alaska, Hawaii and Canada
Power	16VDC supplied by Outdoor Unit, less than 3W
Operating Temp Range	-22 to 125°F (-30-52°C)
Storage Temp range	-22 to 158°F (-30-70°C)
Operating Humidity Range	Less than 95% RH (Non-condensing)
Storage Temp range	Less than 95% RH (Non-condensing)
Installation Elevation	Less than 6500 ft. (2000 m)
Dimensions (W x H X D)	6.2" X 3.8" X 1.7" (160 mm X 96 mm X 42 mm)
Weight (Mass)	1.0 lb. (0.46 kg)
Communication wire	9-33/64 ft. (2900 mm)
Conversion harness	0.55 ft. (170 mm)
Enclosure Rating	IP66
HERO Cloud Services	
Compatible Browser	Google Chrome, Safari
Compatible Devices	PC, MAC, Smartphone, and Tablet with internet connection
Requires Subscription	Yes
URL	www.daikinhero.com

FOR QUESTIONS OR SUPPORT:

1-800-DAIKIN1 • daikinhero.support@daikincomfort.com

1.4 Centralized Control System

intelligent Touch Manager

The intelligent Touch Manager (iTM) is an advanced multi-zone controller that controls and monitors the Daikin ***VRV*** system. The iTM can also provide a cost-effective mini Building Management System (BMS) solution to integrate and control third-party devices through optional software and hardware. If a BMS already exists, the iTM can be used as a BACnet gateway interface for BMS integration with iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option.

Easy Operation and Configuration
- Intuitive user interface with 10.4" LCD touch screen
- Flexible screen views includes the icon view, list view and layout view for system configurations
- Easy engineering with use of the Preset Tool and USB port

Advanced Control Logic
- Independent Cool and Heat setpoints or Single setpoint in the occupied period
- Independent Setback setpoints in the unoccupied period
- Weekly Schedule with Optimum Start and Timed Override
- Auto Changeover with configurable methods

Facility Management and Billing
- Remote Web access
- Automatic Error and Alert emails
- Tenant Billing with the iTM PPD option

Mini BMS Solution with Software and Hardware Options
- Interlock and Emergency Stop for facility management
- DI, DO, AI, AO points integrated via the WAGO I/O System
- BACnet points (AI, AO, AV. BI, BO. BV, MSI, MSO, MSV) integrated with the iTM BACnet Client Option
- DI and DO points integration via DIII-Net connected DI and DIO units

Built-in Service Tool with Remote Access
- Operation data are stored in the iTM for the last 5 days:
  - Indoor unit and outdoor unit operation data
  - BACnet Client objects
  - WAGO I/O system data
- Operation data can be exported through a USB drive or through the iTM web browser remotely
- BMS can monitor the BACnet objects of indoor unit and outdoor unit operation data with the BACnet Server Gateway Option activated

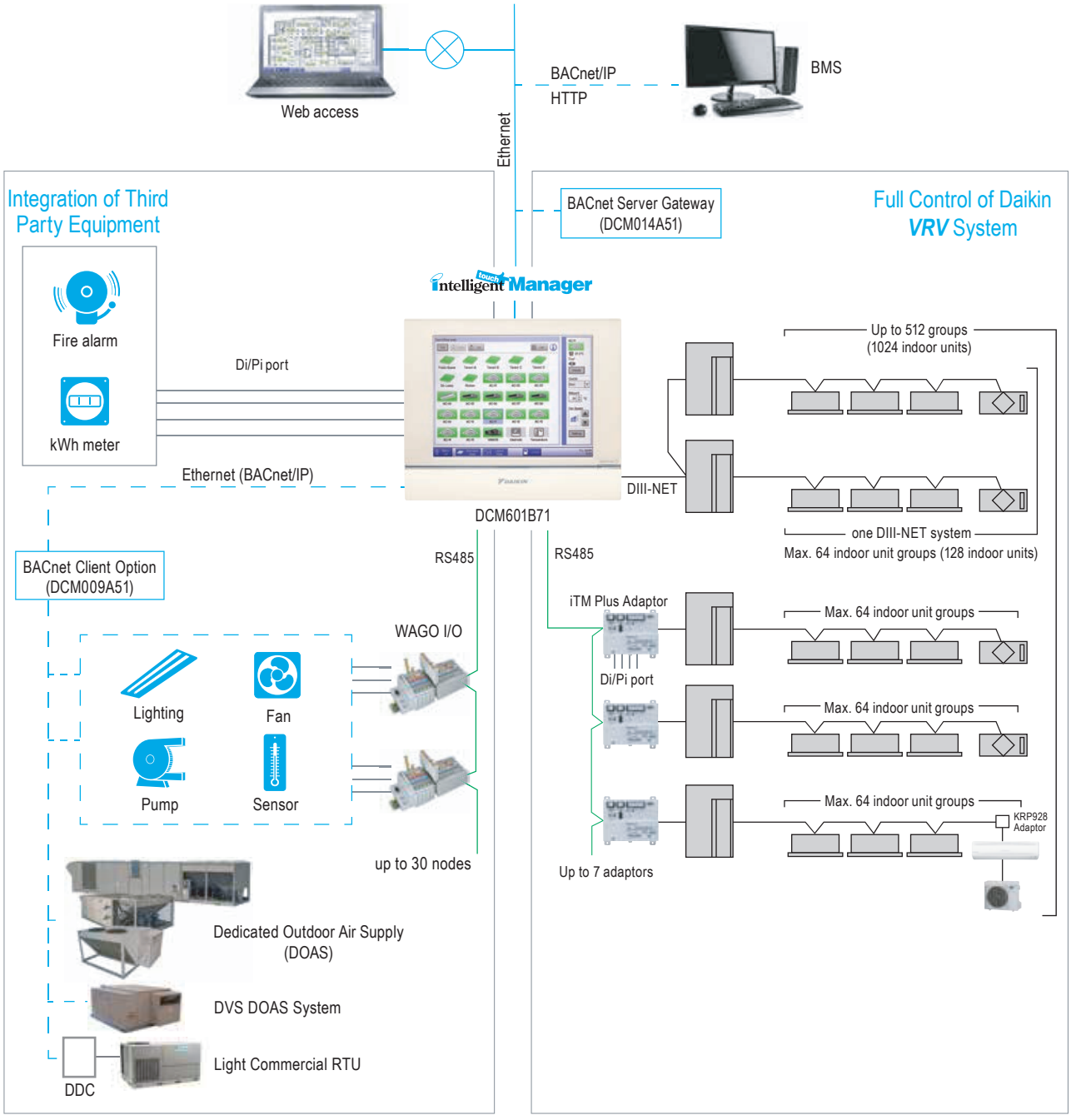
BACnet Server Gateway Option
- Direct connection to the ***VRV*** system using the iTM as a gateway
- Individual device ID assigned to each indoor unit group and outdoor unit
- Seamless control logic integration between the iTM and BMS
- Greatly reduces the need for BMS integrator programming

BACnet Client Option
- Monitor and control equipment and sensors connected to a BACnet server via BACnet IP
- Up to 50 BACnet IP servers can be connected

PPD Option
- Apportions total outdoor unit power consumption back into the respective indoor units served by those outdoor units

iTM Web IF (HTTP) Option
- Provides the function to monitor and control up to 512 indoor unit group addresses by a BMS via HTTP protocol.

iTM system overview



1.5 Group, Management Point and Area

1.5.1 Definition

Remote controller group

- The group means the indoor units connected by the same control wiring for remote controller (connected to terminal P1 and P2) and all the units in the group have “the same setting” and “the same operation”.
- The indoor units in the group are controlled by the local remote controller connected to the indoor unit(s).
- Up to 16 indoor units can be placed in one group.

Management point

A management point is the target equipment monitored and operated using the iTM.
A remote controller group is a management point in the iTM.
The types of management points that can be controlled by iTM are as follows:

Indoor*1, Ventilator, Dio*2, Analog*3, Pulse*4, Outdoor, MultiState*5

*1 The management points indoor unit and AHU are treated as the indoor management point type.
*2 The management points Di, D3Di, D3Dio, External Di, External Dio, BACnet Di, and BACnet Dio are treated as the Dio management point type.
*3 The management points External Ai, External Ao, Internal Ai, BACnet Ai, and BACnet Ao are treated as the Analog management point type.
*4 The management points Pi, External Pi, and Internal Pi are treated as the Pi management point type.
*5 The management points BACnet Mi and BACnet Mo are treated as the MultiState management point type.

Area

Area is used in the iTM instead of Zone.
An area is a hierarchical group into which management points, monitored and operated by the iTM, are classified. You can populate an area with member areas and management points. An All area, to which you cannot manually register or delete members from, is provided by default.

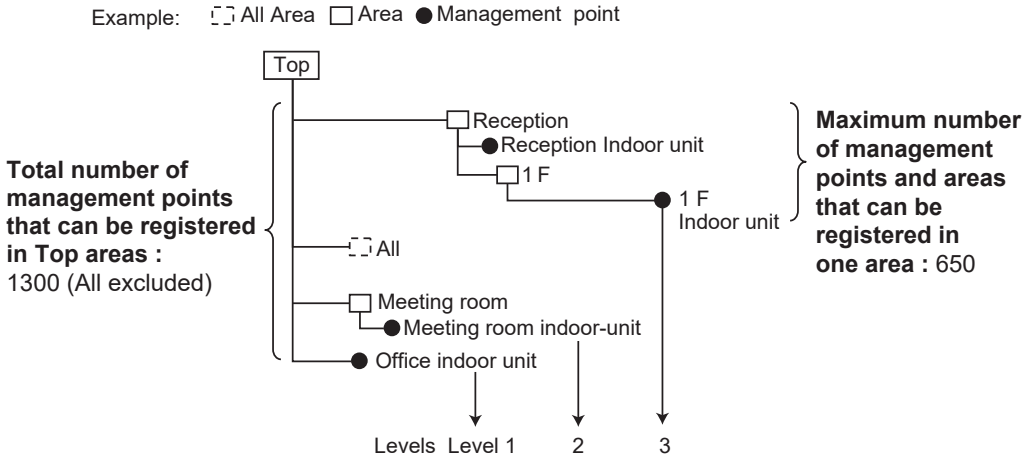
- The indoor units connected by the same control wiring for centralized control equipment (connected to terminal F1 and F2) and all the units in the same Area can have “the same setting” or “independent settings”.
- The Area control of the indoor unit is operated by the centralized control equipment.
- From 1 up to 64 Areas can be controlled by the centralized control equipment.
- The number of groups you can set in one Area is from 1 up to 64 indoor unit groups.
- Up to 16 indoor units can be set in one group, and up to 64 indoor unit groups (up to 128 indoor units) can be connected.

Centralized control equipment is capable of controlling/monitoring up to 512 groups of indoor units (hereafter “groups”) with use of up to 7 iTM Plus Adaptors.

The main functions of the centralized control equipment include :

1. Collective starting/stopping of operation of the indoor units connected to the centralized control equipment.
2. Starting/stopping of operation, temperature setting, switching between temperature control modes and enabling/disabling of operation with the local remote control by Area or group.
3. Scheduling by Area or group.
4. Monitoring of the operation status by Area or group.
5. Display of the air-conditioner operation history.
6. Forced stop input from BMS (non-voltage, normally-open contact).

Maximum number of areas that can be created: 650 (All excluded)



Maximum number of hierarchal levels that can be created: 10 levels

Note:

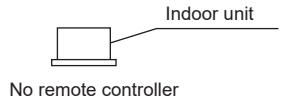
Registered management points are automatically registered in the folder for the corresponding management point type set up under the all area (default).

1.5.2 Patterns of Group and Area

Group

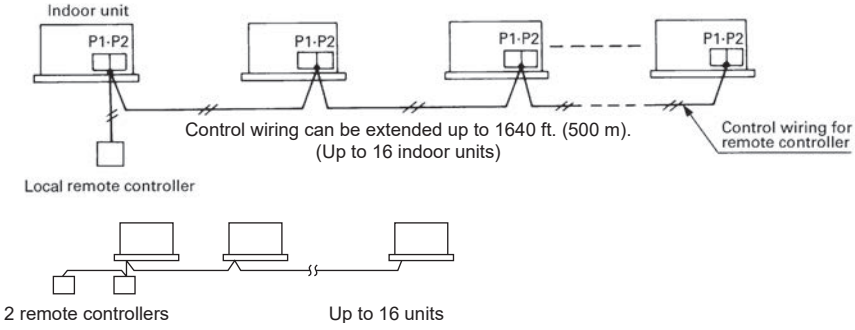
■ A group of indoor units include:

1. One indoor unit without a remote controller.



2. One indoor unit controlled with one or two remote controllers.

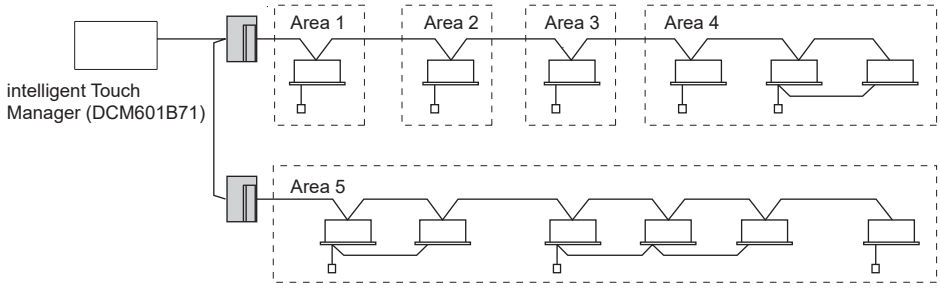
3. Up to 16 indoor units controlled with one or two remote controllers.



Area

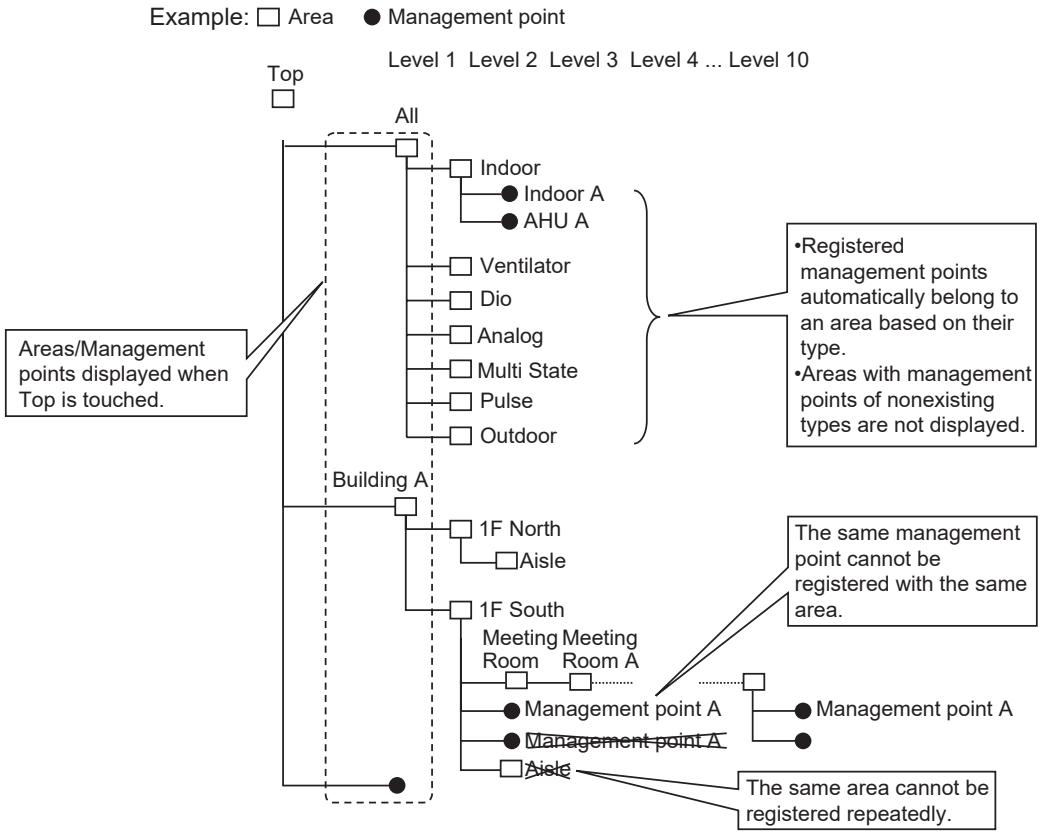
■ Area control with the centralized control equipment

■ Area control, which allows collective settings for more than one group, is available with the centralized control equipment, which facilitates the setting operations.



- One setting can make the same setting for all of the units in one area.
- Up to 512 Areas can be set with one centralized control equipment. (The maximum number of groups in one area is 512.)
- Groups can be placed in areas at will with the centralized control equipment.
- Indoor units in one group can be divided into more than one area. (not recommended)
- 1 Area is not limited to 1 Group and vice versa.

You can register a management point in two or more areas. However, you cannot register the same management point two or more times in one area. You cannot register the same area in two or more areas either.

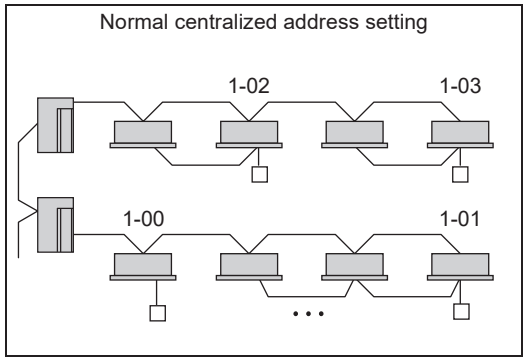


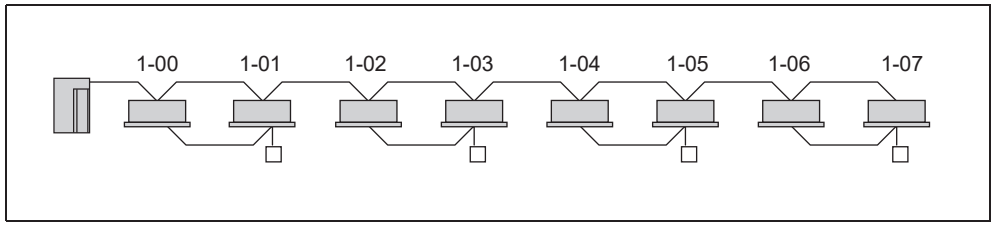
1.5.3 Group Address

- Set a group address to a device to be connected to the DIII-NET.
- The range of addresses to be set is 64 types as shown below.

1-00~1-15	·····16 types	Total 64 types
2-00~2-15	·····16 types	
3-00~3-15	·····16 types	
4-00~4-15	·····16 types	

- You cannot set a same group address on a same DIII-NET.
- You do not need to set a group address to a sub unit in a remote control group.
  -In case of power proportional distribution is used, you need to set a group address to a sub unit in a remote control group as well.





1.6 Building Management System

	Part name			Model No.	Function
Building Management System	HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication Adaptor			DSE401A71 DSE401B71	■ The Daikin HERO Simple Edge provides a connection of a Daikin ***VRV*** system to the HERO Cloud Services network for remote monitoring.
	Basic	Hardware	intelligent Touch Manager	DCM601B71	■ Air-conditioning management system that can be controlled by touch screen.
	Option	Hardware	iTM plus adaptor	DCM601A72	■ Additional 64 groups (10 outdoor units) are possible. Max. 7 iTM plus adaptors can be connected to intelligent Touch Manager.
		Software	iTM power proportional distribution	DCM002A71	■ Power consumption of indoor units are calculated based on operation status of the indoor unit and outdoor unit power consumption measured by kWh metre.
Communication Line	External Equipment Control		iTM BACnet Client Option	DCM009A51	■ With this option, the iTM is able to manage DOAS systems and other third party equipment through the BACnet/IP protocol. By registering equipment connected to a BACnet server as management points in the iTM, you can now monitor and control the equipment via the iTM.
	Interface Solutions		iTM BACnet Server	DCM014A51	■ With the iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option (DCM014A51), the iTM provides BMS integrators with the ability to monitor and/or control the ***VRV*** indoor and outdoor units, eliminating the need for an additional hardware interface. Moreover, with the latest software update to the iTM 2+ (v2.06), the iTM is able to serve as a service tool to access indoor and outdoor unit operation data. With the iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option, the operation data points for both the IDU (indoor unit) and ODU (outdoor unit) are also available to the BMS through BACnet.
	Interface for use in BACnet (Note 1)			DMS502B71	■ Interface unit to allow communications between ***VRV*** and BMS. Operation and monitoring of air-conditioning systems through BACnet communications.
	Optional DIII board			DAM411A1	■ Expansion kit, installed on DMS502B71, to provide 3 more DIII-NET communication ports. Not usable independently.
	Interface for use in LonWorks (Note 2)			DMS504C71	■ Interface unit to allow communications between ***VRV*** and BMS. Operation and monitoring of air-conditioning systems through LONWORKS communication.
	Home automation interface adaptor for use in Modbus			DTA116A51	■ Use of the Modbus protocol enables the connection of the ***VRV*** system with a variety of home automation systems from other manufacturers.
	Mounting plate			BKS26A	■ When installing DTA116A51, DTA109A51 into outdoor units.
Remote Controller Integration	DKN Plus Interface			AZAI6WSPDKC	■ Enables the energy-efficient control of ***VRV*** indoor unit by a third-party thermostat or an automation system. With this interface, third-party devices or systems can control ***VRV*** indoor unit through Cloud API, Modbus, BACnet MS/TP, or thermostat relay contacts.
	DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor			AZAI6WSCDKA	■ Enables the energy-efficient control of ***VRV*** indoor unit by DKN NA smartphone app and/or voice control command. With this adaptor, third-party devices or systems can control ***VRV*** indoor unit through Cloud API, or Modbus.
	Adaptive Touch Controller			BACRC-T-P01 BACRC-TH-P01 BACRC-THO-P01 BACRC-THOC-P01	■ Built-in sensors and logic for ***VRV*** indoor unit control. It also enables the monitoring and control of the ***VRV*** indoor unit through BACnet MS/TP.
	DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor			DTA118A71, 72	■ BTL certified device with direct connection to the BMS using the BACnet MS/TP protocol.
Contact/Analog signal	Unification adaptor for computerized control			DCS302A72	■ Interface between the central monitoring board and central control units (not compatible with the iTM).
	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices			KRP4A71, 72, 73, 74	■ To control the group of indoor units collectively, which are connected by the transmission wiring of remote controller.
	External control adaptor for outdoor unit (Must be installed on indoor units.)			DTA104A53, 61, 62	■ Cooling/Heating mode change over. Demand control and Low noise control are available between the plural outdoor units.
	DIII-NET expander adaptor			DTA109A51	■ Apply to increase the number of connected outdoor units with a multi-zone controller. ■ Overcome communication errors in electrically noisy environments.

1.7 Open Protocol Interface

Integrated control systems that recognize the trend of open protocol control systems

■ Compatibility with BMS open protocols by utilizing the international communication standards, BACnet , LONWORKS, or Modbus.

DMS502B71
(Interface for use in BACnet)

DMS502B71 Interface for use in BACnet

- Conformance class 3 (ASHRAE 135)
- Standard BACnet Device B-ASC (ASHRAE 135)
- BACnet/IP over Ethernet
- Up to 40 outdoor units and 256 indoor unit groups on one gateway. (optional expansion adaptor)
- BTL listed

DTA118A71
DTA118A72
(DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor)

DTA118A71 / DTA118A72 DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor

- BTL certified device with direct connection to the BMS using the BACnet MS/TP protocol.
- Gateway between the Daikin DIII-Net and BMS BACnet MS/TP workstation
  - Manages up to 32 indoor units and 4 outdoor units
- Low cost alternative to typical BMS gateways and protocols

DTA116A51
(Modbus communication adaptor)

DTA116A51 Modbus Communication Adaptor

- BMS interface based on Modbus (RS485, which communicates via Modbus RTU)
- Gateway between Daikin DIII-Net and BMS Modbus workstation
  - Manages up to 16 indoor units and 2 outdoor units
- Preferred low cost alternative to typical BMS gateways and protocols

DMS504C71
(Interface for use in LONWORKS)

DMS504C71 Interface for use in LONWORKS

- XIF file for confirming of specifications of the units.
- Connectable up to 10 outdoor units and 64 indoor unit groups.

DCM014A51
(intelligent Touch Manager + BACnet Server Gateway Option)

DCM014A51 intelligent Touch Manager + BACnet Server Gateway Option

- Direct connection to the ***VRV*** System using the intelligent Touch Manager as a Gateway
- Individual device ID assigned to each indoor unit and outdoor unit management point
- Seamless control logic integration between the intelligent Touch Manager and BMS
- Greatly reduces the need for BMS integrator programming
- Up to 128 indoor unit and outdoor unit management points can be controlled and monitored by the BMS

AZAI6WSPDKC
(DKN Plus Interface)

AZAI6WSPDKC DKN Plus Interface

- Versatile interface adaptor that can integrate with a third-party thermostat/BMS through multiple approaches:
  - Cloud API
  - Modbus
  - BACnet MS/TP
  - Thermostat Relay Control: Y/W/G (Cool/Heat/Fan)

AZAI6WSPDKA
(DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor)

AZAI6WSPDKA DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor

- The adaptor that can integrate with a third-party thermostat/BMS through multiple approaches:
  - Cloud API
  - Modbus

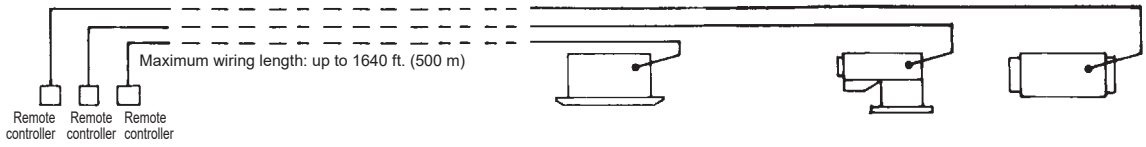
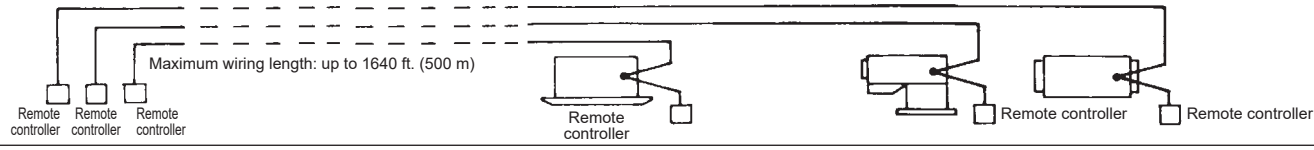
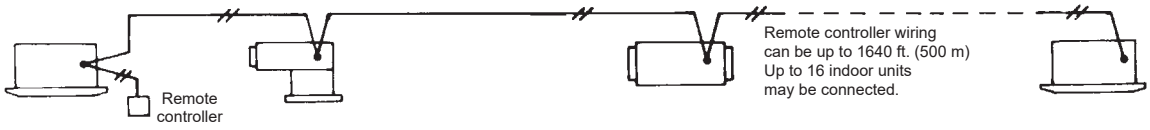
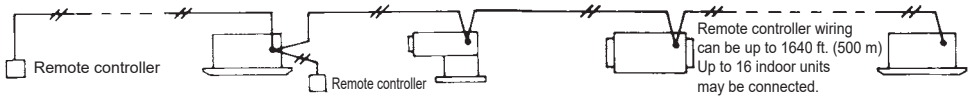
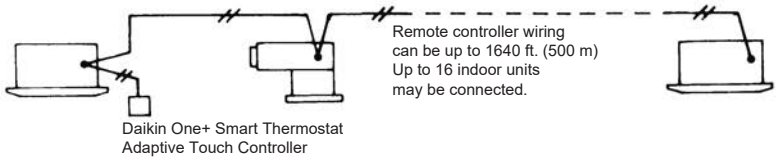
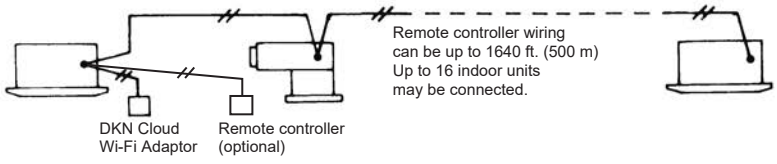
1.8 Localized Control

For more effective localized environmental control Daikin offers variety of control options such as single or double remote control or centralized control. This enables the construction of a variety of operational control systems which can be adapted for a wide range uses from remote control to building automation.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Control Method</th><th>Objective / Use</th><th>Unit Name and Model</th><th>Function</th><th>Standard Number of Units</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Remote Controller</td><td>Local operation of remote controller</td><td>Example of typical use</td><td rowspan="4">Navigation Remote Controller
BRC1E73
 
Madoka Remote Controller
BRC1H71W
  </td><td rowspan="6">Main Menu
■ Airflow Direction
■ Ventilation
■ Schedule
■ Celsius / Fahrenheit
■ Maintenance Information
■ Configuration
■ Current Settings
■ Clock & Calendar
■ Daylight Saving Time
■ Language
Service Settings
■ Test Operation
■ Maintenance Contact
■ Field Settings
■ Energy Saving Options
■ Prohibit Buttons
■ Min Setpoints Differential
■ Group Address
■ Indoor unit AirNet Address
■ Outdoor unit AirNet Address
■ Error History
■ Indoor Unit Status
■ Outdoor Unit Status
■ Forced Fan ON
■ Switch Main Sub Controller
■ Filter Indicator</td><td rowspan="2">1 remote controller controls 1 indoor unit</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Remote operation of remote controller</td><td>For control from multiple locations</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>2 remote control
*1, *3</td><td>For control from 2 places (distant or local)</td><td>2 remote controllers control 1 indoor unit (Main and sub remote controllers)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Group control
*1, *2</td><td>For the control of multiple indoor units at the same time</td><td>1 remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units simultaneously</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Group control with 2 remote controllers
*1, *2, *3</td><td>For control from multiple locations</td><td>2 remote controllers control up to 16 indoor units from 2 different places simultaneously</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Other devices</td><td>Group control
*1, *2, *4</td><td>For the control of multiple indoor units at the same time</td><td>Daikin One+ Smart Thermostat
DTST-ONE-ADA-A
 
Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat
DTST-TOU-ADA-A
 
Adaptive Touch Controller
BACRC-T*
  </td><td rowspan="2">1 remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units simultaneously</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Group control
*1, *2, *5</td><td></td><td>DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor
AZAI6WSCDKA
  </td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

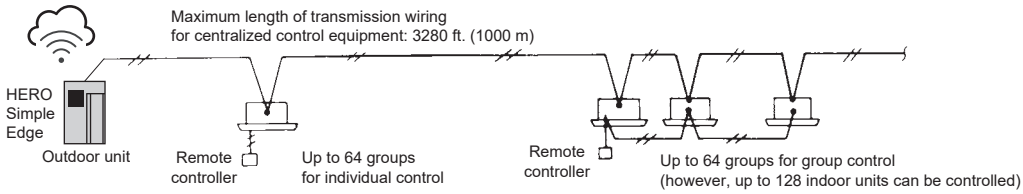
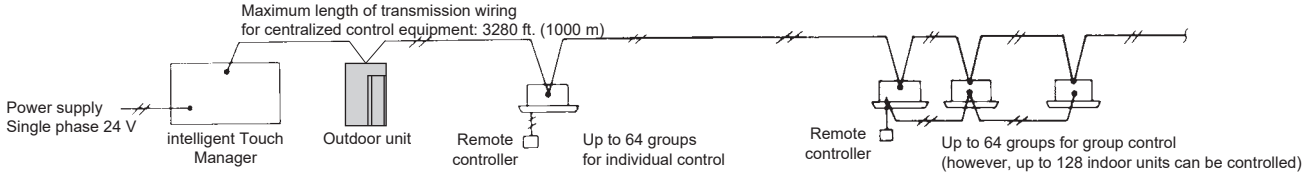
Note:

*1. Connection to indoor unit: For group control it is connected to 1 unit out of the group, and in the case of control with 2 remote controllers both controllers are connected to the indoor unit.
*2. In the case of group control, the controller used as the main controller must be selected with the Navigation/Madoka Remote Controller connected with the indoor unit having auto-swing function.
*3. In the case of using two remote controllers, the power supply connector (X35A, etc.) on the indoor printed circuit board and the adaptor for wiring (KRP1C74/75) cannot be used at the same time.
*4. Cannot use together with other wired or wireless controllers.
*5. The adaptor can used together with the Navigation/Madoka remote controller (optional).

	Outline of System
	
	
	
	
	
	
	

Centralized control using multi-zone controllers

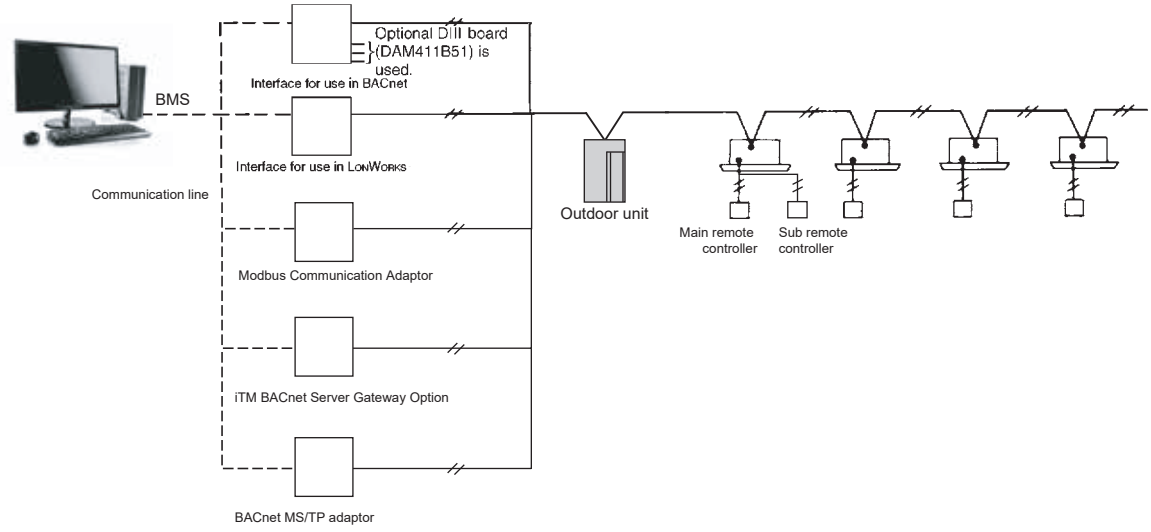
Control Method		Objective / Use	Unit Name and Model	Function	Standard Number of Units	
Cloud Monitoring and Control	HERO Simple Edge	HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication Adaptor	**DSE401A71** **DSE401B71** 	On-board LED indicates the operation status of the Daikin HERO Simple Edge. ■ Included SIM card for cloud connection ■ Directly powers from the outdoor unit, no external power supply is required. ■ Connects the ***VRV*** system to the HERO Cloud Service. ■ Easy setup with QR code label with device information (Edge ID, SIM Card Information). ■ Remote monitoring for outdoor unit operation data ■ Remote monitoring for indoor unit operation data ■ Simple customizable dashboards to provide quick status of connected units and sites ■ Animated piping layout with live data and past data at 1-minute intervals. ■ View and download trend graphs of historical operation data. ■ Download historical operation data. ■ Alarm dashboard with automatic email notifications when an alarm occurs ■ Energy management dashboard to view energy consumption for the outdoor units. ■ User management with customizable access for the specified user type. ■ Monitors multiple outdoor units across multiple sites with a single login.	Monitor up to 1 outdoor unit and 64 indoor units with one HERO Simple Edge	
Control by Multi-zone Controllers	intelligent Touch Manager	For providing centralized control of a Daikin ***VRV*** system and other building equipment	**DCM601B71** 	■ Independent Cool, Heat, and Setback Setpoints ■ Automatic Changeover in Heat Pump and Heat Recovery Systems ■ Setpoint range limitation ■ Simple Interlock ■ Alarm email ■ Errors and Operation History ■ Power Proportion Distribution Option ■ Various automatic control functions ■ Remote access function ■ ***VRV*** Power Proportional Distribution function ■ DIII-NET connection ■ BACnet Client option monitors and controls ancillary equipment via BACnet/IP ■ BACnet Server option used to integrate ***VRV*** indoor units and outdoor units to a BMS ■ Operation data available for last 5 days ■ iTM Web IF (HTTP) Option provides the function to monitor and control up to 512 indoor unit group addresses by a BMS via HTTP protocol.	Controls up to 64 groups (Max. 512 indoor units groups) with one intelligent Touch Manager. (Up to 7 iTM Plus Adaptor can be use to maximize indoor unit group count)	

	Outline of System
	■ **When using one HERO Simple Edge** 
	■ **When using one intelligent Touch Manager** 

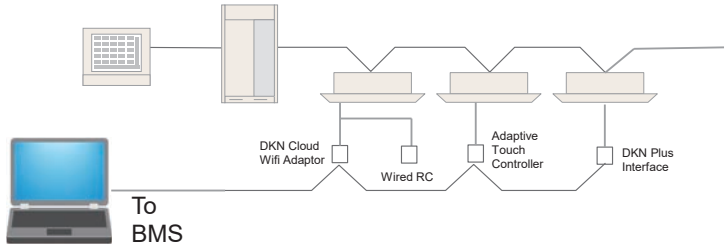
Control method using open protocol interface

Control Method	Objective / Use	Unit Name and Model	Function	Standard Number of Units
Building Control System	Building Management System (BMS) control for air-conditioning are carried out by communication and contact signal.	■ Interface for use in BACnet **DMS502B71** 	■ Interface for use in BACnet Interface unit to allow communications between ***VRV*** and BMS	Interface for use in BACnet: Up to 256 indoor unit groups (512 indoor units) When the option DIII board is used
		■ Interface for use in LonWorks **DMS504C71** 	■ Interface for use in LonWorks Interface unit to allow communications between ***VRV*** and BMS	Interface for use in LonWorks: Up to 64 indoor unit groups (128 indoor units)
		■ Modbus Communication Adaptor **DTA116A51** 	■ Modbus Communication Adaptor allows communication between ***VRV*** and BMS	Modbus Communication Adaptor: Up to 16 indoor units and 2 outdoor units
		■ iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option 	■ Direct connection to the ***VRV*** system using the iTM as a gateway ■ Individual device ID assigned to each indoor unit management point ■ Seamless control logic integration between the iTM and BMS ■ Greatly reduces the need for BMS integrator programming	Up to 128 indoor unit groups and 20 outdoor units
	Building Management System (BMS) control for air-conditioning are carried out by communication and contact signal.	■ DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor DTA118A71 DTA118A72 	■ Direct connection to the ***VRV*** system using the BACnet MS/TP Adaptor ■ Individual device ID assigned to each indoor unit management point ■ Seamless control logic integration between the BACnet MS/TP Adaptor and BMS	Up to 64 indoor units

Outline of System



Control Method	Objective / Use	Unit Name and Model	Function	Standard Number of Units	
Local Control BMS Interface	Building Management System (BMS) control for air-conditioning are carried out by communication and contact signal.	■ DKN Plus Interface **AZAI6WSPDKC** 	■ Versatile interface that can integrate with a third-party thermostat through multiple approaches: Cloud API, Modbus, BACnet MS/TP, Thermostat G/Y/W Relay Control: Fan, Cool, Heat ■ Easy commissioning with Daikin's Bluetooth furnace configuration app ■ Modbus and BACnet MS/TP Integration	Up to 16 indoor units	
		■ DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor **AZAI6WSCDKA** 	■ A wired remote controller is optional to connect to the indoor unit together with the Wi-Fi adaptor ■ Compatible with Amazon Alexa and Google Home voice control ■ The Wi-Fi adaptor wiring consists of a non-polar two-wire connection to the indoor unit at terminals P1/P2 and a connection to the indoor unit power supply connector X18A or X35A (16VDC) ■ Open API document is available for cloud to cloud integration ■ Modbus Integration	Up to 16 indoor units	
		■ Adaptive Touch Controller **BACRC-T*** 	■ Communication between indoor unit and BMS using BACnet MS/TP.	Up to 16 indoor units	

	Outline of System
	

1.9 BMS Integration Solutions

1.9.1 Compatibility with Multi-zone control

The table below shows which combinations of centralized control equipment are possible and which are not.

	 HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication Adaptor	 intelligent Touch Manager	 Interface for use in LonWorks	 Interface for use in BACnet	 Modbus Communication Adaptor	 Adaptive Touch Controller	 DKN Plus Interface	 DIII-Net/ BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor
	DSE401A71 DSE401B71	**DCM601B71**	**DMS504C71**	**DMS502B71**	**DTA116A51**	**BACRC-T *1**	**AZAI6WSPDKC**	**DTA118A71 DTA118A72**
HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication Adaptor	NG	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
intelligent Touch Manager	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK*1	OK	OK
Interface for use in LonWorks	OK	OK	NG	NG	NG	NG	OK	NG
Interface for use in BACnet	OK	OK	NG	NG	NG	OK	OK	NG
Modbus Communication Adaptor	OK	OK	OK	OK	NG	NG	OK	NG
Adaptive Touch Controller	OK	OK*1	OK	OK	OK	OK	NG	OK
DKN Plus Interface	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	NG	NG	OK
DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor	OK	OK	NG	NG	NG	OK	OK	OK*2

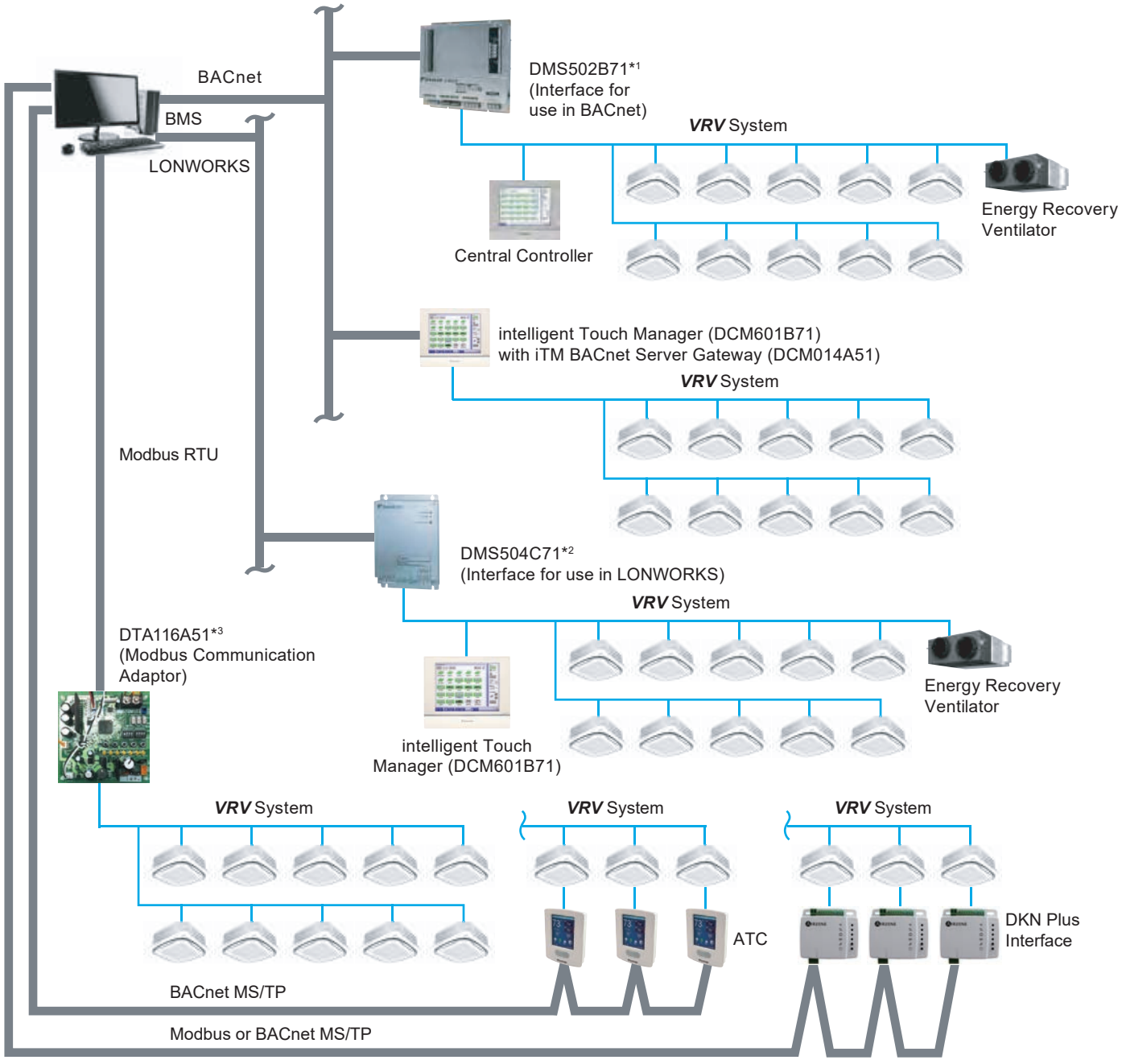
Note:

*1. Humidity, CO_2 and external equipment input/output and interlocks on the Adaptive Touch Controller will not be displayed on the intelligent Touch Manager.

*2. Max 2 adaptors per DIII-Net system

1.9.2 BMS Integration Overview

■ **BMS Introduction and Daikin Interface**



Name	Functions
Interface for use in BACnet (DMS502B71)	Interface unit to allow communications between ***VRV*** and BMS. Operation and monitoring of air-conditioning systems through BACnet communications.
Interface for use in LONWORKS (DMS504C71)	Interface unit to allow communications between ***VRV*** and BMS
Optional DIII board (DAM411B51)	Expansion kit, installed on the DMS502B71, to provide 2 more DIII-NET communication ports. Not for use independently.
HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication Adaptor (DSE401A71/DSE401B71)	The Daikin HERO Simple Edge provides a connection of a Daikin ***VRV*** system to the HERO Cloud Services network for remote monitoring.
intelligent Touch Manager (DCM601B71)	Main ***VRV*** control system or backup system if BMS fails.
Modbus communication adaptor (DTA116A51)	Allows integration between ***VRV*** and BMS. Operation and monitoring of the air-conditioning system through Modbus.
Adaptive Touch Controller (BACRC-T*)	Allows connected indoor unit integration directly to a BMS via BACnet MS/TP.
DKN Plus Interface (AZAI6WSPDKC)	Allows connected indoor unit integration directly to a BMS via BACnet MS/TP or Modbus communication.
DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor (DTA118A71/DTA118A72)	Direct connection to the BMS using BACnet MS/TP protocol.

1.9.3 Available Control Points through different BMS gateways

1. iTM BACnet Server Gateway Points List

■ **System configuration points linked to iTM control logic**

Point Name	Point Description
Enable iTM Schedule Operation	Enable or disable iTM schedule operation
Enable iTM Auto Changeover Operation	Enable or disable iTM auto changeover logic.
Timed Override Minutes	Set override time in minutes
System Forced Off	The forced system stop command will force the indoor unit to stop running. Remote controllers will be locked out from restarting indoor units during the forced system stop event.

■ **Indoor unit points**

	Point Name	Point Description
Monitoring Points	Unit On_Off Status	Monitors if the indoor unit fan is On or Off
	Alarm Status	Monitors whether or not the indoor unit is operating normally, and issues an alarm if the indoor unit has a malfunction. Error code is shown in the description.
	Room Temperature	Monitors and displays the room temperature.
	Unit On Details	Indoor unit details operation Off - Normal (ON) - Override - Setback
	Filter Sign Status	Monitors filter run time and provides service alert.
	Indoor Fan Status	Monitors if the indoor unit fan is On or Off
	Communication Status	Monitor if the communication is normal or in alarm
	Thermo-on Status	Monitors whether or not the indoor unit is actively cooling or heating.
	Compressor Status	Monitors if the compressor of the outdoor unit is On/Off/Defrost
	Aux Heater Status	Monitors if the external heater controlled by the indoor unit is operating.
	Changeover Option	Monitor if iTM changeover logic is active.

	Point Name	Point Description
Operation, Configuration and Monitoring Points	Occupancy Mode	Set the occupancy of the indoor unit occupied, Unoccupied or Standby
	Operation mode	Set Cool-Heat-Fan-Dry operation mode. For the indoor unit and monitors the latest mode
	Occ Cooling Setpoint	Sets the occupied cooling setpoint of the indoor unit and monitors the latest setpoint value.
	Occ Heating Setpoint	Sets the occupied heating setpoint of the indoor unit and monitors the latest setpoint value.
	Unocc Cooling Setpoint	Sets the unoccupied cooling setpoint of the indoor unit and monitors the latest setpoint value.
	Unocc Heating Setpoint	Sets the occupied heating setpoint of the indoor unit and monitors the latest setpoint value.
	Max Cooling Setpoint	Sets the maximum cooling setpoint of the indoor unit and monitors the latest setpoint value.
	Min Cooling Setpoint	Sets the minimum cooling setpoint of the indoor unit and monitors the latest setpoint value.
	Max Heating Setpoint	Sets the maximum heating setpoint of the indoor unit and monitors the latest setpoint value.
	Min Heating Setpoint	Sets the minimum heating setpoint of the indoor unit and monitors the latest setpoint value.
	Min Setpoint Differential (Cooling & Heating)	Set the minimum differential value between cooling and heating setpoint and monitor the latest differential value.
	Cooling & Heating Setpoint Tracking Mode	Enable or disable iTM setpoint tracking mode.
	Fan speed	Sets the indoor unit fan speed and monitors the latest setting
	Timed Override Operation	Enable or disable iTM override timer
	Remote Controller Prohibit (On_Off)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's On/Off.
	Remote Controller Prohibit (Operation Mode)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's operation mode.
	Remote Controller Prohibit (Setpoint)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's setpoint.
	Filter Sign Reset	Clears the filter sign status.
	Forced Thermo-off	Force the indoor unit to stop actively cooling or heating.

2. Interface for use in BACnet

Daikin indoor unit monitoring and control points accessible through the DMS502B71

Check the appropriate box indicating the required integrated points for this project.

		Function	Description
Operation, Configuration, and Monitoring		On/Off (Note 2)	Start/stops the indoor unit and monitors the latest status
		Operation Mode (Note 2)	Sets the Cool/Heat/Fan/Dry mode for the indoor unit and monitors the latest mode
		Setpoint setting	Sets the setpoint of the indoor unit and monitors the latest setpoint.
		Filter sign and reset	Monitors filter run time, provides service alert, and allows a manual reset of the status as required.
		Remote controller permit/prohibit	Permits or prohibits the remote controller so that it can or cannot be used to control the indoor unit's On/Off/Operation mode/Setpoint
		Lower Centralized Controller operation enable/disable	Enables or disables operation of a Centralized Controller connected to the DIII network .
		Fan Speed setting (Note 2)	Sets the fan speed and monitors the latest setting.
		Airflow direction setting (Note 2)	Sets the airflow direction and monitors the latest setting.
		Forced system stop	The forced system stop command will force the indoor units to stop running based upon a received emergency alarm input. Remote controllers will be locked out from restarting indoor units during a forced system stop event.
		Forced Thermo-off	In response to the forced thermo-off command, the indoor unit stops actively cooling or heating.
		Energy saving	Offsets the internal setpoint +3.6°F (2°C) in cooling, and -3.6°F (-2°C) in heating in an indoor unit. The actual setpoint is not changed.
		Ventilation mode setting (Note 2)	Sets the ventilation mode and monitors the latest mode.
		Ventilation amount setting (Note 2)	Sets the ventilation amount and monitors the latest amount.
Monitor		On/Off status	Monitors the On/Off status of the indoor unit.
		Alarm	Monitors whether or not the indoor unit is operating normally, and issues an alarm if the indoor unit has a malfunction.
		Malfunction code	Displays a malfunction code specified by Daikin if an indoor unit in the system has a malfunction.
		Operation mode	Monitors if the indoor unit is in Cool, Heat, Fan, or Dry mode.
		Room temperature (Note 1)	Monitors the room temperature.
		Filter sign	Monitors filter run time and provides service alert.
		Thermo-on status	Monitors whether or not the indoor unit is in actively cooling or heating.
		Compressor status	Monitors if the compressor of the outdoor unit connected to the indoor unit is properly operating.
		Indoor fan status	Monitors if the indoor unit's fan is properly operating.
		Heater status	Monitors if the indoor unit's heater is properly operating.
		Ventilation mode status	Monitors the ventilation mode status of the Energy Recover Ventilator
		Ventilation amount status	Monitors the ventilation amount status of the Energy Recovery Ventilator

Application Note

1. Room temperature data (BACnet object name RoomTemp_XXX) by default is reported from the Daikin indoor units return air thermistor. This applies to all ***VRV*** indoor unit styles and capacities. During periods when the indoor unit is turned off or during certain operating modes that cycle the fan off including defrost operation, hot-start and system pressure equalization, the reported temperature may not accurately reflect the actual space temperature. For applications where this temperature value will be primary to system control including mode and temperature setpoint management, it is recommended that the Daikin remote temperature sensor (Part No. KRCS01-1B or 4B depending on model) is specified for each indoor unit and installed within the occupied space or unit be configured to be controlled from temperature sensor in BRC1E72/73 Navigation Controller if the unit is capable.
2. The indoor unit saves the settings for the Setpoint, On/Off, Operation mode, Airflow direction, and Fan Speed in the nonvolatile memory of the indoor unit each time they are changed, so that the settings will not be lost when a power loss occurs. This nonvolatile memory has a write count limit and may cause a failure if the "write to" count limit is exceeded. Therefore when the Setpoint, On/Off, Operation mode, Airflow direction, and Fan Speed of each indoor unit are automatically controlled from the building management system via the Interface for use in BACnet, be sure that the number of changes for each setting **should not exceed 7,000 times per year**.
   If the same value is repeatedly sent, it will not be added to the total "write to" count.
3. BACnet is a registered trademark of ASHRAE.

3. Interface for use in Lonworks

Daikin air conditioner monitoring and control points accessible through the DMS504C71

Check the appropriate box indicating the required integrated points for this project.

		Function	Description
Monitoring points		ON/OFF Status	Monitors the start/stop status of the indoor unit.
		Operation Mode Status	Monitors whether the indoor unit is in the cooling, heating or fan mode.
		Temperature Setpoint	Reports the current temperature setpoint of the indoor unit.
		Room Temperature (Note 1)	Reports the current return air or room temperature of the indoor unit. (Note 1)
		Airflow rate	Reports the current fan speed setting of the indoor unit.
		Filter Indication Status	Reports the status of the filter maintenance icon on the indoor unit remote controller.
		Error Status	Monitors the indoor unit malfunction status.
		Error Code	Reports a specific malfunction code for an indoor unit in alarm state.
		Thermo Status	Reports whether the indoor unit is demanding heating or cooling capacity or if it is in a satisfied state.
		Forced Thermostat Off Status	Reports whether the indoor unit is forced to a satisfied state.
		Remote Controller ON/OFF Restriction Status	Indicates the restriction status of the indoor units remote controller ON/OFF button.
		Remote Controller Operating Mode Restriction Status	Indicates the restriction status of the indoor units remote controller operation mode button.
		Remote Controller Temperature Setpoint Restriction Status	Indicates the restriction status of the indoor units remote controller temperature setpoint buttons.
		System Forced OFF Setting Status	Monitors the system forced off status for all indoor units connected to the Lon gateway.
		Sub-group Control Operation Restriction Setting Status	Monitors the network varlable input status for permission/prohibition of centralized control devices on the DIII-Net bus.
		A/C Communication Status	Monitors the communication status of the indoor unit to the DIII-Net.
Operation, configuration, and control points		ON/OFF Command	Starts and stops the indoor unit. (Note 2)
		Operating Mode	Sets the cooling/heating/ventilating/auto mode for the indoor unit. (Note 2)
		Temperature Setpoint	Commands the temperature setpoint for the indoor unit. (Note 2)
		Airflow Rate (Fan Speed)	Sets the fan speed (high, low) for the indoor unit. (Note 2)
		Filter Indicator Reset	Resets the filter maintenance indicator on the indoor unit.
		Forced Thermo OFF Setting	Forcibly stops all cooling or heating capacity for the indoor unit.
		Remote Controller ON/OFF Restriction Setting	Disables the operation of the indoor unit remote controller ON/OFF button.
		Remote Controller Operating Mode Restriction Setting	Disables the operation of the indoor unit remote controller MODE button.
		Remote Controller Temperature Setpoint Restriction Setting	Disables the operation of the indoor unit remote controller temperature setpoint buttons.
		System Forced OFF Setting	Forcibly stops/resets all indoor units that are under control of the Lon interface. Units cannot be started by a remote controller or centralized controller while in this state.
		Sub-group Control Restriction Setting	Network variable input to permit or prohibit the operation of Daikin centralized control devices on the DIII-Net bus.

Application Note

= Control Items pertaining to the entire system

1. Room temperature data (***SNVT_temp_p nvoSpaceTemp_nn***) by default is reported from the Daikin indoor units embedded return air thermistor. Depending upon the remote controller model and the manufacturing date of the indoor unit, this may be reconfigured to retrieve the room temperature value from the remote controller thermistor. During periods when the indoor unit is turned off or during certain operating modes that cycle off the fan including defrost operation, hot-start and system pressure equalization, the reported temperature may not accurately reflect the actual space temperature. For applications where this temperature value will be primary to system control including mode and temperature setpoint management, it is recommended that the Daikin remote temperature sensor (Part No. KRCS01-1B) is specified for each indoor unit or the remote controller is programmed to report room temperature through the gateway. Please consult Daikin AC for guidance with specific applications.
2. The Daikin indoor unit maintains the settings for temperature, start/stop status, operating mode, air direction and fan speed in the non-volatile memory each time they are changed. These settings will not be lost upon a power loss event.

4. DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor

- **System configuration points**

Point Name	Description
D3 control address indoor	Sets the range of indoor unit address to monitor and control.
D3 control address outdoor	Sets the range of outdoor unit address to monitor and control.
Device instance method	Sets BACnet device instance method of virtual devices.
Adaptor device instance	Sets adaptor BACnet device instance.
Network number	Sets the BACnet network number for virtual device.
Baud rate	Sets BACnet baud rate
Sets scale	Sets the temperature scale for BACnet Objects

- **Indoor unit points**

Point Name	Description
Unit On_Off Status	Monitors and displays indoor unit On or Off status
Unit On/Off Command	Command indoor unit On or Off
Alarm Status	Monitors whether the indoor unit is operating normally and issues an alarm if the indoor unit has a malfunction. Error Code is shown in the description.
Operation Mode (Note 3,4)	Command and monitor indoor unit operation mode
Ventilation Mode	Command and monitor ventilation unit operation mode
Ventilation Rate	Command and monitor ventilation unit airflow rate
Fresh Up	Command and monitor fresh up setting for a ventilation unit.
Room Temperature	Monitor the room temperature of the indoor unit
Cooling Setpoint (Note 2)	Command and monitor the indoor unit cooling setpoint
Heating Setpoint (Note 2)	Command and monitor the indoor unit heating setpoint
Fan Speed	Sets the indoor unit fan speed and monitors the latest setting
Airflow Direction	Command and monitor the indoor unit airflow direction (louver control)
Remote Controller Prohibit (On_Off)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's On/Off
Remote Controller Prohibit (Operation Mode)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's operation mode
Remote Controller Prohibit (On_Off)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's setpoint
Filter Sign Status	Monitors and displays the filter run time and provides service alert.
Filter sign Reset	Clears the filter sign status
Indoor Unit Fan Status	Monitors and displays indoor unit fan status
Communication Status	Monitor if the communication is Normal or in Alarm
Thermo On status	Monitors and displays whether the indoor unit is actively cooling or heating.
Compressor Status	Monitors and displays if the compressor of the outdoor unit is On/Off/Defrost
Aux Heater Status	Monitors if the external heater controlled by the indoor unit is operating
Forced Thermo Off	Command Forced Thermo Off for the target indoor unit.
Indoor unit changeover option	Monitors if the indoor unit can change modes between heating and cooling
Return air temperature (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the return air temperature
Discharge air temperature (Note 5,7)	Monitors and displays the discharge air temperature of the FXMQ_PB indoor unit only.
Liquid pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature.
Gas pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the gas pipe temperature.
EV position (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the expansion valve position.
ODU Airnet address (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays outdoor unit Airnet address.
Forced Stop status	Monitors and displays forced stop status
Energy saving command (Setpoint shift)	Control and monitor energy savings command.

1. Refer to design guide & submittal datasheet for the indoor unit point combability.
2. The Mini-Splits have varied setpoints ranges (64F – 90F in cooling and 50F – 86F in heating). In the event a value outside of the available setpoint range is sent from the BACnet building management system via BACnet Adaptor, the indoor unit will ignore the out of range setpoint command (However, in the above case, the BACnet Adaptor can only send the cooling setpoint value and heating setpoint value of between 64F-82F.)
3. Only Ventilation cleaning on VAM.
4. Fan, Dry, and Auto are not supported when using the KRP928 adaptor for Mini-split integration to the DIII-Net.
5. Unit types other than those supported display an invalid value (0)
6. The data is invalid for models that do not support the target data.
7. For FXDQ, FXHQ and FHQ units a valid value cannot be displayed.

- **Outdoor unit points**

Point Name	Description
Communication Status	Monitors and displays the communication status
Operation Mode	Monitors and displays the operation mode (Cool, Heat, Fan or Heat &Cool)
Outdoor unit Alarm Status	Monitors whether the outdoor unit is operating normally
Special Modes	Monitors and displays if a unit is defrost/oil-return/pump down or restart standby sequence.
Electric Power	Monitors and displays the electric power (calculated)
Electric Current	Monitors and displays the electric current (calculated).
Outdoor Air Temperature	Monitors and displays the outdoor air temperature
Backup Operation	Monitors and displays if the outdoor unit is in backup operation
Stepdown control	Monitors and displays if the outdoor unit is in stepdown control.
Condensing Pressure	Monitors and displays the condensing pressure
Evaporating Pressure	Monitors and displays the evaporating pressure
Condensing Temperature	Monitors and displays the condensing temperature
Evaporating Temperature	Monitors and displays the evaporating temperature
Inverter Compressor 1 Speed	Monitors and displays the speed of the inverter compressor 1
Inverter Compressor 2 Speed	Monitors and displays the speed of the inverter compressor 2
Fan Step	Monitors and displays the fan step
EV Position 1	Monitors and displays the position of the expansion valve 1
EV Position 2	Monitors and displays the position of the expansion valve 2
Hot Gas Temperature (Compressor 1)	Monitors and displays the hot gas temperature of the compressor 1
Hot Gas Temperature (Compressor 2)	Monitors and displays the hot gas temperature of the compressor 2
Liquid Pipe Temperature	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature
Sub Compressor Body Temperature	Monitors and displays the compressor body temperature.
Liquid Pipe Temperature (HX Upper)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature for the upper HX
Liquid Pipe Temperature (HX Lower)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature for the lower HX
Liquid Pipe Temperature (Deicer)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature for the de-icer
Gas Pipe Temperature (HX Upper	Monitors and displays the gas pipe temperature for the upper HX
Gas Pipe Temperature (HX Lower)	Monitors and displays the gas pipe temperature for the lower HX
Suction Temperature	Monitors and displays the suction temperature
Compressor Suction Temperature	Monitors and displays the compressor’s suction temperature
Subcool Inlet Temperature	Monitors and displays the subcool inlet temperature
Subcool Outlet Temperature	Monitors and displays the subcool outlet temperature
Compressor Body Temperature	Monitors and displays the sub compressor body temperature
Receiver Inlet Temperature	Monitor and displays the Receiver Inlet Temperature.
Subcool EV Position	Monitors and displays the subcool expansion valve position
4WayValve	Monitors and displays the 4 Way valve position
Compressor1 current	Monitors and displays the Compressor 1 current (calculated)
Compressor2 current	Monitors and displays the compressor 2 current (calculated)

Compatible outdoor units.

- VRV4: RXYQ_T(A), REYQ_T(A), RXLQ_T(A), RELQ_T(A)
- VRV 4X: REYQ_XA, RXYQ_XA
- VRV4S: RXTQ_TA
- VRV LIFE: RXSQ_TA
- VRVW (T): RWEQ_T
- RWEYQ72PCTJ & RWEYQ72PCYD
- VRV Emerion: REYQ_AA, RXYQ_AA

5. Modbus Communication Adaptor

■ **Monitor**

On/Off	On/Off status of indoor units
Operation mode	Cooling, Heating, Fan, Dry, Auto (depend on indoor unit capability)
Setpoint	Setpoint of indoor units
Room temperature	Suction temperature of indoor units
Fan direction	Swing, Flap direction (depend on indoor unit capability)
Fan volume	L, M, H (depend on indoor unit capability)
Forced off status	Forced off status of indoor units
Error	Malfunction, Warning with Error code
Filter sign	Filter sign of indoor units
Communication status	Communication normal/error of indoor units

■ **Control**

On/Off	On/Off control of indoor units
Operation mode	Cooling, Heating, Fan, Dry, Auto (depend on indoor unit capability)
Setpoint	Cooling/Heating setpoint
Fan direction	Swing, Stop, Flap direction (depend on indoor unit capability)
Fan volume	L, M, H (depend on indoor unit capability)
Filter sign reset	Reset filter sign of indoor units

6. DKN Plus Interface

■ **Monitoring**

Unit on/off	On/Off control of indoor units
Setpoint	Setpoint of indoor units
Room temperature	Suction temperature of indoor units
Mode (Auto/Cool/Heat/Fan/Dry)	Cooling, Heating, Fan, Dry, Auto (depend on indoor unit capability)
Fan speed	L, M, H (depend on indoor unit capability)
Louver position	Swing, Flap direction (depend on indoor unit capability)
Error code	Malfunction, Warning with Error code

■ **Control**

Unit on/off	On/Off control of indoor units
Setpoint	Setpoint of indoor units
Mode (Auto/Cool/Heat/Fan/Dry)	Cooling, Heating, Fan, Dry, Auto (depend on indoor unit capability)
Fan speed	L, M, H (depend on indoor unit capability)
Louver position	Swing, Flap direction (depend on indoor unit capability)

7. DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor

■ **Monitoring**

Unit on/off	On/Off control of indoor units
Setpoint	Setpoint of indoor units
Room temperature	Suction temperature of indoor units
Mode (Auto/Cool/Heat/Fan/Dry)	Cooling, Heating, Fan, Dry, Auto (depend on indoor unit capability)
Fan speed	L, M, H (depend on indoor unit capability)
Louver position	Swing, Flap direction (depend on indoor unit capability)
Error code	Malfunction, Warning with Error code

■ **Control**

Unit on/off	On/Off control of indoor units
Setpoint	Setpoint of indoor units
Mode (Auto/Cool/Heat/Fan/Dry)	Cooling, Heating, Fan, Dry, Auto (depend on indoor unit capability)
Fan speed	L, M, H (depend on indoor unit capability)
Louver position	Swing, Flap direction (depend on indoor unit capability)

8. Adaptive Touch Controller

The following points are available through BACnet MS/TP:

■ **Monitoring Points**

#	Value	Description	Type
1	SPACE_SENSOR	Space Temperature Value Measured By Controller	R
2	REMOTE_CO2_SENSOR	Remote CO_2 Sensor Value	R
3	REMOTE_HUMIDITY	Remote Humidity Sensor Value	R
4	REM_SPACE/DAT_SENSOR	Remote Space Temperature Or Discharge Air Temperature Value	R
5	OUTDOOR_AIR	Outside Air Temperature	R
6	SENSOR_FAILURE	Sensor Failure Value	R
7	IU_SUCTION_AIR_TEMP	Indoor Unit Return Air Temperature	R
8	COOLING_HOURS	Cooling Hours	R
9	HEATING_HOURS	Heating Hours	R
10	NUMBER_IDU_CONNECTED	Number Of Indoor Unit Connected To The Controller	R
11	IDU_GAS_PIPE_TEMP	Indoor Unit Gas Pipe Temperature	R
12	IDU_LIQUID_PIPE_TEMP	Indoor Unit Liquid Pipe Temperature	R
13	IU_FAN_HOURS	Indoor Unit Fan Operation Time	R
14	ODU_FAN_STEP	Outdoor Unit Fan Step	R
15	IU_OPERATING_HOURS	Indoor Unit Operation Hours	R
16	IU_ENERGIZED_HOURS	Indoor Unit Energized Hours	R
17	IU_FAN_SPEED_RPM	Indoor Unit Fan Speed RPM	R
18	IU_EV_OPEN_PULSE	Indoor Unit EEV Pulses	R
19	OU_TH1_OAT	Outdoor Unit TH1 Value	R
20	OU_TH2_HEAT_EXCHANGER	Outdoor Unit TH2 Heat Exchanger	R
21	OU_TH3_DAT	Outdoor Unit TH3	R
22	OU_TH4	Outdoor Unit TH4	R
23	OU_TH5	Outdoor Unit TH5	R
24	OU_TH6	Outdoor Unit TH6	R
25	OU_EV1	Outdoor Unit EEV Pulses	R
26	OU_COMP_SPEED_RPM	Outdoor Unit Compressor Speed	R
27	OU_OPERATION_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Operation Hours	R
28	IU_TH4_DISCHARGE_AIR_TEMP	Indoor Unit Discharge Air Temperature	R
29	OU_FAN1_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Fan 1 Hours	R
30	OU_FAN2_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Fan 2 Hours	R
31	OU_COMP1_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Compressor 1 Hours	R
32	OU_COMP2_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Compressor 2 Hours	R
33	AUX_TOTAL_HOURS	Auxiliary Heat Total Hours	R
34	HEAT_TOTAL_HOURS	Heating Total Hours	R
35	COOL_TOTAL_HOURS	Cooling Total Hours	R
36	ALARM_ON-OFF_ECON	Configurable Point (Alarm Or Motion Sensor Or Econ)	R
37	SYSTEM_FORCED_OFF	System Forced Off (T1-T2)	R
38	ALARM_STATUS	Alarm Status	R
39	FILTER_SIGN_STATUS	Filter Sign Status	R
40	IU_COOLING_THERMO_ON	Indoor Unit Cooling Thermo On	R
41	IU_HEATING_THERMO_ON	Indoor Unit Heating Thermo On	R
42	COMMUNICATION_STATUS	Indoor Unit Communication Status	R
43	TIMED OVERRIDE STATUS	Override Status	R
44	IU_FAN_STATUS	Indoor Unit Fan Status	R
45	AUX_HEATER_STATUS	Aux Heater Status	R
46	EMEREGENCY_HEATER_STATUS	Emergency Heater Status	R
47	IU_VRV_CENTRAL_CONTROLLER	Central Controller Connection Status	R
48	IU_THERMO-ON_STATUS	Indoor Unit Thermo-On	R
49	DEHUM_MODE	Dehumidification Mode	R
50	HUMIDIFICATION_MODE	Humidification Mode	R

#	Value	Description	Type
51	AUX_HEAT_STG_1	Aux Heat Stg 1	R
52	AUX_HEAT_STG_2	Aux Heat Stg 2	R
53	ADPTR AUX Heat Status	Indoor Unit Aux Heat Status	R
54	CALL_FOR_DEHUM	Dehumidification Call	R
55	AUXH_EMERGENCY_OPERATION	Aux Heater Emergency Heater Operation	R
56	DEFROST_OIL_RETURN_MODE	Defrost Oil Return Mode Value	R
57	ECONOMIZER_MODE	Economizer Mode	R
58	TIMED_OVERRIDE_OPERATION	Time Override Operation	R
59	MOTION	Motion Sensor Value	R
60	MOTION_SENSOR_OUT	Motion Sensor Output	R
61	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_1_STATUS	Digital Output 1 Status Value	R
62	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_2_STATUS	Digital Output 2 Status Value	R
63	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_3_STATUS	Digital Output 3 Status Value	R
64	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_4_STATUS	Digital Output 4 Status Value	R
65	IU_CAUTION_1	Indoor Unit Caution	R
66	IU_WARNING	Indoor Unit Warning	R
67	IU_ERROR	Indoor Unit Error	R
68	ALARM_CONTACT	Alarm Contact Status	R
69	IU_DRAIN_PUMP_MP	Indoor Unit Drain Pump Status	R
70	IU_HUMIDIFIER	Indoor Unit Humidifier Status	R
71	IU_ANTIFREEZING_TBF	Indoor Unit Antifreeze Operation Status	R
72	IU_FLOAT	Indoor Unit Float Status	R
73	IU_RC Fan Prohibit	Indoor Unit Fan Speed Change Prohibit	R
74	On Prohibit	Indoor Unit On Prohibit	R
75	IU_TEST_RUN	Indoor Unit Test Run Operation	R
76	TEST_OPERATION	Test Operation Status	R
77	OU_TEST_RUN	Outdoor Unit Test Run Operation	R
78	Backup Operation	Outdoor Unit Backup Operation	R
79	IU_RC_LouverProhibit	Indoor Unit Louver Prohibit	R
80	IU_CHANGEOVER_OPTION	Indoor Unit Master Status	R
81	OU_SV1	Outdoor Unit SV1 Value	R
82	FORCED_THERMO_OFF_STATUS	Forced Thermo Off Status Value	R
83	FORCED_STPT_SHIFT	Indoor Unit Setpoint Shift	R
84	OU_OP_MODE_ACTUAL_DISP	Outdoor Unit Actual Mode	R

■ **Control Points**

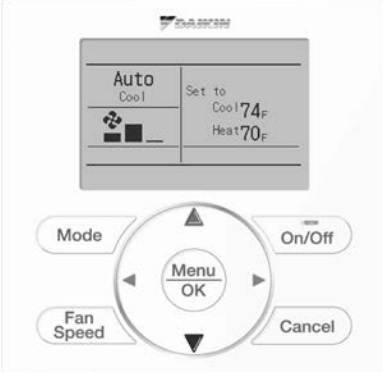
#	Value	Description	Type
1	AUX_HEAT	Auxiliary Heat Output (Modulating)	W
2	CO2_DAMPER	CO_2 Damper Outoput (Modulating)	W
3	HUMIDIFIER_DEHUMIDIFIER	Humidifier Or Dehumidifier Output (Modulating)	W
4	IU_W_CONTROL_TEMP	Control Temperature Used By The Controller	W
5	UI_COOL_STPT	Active Cooling Setpoint	W
6	UI_HEAT_STPT	Active Heating Setpoint	W
7	OCC_COOLING_STPT	Occupied Cooling Setpoint	W
8	OCC_HEATING_STPT	Occupied Heating Setpoint	W
9	UNOCC_COOLING_STPT	Unoccupied Cooling Setpoint	W
10	UNOCC_HEATING_STPT	Unoccupied Heating Setpoint	W
11	MIN_COOLING_STPT	Minimum Cooling Setpoint	W
12	MAX_COOLING_STPT	Maximum Cooling Setpoint	W
13	MIN_HEATING_STPT	Minimum Heating Setpoint	W
14	MAX_HEATING_STPT	Maximum Heating Setpoint	W
15	AUX_H_CONFIG_OAT_STPT	Outside Air Temperature Setpoint For Aux Heat Logic	W
16	AUXH_PROP	Aux Heat Control Proportional	W
17	AUXH_INTG	Aux Heat Control Integral	W
18	DEHUM_STPT	Dehumidification Setpoint	W
19	HUM_HYSTERESIS	Hysteresis Used For Humidity Control	W
20	DEHUM_PROP	Dehumidification Control Proportional	W
21	DEHUM_INTG	Dehumidification Control Integral	W
22	HUM_PROP	Humidification Control Proportional	W
23	HUM_INTG	Humidification Control Integral	W
24	SPACE_HUM	Space Humidity Value	W
25	HUMIDITY_STPT	Humidification Setpoint	W
26	CO2_STPT	CO_2 Control Setpoint	W
27	CO2_DIFFERENTIAL	CO_2 Control Differential	W
28	CO2_MINIMUM_POSITION	CO_2 Damper Minimum Position For Occupied Mode	W
29	CO2_MAXIMUM_POSITION	CO_2 Damper Maximum Position For Occupied Mode	W
30	CO2_UNOCCUPIED_POSITION	CO_2 Damper Unoccupied Position	W
31	CO2_TIME_DELAY	Time Delay For CO_2 Control (Minutes)	W
32	CO2_PROP	CO_2 Control Proportional	W
33	CO2_INTG	CO_2 Control Integral	W
34	SPACE_CO2	Space CO_2 Value	W
35	MOTION_UNOCC_DELAY	Time To Set To Unit To Unoccupied When No Motion Is Detected	W
36	OCCUPANCY_RELAX_MAXIMUM	Maximum Setpoint Relax When No Motion Is Detected	W
37	DEMAND_SETPOINT_RELAX_CLG	Cooling Setpoint Relaxation Value During Demand Limit	W
38	DEMAND_SETPOINT_RELAX_HTG	Heating Setpoint Relaxation Value During Demand Limit	W
39	DEMAND_RECOVERY_STEP_TIME	Demand Recovery Step Time Minutes	W
40	ECONOMIZER_TIMER	Economizer Timer	W
41	COOL_MODE_TEMP_OFFSET	Cool Mode Temp Offset Value	W
42	HEAT_MODE_TEMP_OFFSET	Heat Mode Temp Offset Value	W
43	OUTDOOR_TEMP	Outdoor Temp	W
44	DISCHARGE_AIR_TEMP	Discharge Air Temp	W
45	STAGE_DELAY	Stage Delay For Aux Heat	W
46	FILTER_SIGN_RESET	Filter Sign Reset	W
47	HUMIDITY_CONTROL_ALWAYS	Enable Humidity Control During Unoccupied Mode	W
48	HUM_OVRRIDE	Turn On Humidity Control During Override	W
49	REMOTE_HUMIDITY_SENSOR	Enable Remote Humidity Sensor	W
50	HUMIDIFY_DURING_HEAT	Allow Humidity Control During Heat	W
51	OCCUPIED_MODE	Occupied Mode	W

#	Value	Description	Type
52	ENABLE_LOCAL_SCHED	Enabled Local Schedule	W
53	STPT_HOLD	Hold Enable	W
54	STPT_ TRACKING	Setpoint Tracking Mode	W
55	DAT_SENSOR	Enables Remote Discharge Air Temperature	W
56	DEHUM_WOUT_FAN	Dehumidification Without Fan	W
57	OAT_SENSOR	Enable Outside Air Sensor	W
58	HUMIDIFY_WOUT_FAN	Humidify Without Fan	W
59	ENABLE_REMOTE_CO2_SENSOR	Enable Remote CO_2 Sensor Monitoring	W
60	DEHUM_OVERCOOL_STATUS	Overcooling To Dehumidify	W
61	SPEED_UP	Speed Up Timers	W
62	RC_PROHIBIT_MODE_OPERATION	Remote Controller Prohibit Mode Operation	W
63	REMOTE_CONTROLLER_PROHIBIT_STPT	Remote Controller Prohibit Setpoint	W
64	ENABLE_DEMAND_CONTROL	Enables Demand Control	W
65	CO2 VENT ENABLE	Enable CO_2 Control	W
66	CONTINUOUS_AUX_FAN	Enable Fan Operation During Aux Heat	W
67	FORCE_FAN	External Forced Fan Input	W
68	CALL_FOR_HUMIDIFICATION	Humidification Call	W
69	HUMIDIFIER_OUT	Humidifier Output Status	W
70	ECONOMIZER	Economizer Status	W
71	CO2_ALARM_OUT	CO_2 Alarm Status	W
72	DEHUMIDIFIER_OUT	Dehumidification Output Status	W
73	ENERGY_SAVINGS_ICON	Energy Saving Icon Status	W
74	AUX_HEAT_FAN	Check For Fan Before Running Aux Heat	W
75	Humidity_Display_Enable	Enable Humidity Display	W
76	CO2_Display_Enable	Enable CO_2 Display	W
77	OAT_Display_Enable	Enable Outside Air Sensor Display	W
78	OPERATION_MODE	Controller Operation Mode	W
79	AUX_HEAT_CONFIGURATION	Aux Heat Configuration Setting	W
80	OVER_COOL_FAN_SPEED	Overcool Mode Fan Speed	W
81	FAN_MODE	Fan Speed	W
82	SCHEDULE_OCC_MODE	Occupancy Mode To Be During Start Of Schedule	W
83	ROOM_TEMP_CALCULATION	Room Temperature Calculation Logic	W
84	PRI_CHANGEOVER_DEADBAND	Primary Changeover Deadband	W
85	SEC_CHANGEOVER_DEADBAND	Second Changeover Deadband	W
86	GUARD_TIME	Autochangeover Gaurdtimer Value	W
87	MIN_STPT_DIFFERENTIAL	Minimum Setpoint Differential Value	W
88	TIMED_OVERRIDE_MINUTES	Timed Override Minutes	W
89	COOLING_UNOCC_RECOVERY	Cooling Unoccupied Recovery Setpoint	W
90	HEATING_UNOCC_RECOVERY	Heating Unoccupied Recovery Setpoint	W
91	DEMAND_CONTROL	Demand Control	W
92	OCCUPANCY_SENSOR_LOGIC	Occupancy Sensor Logic	W
93	OCCUPANCY_RELAX_TIME_DELAY	Occupancy Sensor Setpoint Relax Time Delay	W
94	IU_LOUVER_2_POSITION	Indoor Unit Louver 2 Position	W
95	INPUT_6_CONFIGURATION	Binary Input 6 Configuration	W
96	CO2_DAMPER_SELECTION	CO_2 Damper Type Selection	W
97	IU_W_AIRFLOW_DIRECTION	Indoor Unit Louver Direction	W
98	DO-1_SETTING	Do 1 Setting Value	W
99	DO-2_SETTING	Do 2 Setting Value	W
100	DO-3_SETTING	Do 3 Setting Value	W
101	DO-4_SETTING	Do 4 Setting Value	W
102	DEHUMIDIFICATION	Dehumidification Control Type	W
103	HUMIDIFICATION	Humidification Control Type	W
104	EXTERNAL_DEHUM_CONTROL	External Dehumidification Control Type	W
105	OVERCOOL_OPTION	Overcool Degree	W

2. Control Devices

2.1 BRC1E73 Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Remote Controller)

2.1.1 Features



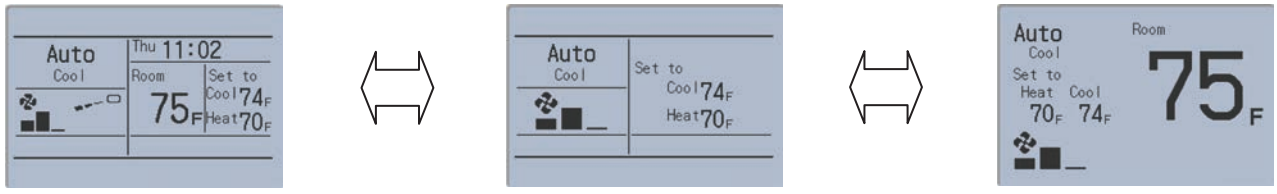
BRC1E73

- Selectable Screen Display ....3 types of displays are available; Standard, Detailed and Simple.
- Clear Display.....Equipped with backlight and large sized character display and buttons.
- Stylish .....Basic tone is white and arrow keys are located at the center.
- Simple Operation .....Simple operation used with arrow keys and menu-driven method.
- Multilingual Display .....Available for selection of 3 languages to display arbitrarily.
- Convenient Features.....Schedule function and Daylight Saving Time function are improved.

Selectable Screen Display

- Thanks to dot LCD, 3 different displays can be selected to meet various customers.
- New Simple display helps the customers to use easily.
- In Auto mode, the actual operation mode (Cool or Heat) is newly displayed.

Detailed display **Standard display** **Simple display**



- Larger room temperature display
- Layout to fill the entire screen

Note:
CENTRAL CONTROL , MASTER CONTROLLED , and **This function is not available** are not displayed.

2.1.2 Functions

Functions

Category	Function	BRC1E73
Basic Functions	Drawing display	Full dot LCD
	Operation method	Menu selection
	Backlight function	✓
Convenient Functions	Clock function (time display)	✓
	Display selection	✓ *1
	Keylock function	✓
	Daylight saving time function	✓
	Schedule (weekly) timer	✓
Maintenance/Services	Model name display	✓ *2 *3 *5
	Contact dealer display	✓ *3 *4
	Operation time display	✓ *2
	Operational data display	✓ *2

✓: Possible

Note:

*1 Used for setting Standard Display mode, Detailed Display mode or Simple Display mode.
*2 Can display for some model only.
*3 When an error occurs, the error code blinks and the contact address and model names appear.
*4 The contact address must be registered when the controller is installed.
*5 For some models, model codes are displayed instead of model names.

Restrictions

1. In the case of 2 remote control system.

		Main			
		BRC1E73	Wireless BRC4*** BRC7***	DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor AZA***	DKN Plus Interface AZA***
Sub	BRC1E73	✓	—	✓	✓
	Wireless BRC4*** BRC7***	—	—	✓	✓
	DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor AZA***	✓	—	—	—
	DKN Plus Interface AZA***	✓	—	—	—

✓: Connectable —: Not connectable

- Due to the limited power supply capacity, there are some restrictions when controlling 2 remote controllers.
  - Common restriction for SkyAir and ***VRV***
    When controlling one indoor unit with 2 remote controllers, the remote controller operated first turns the backlight on.
  - Restriction for ***VRV*** only
    When configuring two remote controllers system, Adaptor for wiring (KRP1*) or Power supply of Adapter for indoor unit (X18A, X35A) is unable to use due to capacity.
- When controlling 2 remote controllers, the following functions cannot be set with the sub remote controller.
  - Schedule
  - Auto Changeover
  - Setback
  - Dual Setpoint
    (For the details, refer to operation manual.)

2. In the case of centralized controller connection.

■ When connecting centralized control equipment (*1), the following functions can be re-enabled with a field setting.
- Schedule
- Auto Changeover
- Setback

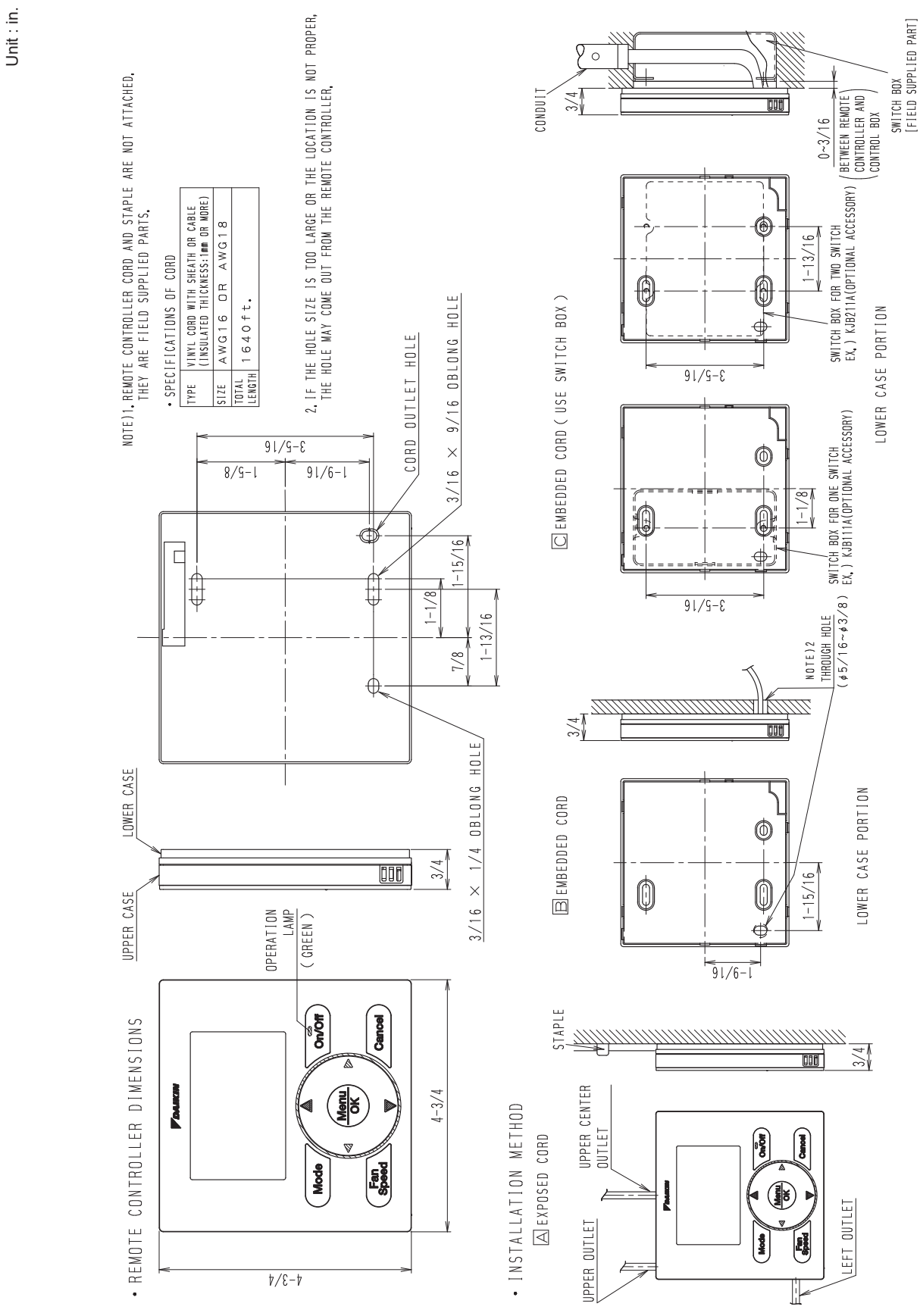
Note:

*1. This means all centralized controller.
- intelligent Touch Manager [DCM601B71]
- Interface for use in BACnet [DMS502B71]
- Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices [KRP1C74/75]
- Interface for use in LONWORKS [DMS504C71]

2.1.3 Specifications

			New Remote Controller BRC1E73
Dimension (H × W × D)		in.	4’3/4” × 4’3/4” × 3/4”
LCD	Display size (H × W)	in.	1’25/32” × 2’13/16”
	Display method		Full dot method (dot 160 × 255)
	Backlight		Yes (Background color: white)
Color			Fresh white

2.1.4 Dimensions



2.1.5 Applicable Models

Applicable Models

	Applicable Indoor Unit
VRV	All models with P1P2 termination
SkyAir	All models with P1P2 termination
RA	All models with P1P2 termination

2.2 BRC1H71W Madoka Wired Remote Controller

2.2.1 Features

- Sleek Stylish Design
  Much like the perfection of its circular shape, the remote controller gives you perfect control over your individual climate.

- Simple Interface
  The remote controller combines functionality and simplicity.
  The minimalistic touch button control enlarges the display and makes the remote controller easy to use.

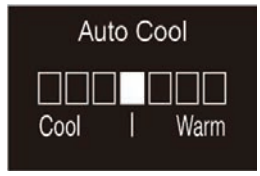
- The Madoka Quick Set APP for Installer
  Simplifies the advanced settings such as field settings and set point range.
  - Visual interface simplifies advanced settings such as energy saving activation, setting restrictions, etc.
  - Easy and quick commissioning, saves time and cost for installers.
  - Featuring Daikin's Bluetooth furnace low energy technology.

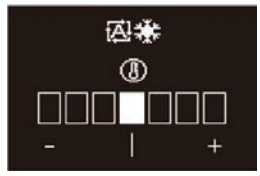
- Shorter and Easier Installation
  The application connected to this controller provides 2 modes, Owner / Administrator mode and Installer mode (no end-user mode). While traditional setting at the controller unit is still available, Installer mode makes installation faster and easier with
  - On-site setting through smartphone application
  - Set up multiple settings at once
  - Save and reuse settings

- Display
  Provides 3 selectable options for the display view: Text, Icon and Scale.

Text mode

Icon mode





Scale (text mode / icon mode)

2.2.2 Functions

Functions

Category	Functions	Remote controller			Application (Smartphone)		Remarks
		Basic operation	Administrator menu	Installer menu	Owner / Administrator mode	Installer mode	
Basic Function	Operation Start / Stop	✓					
	Operation mode	✓					
	Airflow rate (Fan speed)	✓					The number of airflow steps depends on indoor unit model.
	Airflow direction	✓					
	Setpoint	✓					
	Ventilation rate	✓					Available for only when Energy Recovery Ventilator is connected.
	Ventilation mode	✓					
	Celsius / Fahrenheit	✓			✓	✓	
Energy Saving	Setpoint range set				✓	✓	
	Sensing sensor low mode				✓	✓	Applicable for the indoor unit with infrared sensors.
	Sensing sensor stop mode				✓	✓	
Comfort	Airflow direction range (for Floor standing type)					✓	
	Individual airflow direction control				✓	✓	Applicable for the indoor unit with this function.
	Setback				✓	✓	
	Draft prevention				✓	✓	Applicable for the indoor unit with this function.
	Auto cooling / heating changeover (for Heat pump type)				✓	✓	This note does not apply to the US market. WLAN not used with SkyAir models.
	Setpoint minimum differential				✓	✓	Allowed to disable the settings.
Filter Indicator	Filter sign (Reset)	✓					Filter sign notifies the time to clean the filter of indoor unit.
	Element sign (Reset)	✓					Element sign notifies the time to clean the element of air purifier unit when the indoor unit connected with air purifier unit.
Option	Prohibit function (user menu items)				✓	✓	Set whether user can change basic functions in each menu.
	Prohibit function (center button prohibit)				✓	✓	
	Prohibit function (operation Mode)				✓	✓	Limit available operation mode from remote controller in each mode.
Display	Contrast adjustment		✓				
	LCD backlight adjustment		✓		✓	✓	
	LED brightness adjustment (screen Backlight ON)	✓			✓	✓	The brightness of LED (Status indicator) when backlight is On or Off can be changed respectively. Also, LED can be turned off.
	LED brightness adjustment (screen Backlight OFF)	✓			✓	✓	
	Auto display OFF			✓		✓	
Remote Controller Setting	Date and time setting		✓		✓	✓	
	Daylight Saving Time (DST)				✓	✓	
	R/C field settings			✓		✓	
	Display icon customization			✓		✓	
	Remote controller thermostat temperature offset			✓		✓	
	BLE settings (Pairing screen)		✓		✓	✓	
	Set / release Cooling / Heating master (for ***VRV***)			✓			Decision procedure for the Master Control is same as BRC1E73.
	Administrator Password Settings		✓		✓		Default is no password.
	Installer Password Settings			✓		✓	

✓: Possible

Note:

1. Installer mode includes functions in the Owner / Administrator mode.
2. Installer mode requires dedicated QR code for startup.
   It can be obtained by either accessing the Daikin Business Portal or by contacting your local Daikin sales office.

Restrictions

Limitation of two control connection

There is a limitation when connecting two controllers to one indoor unit because of lack of electricity supply.

■ All Indoor Unit restriction

- BRC1H71W cannot connect with E type and C type controller to one indoor unit, refer to the correspondence table below.

		Main				
		New BRC1H71W	Current BRC1E73	Wireless BRC4*** BRC7***	DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor AZA***	DKN Plus Interface AZA***
Sub	New BRC1H71W	✓	—	—	✓	✓
	Current BRC1E73	—	✓	—	✓	✓
	Wireless BRC4*** BRC7***	—	—	✓	✓	✓
	DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor AZA***	✓	✓	—	—	—
	DKN Plus Interface AZA***	✓	✓	—	—	—

✓: Connectable —: Not connectable

- In the case of two control connection, the backlight of the remote control that you operated the button first turns on.
- In the case of two control connection Heat pump changeover and Setback are not able to be set on sub controller.

■ Restriction for ***VRV*** only

- When configuring two remote controllers system, Adaptor for wiring (KRP1*) or Power supply of Adapter for indoor unit (X18A, X35A) is unable to use due to capacity.

2.2.3 Specifications

Remote Controller

Dimension (H × W × D)		3"11/32 × 3"11/32 × 63/64 (in) 85 × 85 × 25 (mm)
LCD	Size (H × W)	1 × 1"/1/2 (in) 25.48 × 38.23 (mm)
	Display area	Full dot 100 × 150 dot (H × W)
	Backlight	Available
	Color	White on black background
Plastic case color		White
Buttons		Physical SW × 1 + Touch SW × 3
Operation LED		Blue / Red / Green Dimmable

BLE Specification

Daikin's Bluetooth furnace	Daikin's Bluetooth furnace 4.2 (BLE)
Paring algorithm	Numeric comparison

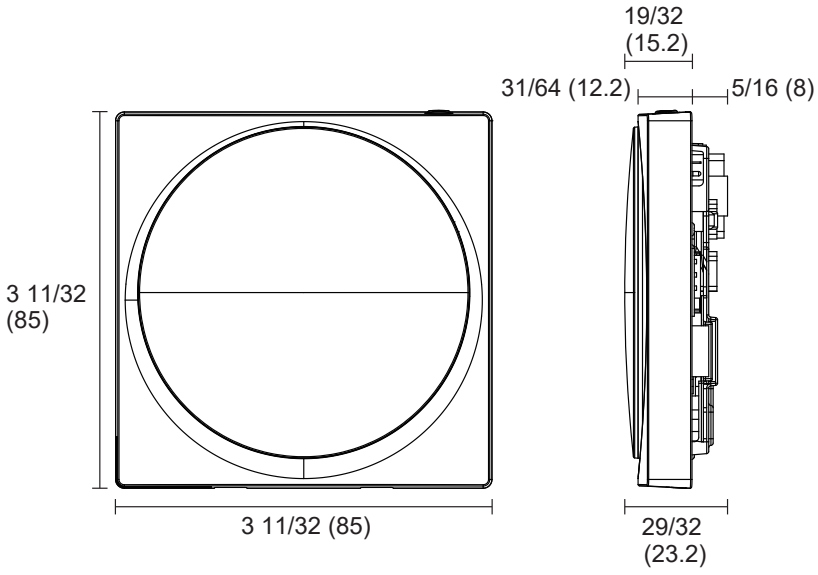
Apps Specification

	Android OS	iOS
Recommended OS version	Android OS 9	iOS 12
Recommended smartphone model	Galaxys 10	iPhone XS

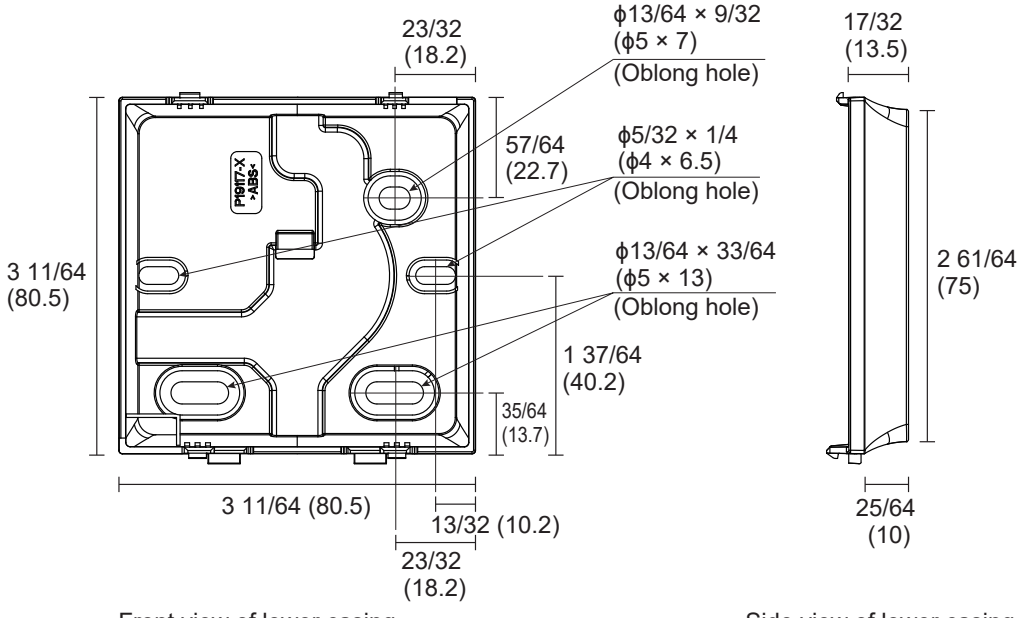
2.2.4 Dimensions

BRC1H71W

Unit : in. (mm)

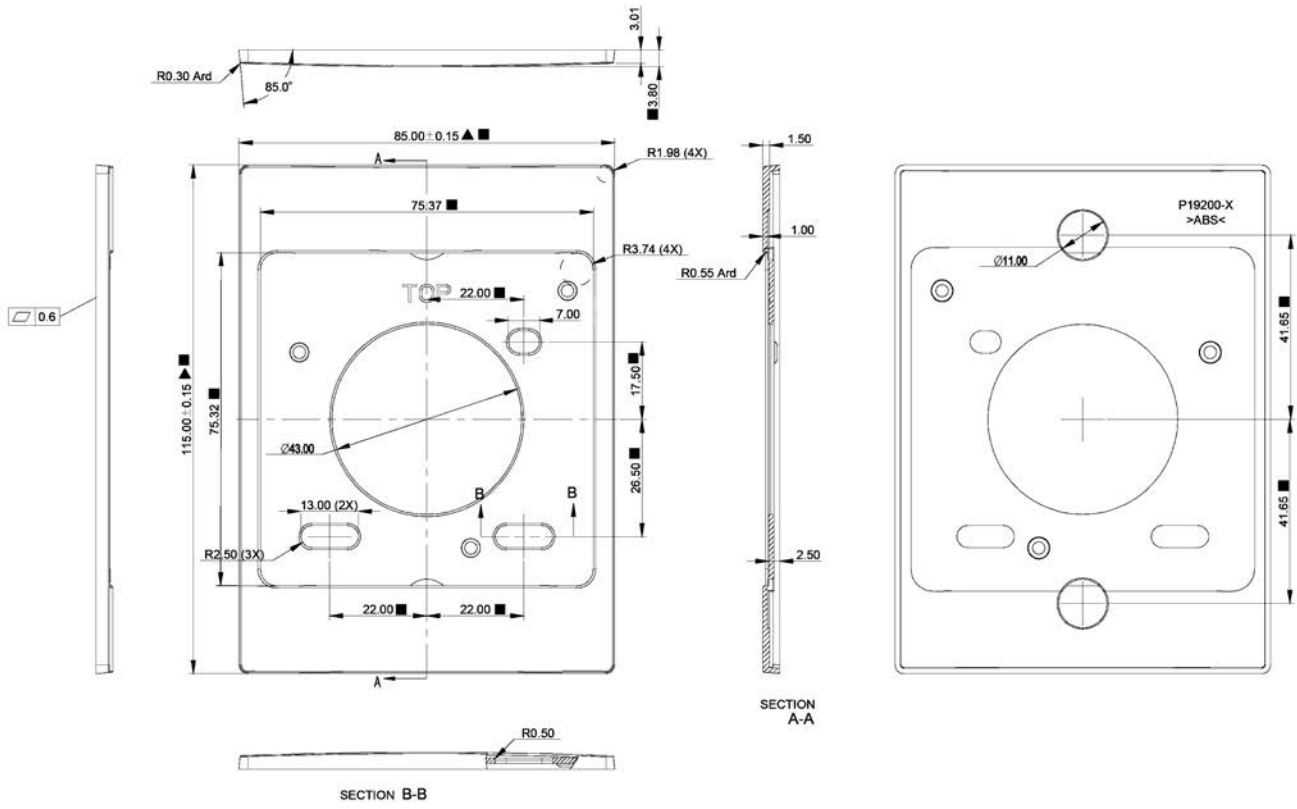


•Front view of upper casing •Side view of upper casing



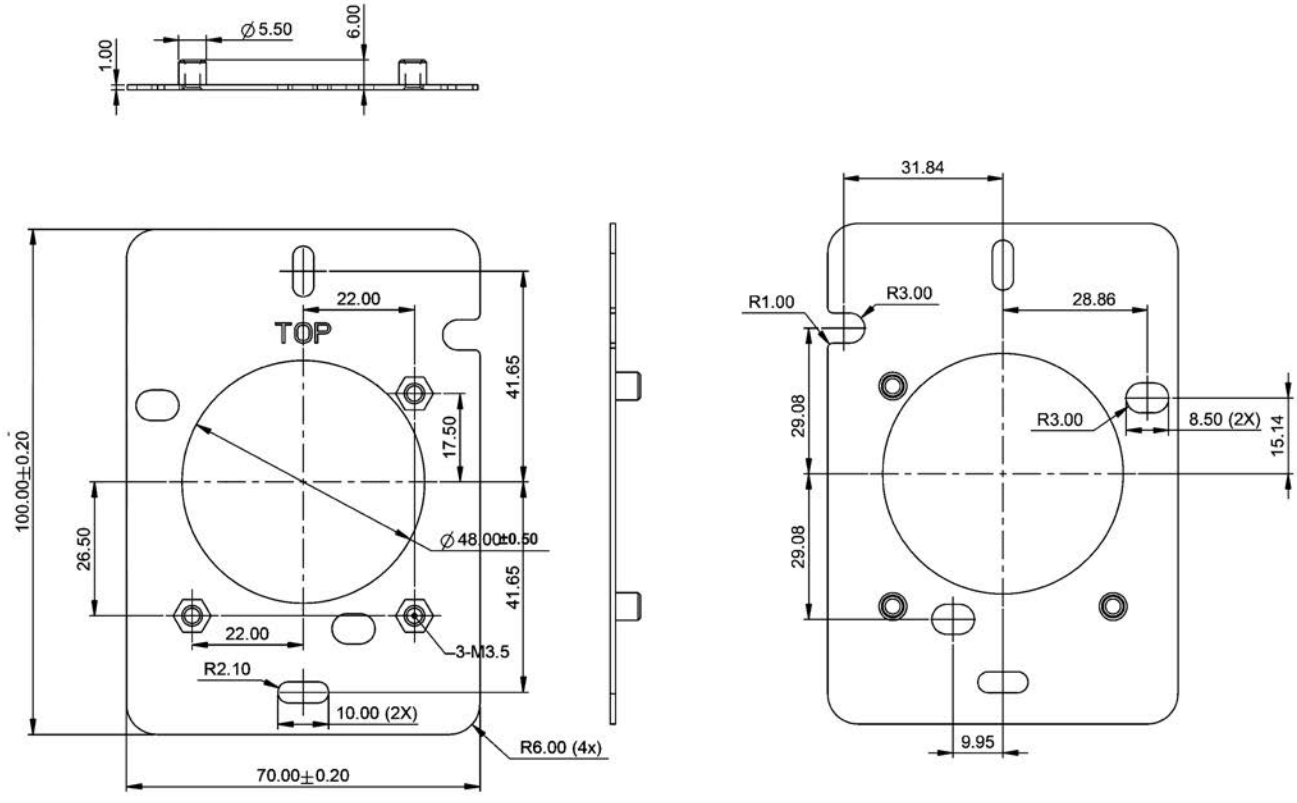
•Front view of lower casing •Side view of lower casing

Plastic Cover



2P614991C

Installation Metal Fitting



2P614995B

2.2.5 Applicable Models

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

VRV Indoor Unit

		Model name
Cassette	Sensing flow	FXFQ
	2 x 2	FXZQ
	Single flow	FXEQ
Wall mount		FXAQ
Duct	HSP duct	FXMQ
		FXMQ
	MSP duct	FXSQ
	Slim duct	FXDQ
Ceiling suspended		FXHQ
Wonderful		FXUQ
Floor standing		FXLQ
		FXNQ
Vertical AHU		FXTQ
Cased coil unit		CXTQ
VAM		VAM
Outside air processing unit		FXMQ_MF

SkyAir Indoor Unit

	Model name
Wall mount	FAQ
Duct	FBQ
Sensing flow	FCQ
Ceiling suspended	FHQ
Vertical AHU	FTQ

Mini-Split Indoor Unit

	Model name
2 x 2	FFQ
Duct	FDMQ

2.3 DTST-ONE-ADA-A Daikin One+ Smart Thermostat

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

MODEL COMPATIBILITY:

Compatible with ***VRV*** and ***VRV*** Life indoor unit models: CXTQ, FXAQ, FXDQ, FXEQ, FXFQ, FXHQ, FXLQ, FXMQ, FXNQ, FXSQ, FXTQ, FXUQ, FXZQ

SPECIFICATIONS:

Model		DTST-ONE-ADA-A
Description		Daikin One+ Smart Thermostat for Ductless Products
Maximum Connections		1 for S21 indoor units (cannot use together with another wireless remote controller or wired remote controller)
Max Wiring Length	**Power Wire**	5.5 ft (included)
	Thermostat Wire	125 ft (Field-supplied, 18AWG, 4-conductor non-shielded wire)
	P1P2 Communication Wire	6 ft* for the wire between the Translation Adaptor and the indoor unit terminal block (Field-supplied, 18AWG, 2-core non-shielded stranded wire)
Power Supply	**Thermostat**	Obtained from the Translation Adaptor
	Translation Adaptor	110-240 VAC
Dimensions	**Thermostat**	6.8" x 3.4" x 0.8"
	Translation Adaptor	2.7” x 7.3” x 1.3”
Weight	**Thermostat**	10.5 oz
	Translation Adaptor	18.4 oz
Storage Temperature		32°F to 120°F
Operation Temperature	**Thermostat**	32°F to 120°F
	Translation Adaptor	-40°F to 150°F
Humidity		20 to 95%RH (non-condensing)
Thermostat Screen		640 pixels × 480 pixels × 24 bits RGB
Compliance (Thermostat only)		Compliant to California Title 24 (OCST listed), FCC Certified (FCC Part 15 subpart B), UL Listed

* P1P2 wire has a maximum wiring length of 1640 feet

PRODUCT IMAGE:

Thermostat:

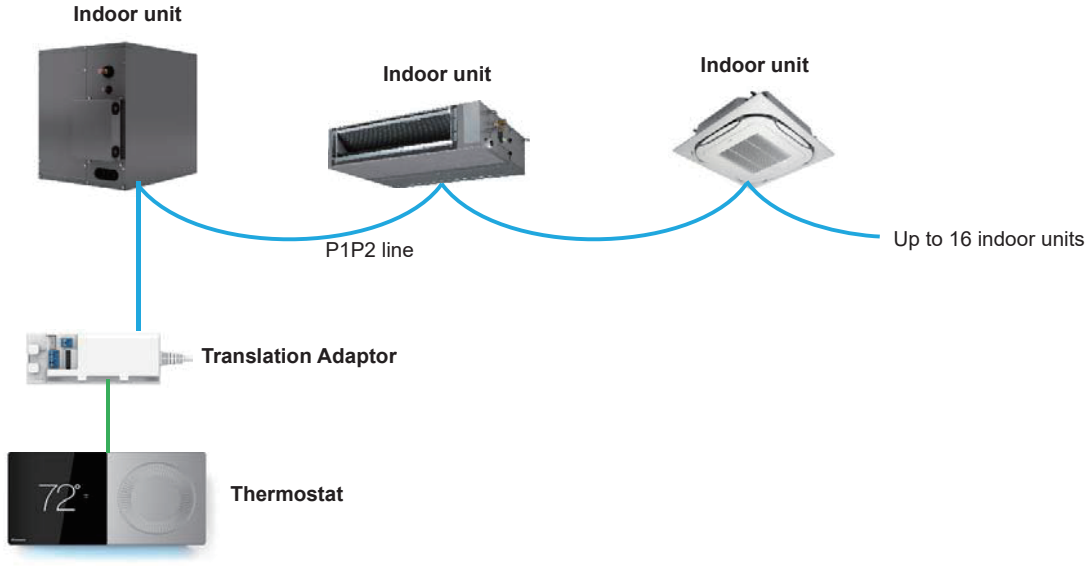
Translation Adaptor (Included):

FEATURES:

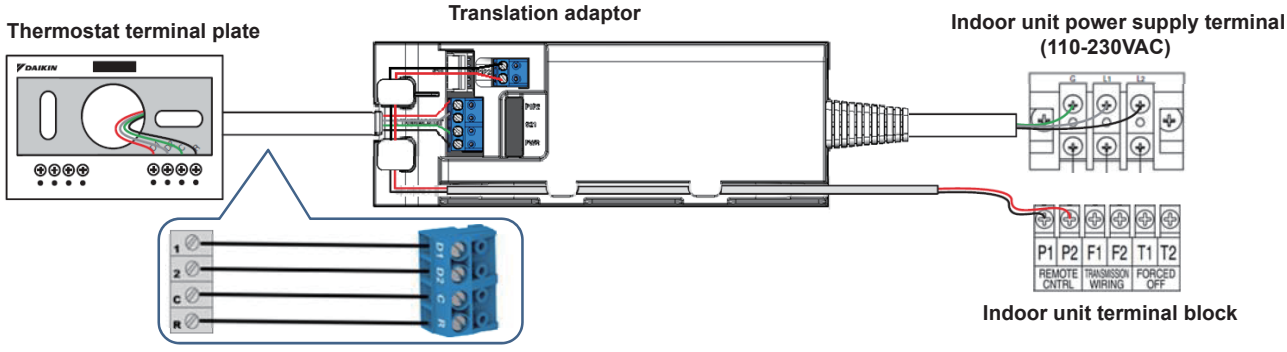
- Stylish design
  - Capacitive multi-touch display
  - Easy rotational dial for precise setpoint adjustment
  - Light pipe indication for heating/cooling operation
- Remote control and software update
  - Wifi-enabled smart thermostat with iOS and Android app control
  - Voice control by Amazon Alexa and Google Assistant
  - Over-the-air software updates
  - Outdoor environment report: outdoor temperature, outdoor humidity, and weather forecast
- Intelligent energy management
  - Energy and comfort functions: Schedule/Adjustment Hold/Away mode with geo-fencing
  - Programmable schedule with up to 6 scheduled events per day
- Versatile indoor comfort control
  - Indoor unit control: Mode (Auto/Heat/Cool/Off), Setpoint, Fan Speed (Heat/Cool), Louver position
  - Built-in temperature and humidity sensors
  - Dehumidification with overcooling function
  - Error Code and maintenance notification
- External device support
  - Built-in Daikin's Bluetooth furnace and Sub GHz communication
  - Two dry contacts for auxiliary devices
- Complete support
  - Multi-language support: English, Spanish, French
- Compliant to California Title 24 (OCST listed)

SYSTEM DIAGRAM:

- Connect to one indoor unit control group (up to 16 indoor units)
- Cannot use together with another wireless remote controller or wired remote controller

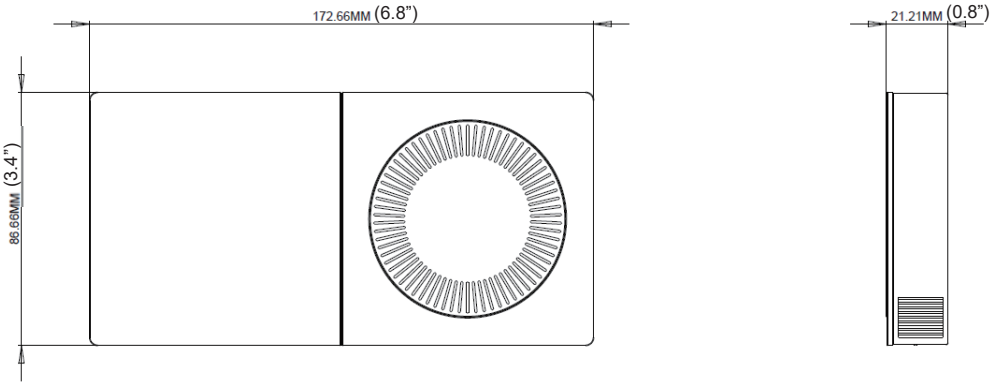


WIRING DIAGRAM:

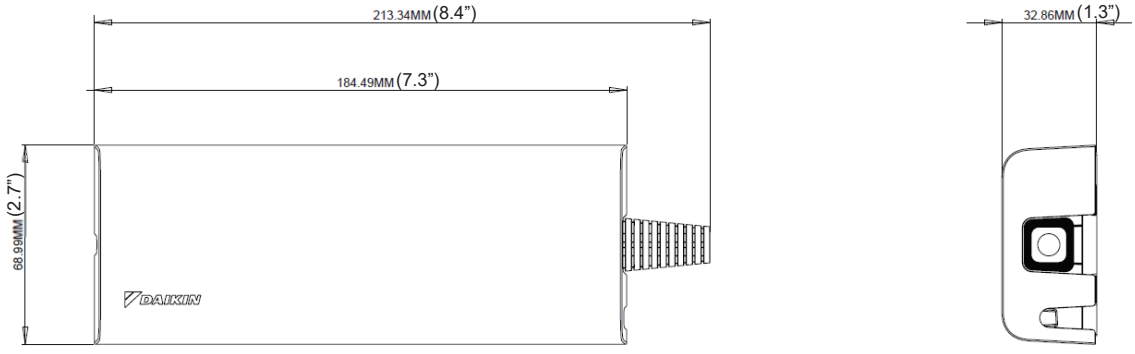


DIMENSIONS:

- Thermostat:



- Translation Adaptor:



2.4 DTST-TOU-ADA-A Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Submittal Data Sheet

DTST-TOU-A– Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat with Translation Adaptor for S21 & P1P2

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

MODEL COMPATIBILITY:

P1P2

Indoor Unit	Model Number
VRV and *VRV LIFE* (P1P2)	CXTQ, FXAQ, FXDQ, FXEQ, FXFQ, FXHQ, FXLQ, FXMQ, FXNQ, FXSQ, FXTQ, FXUQ, FXZQ
Sky Air (P1P2)	FAQ, FBQ, FCQ, FHQ, FTQ
Single-Zone and Multi-Zone (P1P2)	CDMQ, FDMQ, FFQ

S21

Indoor Unit	Model Number
Wall-mounted	CTXS, FTK*, FTX*, FTXB*, FTXM, FTXR, FTXS, FVXS
Ducted air handler	CDXS, FDXS
Floor-mounted	FVXS

*Not compatible with FTK_AXVJU, FTX_AXVJU, FTKB_AXVJU, FTXB_AXVJU, CTX_AXVJU

The following indoor units do not have the S21 connection and require an additional interface adaptor (ordered separately) to provide the S21 connect for the One Lite communication:

Indoor Unit Models	Required Interface Adaptor
FTX09NMVJU(A), FTX12NMVJU(A), FTX09WMVJU9, FTX12WMVJU9	KRP067A41E
FTX15NMVJU(A), FTX15WMVJU9	KRP980B2E

Daikin Comfort Technologies North America, Inc., 19001 Kermier Road, Waller, TX, 77484
www.daikinac.com www.daikincity.com

Submittal Data Sheet

DTST-TOU-A– Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat with Translation Adaptor for S21 & P1P2

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

SPECIFICATIONS:

Model			DTST-TOU-ADA-A
Description			Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat with translation adaptor
Maximum Connections			1 for indoor units (cannot use together with another wireless remote controller or wired remote controller)
Max Wiring Length	**Power Wire**		5.5 ft (included)
	Thermostat Wire		125 ft (Field-supplied, 18AWG, 4-core non-shielded stranded wire)
	S21 Communication Wire		6 ft (included)
Power Supply		**Thermostat**	Obtained from the translation adaptor
		Translation Adaptor	110-240 VAC
Dimensions	**Thermostat**		0.86”L x 3.4”W x 4.74”H
	Translation Adaptor		2.72’’L x 7.26”W x 0.43’’H
Weight	**Thermostat**		5.5 oz
	Translation Adaptor		Need data
Storage Temperature			32°F to 120°F
Ambient Operation Temperature	**Thermostat**		32°F to 120°F
	Translation Adaptor		32°F to 120°F
Humidity			20 to 95% RH (non-condensing)
Compliance			Compliant to California Title 24 (OCST listed), FCC Certified (FCC Part 15 subpart B), UL Listed

PRODUCT IMAGE:

Thermostat:

Translation Adaptor:

Daikin Comfort Technologies North America, Inc., 19001 Kermier Road, Waller, TX, 77484
www.daikinac.com www.daikincity.com

Submittal Data Sheet

DTST-TOU-A– Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat with Translation Adaptor for S21 & P1P2

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

FEATURES:

- Simple, elegant industrial design
- Capacitive touchscreen user interface
- Wi-Fi-enabled smart thermostat with iOS and Android app control
- Voice control by Amazon Alexa and Google Assistant
- Multi-language support: English, Spanish, French
- 1 Auxiliary output (dry contact), configurable as humidifier, dehumidifier, primary or secondary heat source
- Over-the-air software update capable (requires wi-fi connection)
- Error and service notifications
- Programmable 4-event schedule with adjustable hold function
- Energy and comfort functions: Away mode, geo-fencing
- Outdoor environment monitoring: outdoor temperature, outdoor humidity, and weather forecast
- Compatible with Daikin One Home Air Monitor for IAQ visualization (ducted systems only)
- Compatible with Daikin One Cloud Services
- Open API compatible for home control systems such as Control4 and Crestron
- Title 24 compliant

Specifications

1. The thermostat shall have a capacitive touchscreen user interface.
2. The thermostat shall have a 4 event, 7-day customizable schedule
3. The thermostat shall have energy and comfort functions including Away mode and Geo-Fencing
4. The thermostat shall support a user interface in English, French, and Spanish
5. The thermostat shall be capable of receiving and implementing Over-The-Air software updates when connected to Wi-Fi
6. The thermostat shall be capable of providing settings and performance data to contractors for remote monitoring and adjustments.
7. The thermostat shall provide one configurable auxiliary output to control a separate heat source, humidifier, or dehumidifier.
8. The thermostat shall be Title 24 compliant
9. The thermostat shall be compatible with a whole-home in-duct air quality monitor and display indoor air quality data on the thermostat (ducted applications only).

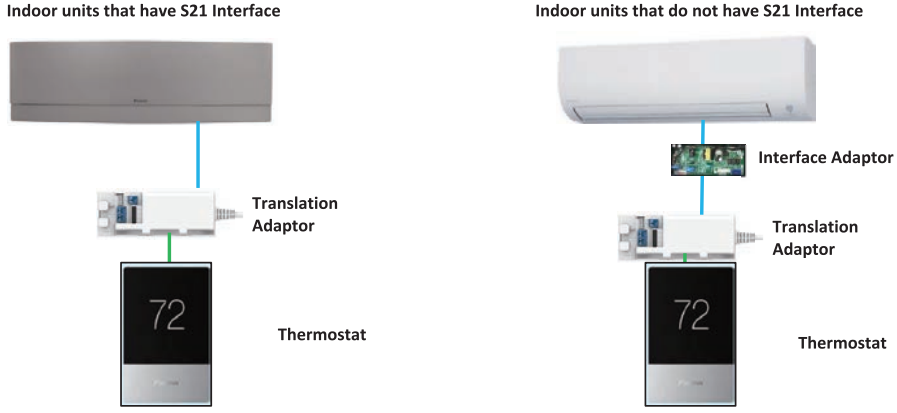
Submittal Data Sheet

DTST-TOU-A– Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat with Translation Adaptor for S21 & P1P2

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

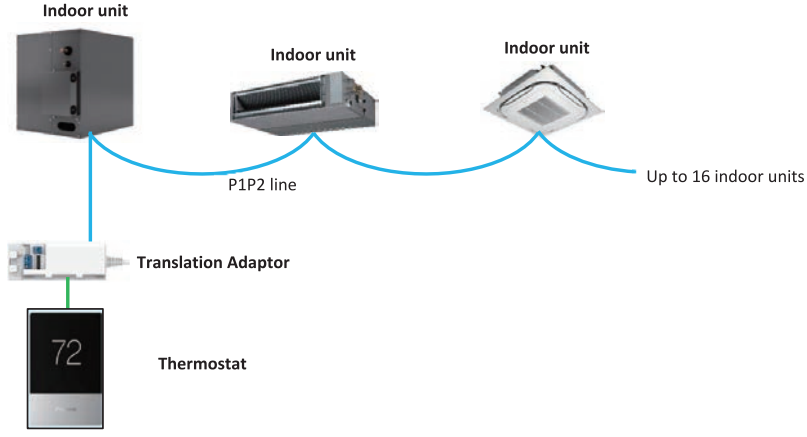
SYSTEM DIAGRAM:

For S21 indoor units (see compatibility and exceptions on page 1):



SYSTEM DIAGRAM:

For P1P2 indoor units (see compatibility on page 1)



Daikin Comfort Technologies North America, Inc., 19001 Kermier Road, Waller, TX, 77484
www.daikinac.com www.daikincity.com

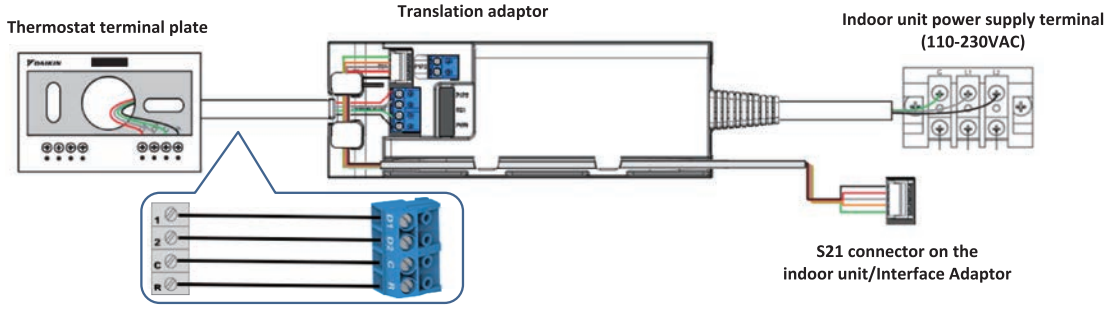
Submittal Data Sheet

DTST-TOU-A– Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat with Translation Adaptor for S21 & P1P2

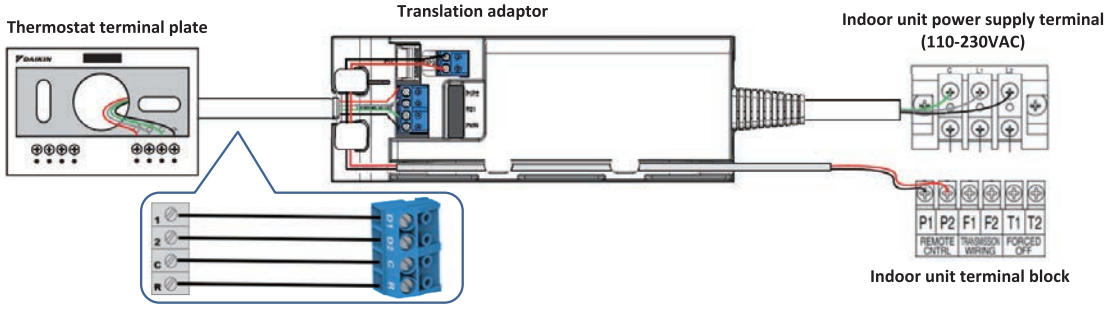
Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

WIRING DIAGRAM:

- For S21 indoor units:



- For P1P2 indoor units:



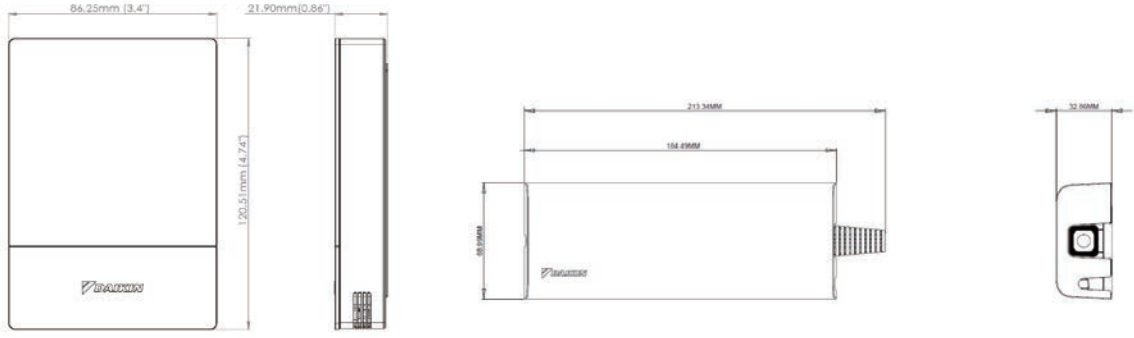
Submittal Data Sheet

DTST-TOU-A– Daikin One Touch Smart Thermostat with Translation Adaptor for S21 & P1P2

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

DIMENSIONS:

- Thermostat and Translation Adaptor:



DOCUMENTATION:

Documentation available on www.daikincity.com and/or www.daikinac.com and/or www.daikinone.com

- Submittal
- Installation Manual
  Product Flyer

2.5 BACRC-T-P01/ BACRC-TH-P01/ BACRC-THO-P01/ BACRC-THOC-P01 Adaptive Touch Controller

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

MODEL COMPATIBILITY:
Compatible with ***VRV*** indoor unit models: FXAQ, FXDQ, FXEQ, FXFQ, FXHQ, FXLQ, FXMQ, FXMQ_MF, FXNQ, FXSQ, FXTQ, FXUQ, FXZQ, CXTQ
Compatible with SkyAir indoor unit models: FAQ, FBQ, FCQ, FHQ, FTQ
Compatible with Single Zone/Multi Zone/SkyAir system indoor unit models: FDMQ, FFQ

SPECIFICATIONS:

Model		BACRC-T-P01/ BACRC-TH-P01/ BACRCTHO-P01/ BACRC-THOC-P01
Description		Adaptive Touch Controller
Maximum Indoor Units		16 indoor units in one remote controller group
Max Wiring Length (P1P2)		1640 ft
Dimensions		3.50 in x 5.12 in x 1.12 in
Weight		0.6202 lbs. in box
Communication Protocol		P1P2
Storage Temperature		-40°F to 140°F
Operation Temperature		32°F to 120°F
Operation Humidity		0% to 90% (non-condensing)
Power Supply		24VAC (requires separate Class 2 power)
BMS Communication		BACnet MS/TP
Auxiliary I/O	**Analog Output**	1, 0-10VDC
	Digital Output	4
	Analog Input	1, 0-10VDC or 4-20mA (configurable)
	Digital Input	1

PRODUCT IMAGE:

BACRC-T-P01
BACRC-TH-P01

BACRC-THO-P01
BACRC-THOC-P01

FEATURES:

- The Adaptive Touch Controllers (ATC) are available with four different built-in sensor combinations including temperature, humidity, carbon dioxide and occupancy sensor. The ATC sensor configurations are listed:

Part Number	Model
BACRC-T-P01	ATC with Temperature Sensor
BACRC-TH-P01	ATC with Temperature/Humidity Sensor
BACRC-THO-P01	ATC with Temperature/Humidity/Occupancy Sensor
BACRC-THOC-P01	ATC with Temperature/Humidity/Occupancy/CO_2 Sensor

- Color LCD touchscreen
- Basic indoor unit control and monitoring*:
  - On/Off
  - Mode (Cool, Heat, Fan, Dry, Auto)
  - Setpoint
  - Room temperature
  - Fan speed
  - Louver position
  - Alarm status and error code
  - Dirty filter indicator
  - Changeover master identification
- Indoor unit control logic:
  - Auto changeover logic with guard timer
  - Dual/Single temperature setpoint (°C/ °F)
  - Setpoint range limitation
  - Setback setpoints control
  - Humidity control with setpoint (%)**
  - O CO_2 control with setpoint (ppm)**
  - Schedule
  - Configurable occupancy sensor logic**
- Advanced and configurable inputs and outputs:
  - Aux heater control: primary/secondary/emergency heat
  - Interlock through digital and analog outputs: heating stage1, heating stage 2, cooling thermo-on, heating thermo-on, fan on/off, unit on/off, alarm status, CO_2 alarm, occupancy sensor, humidifier/dehumidifier control
- Optional integration to a compatible building management system (BMS) using the BACnet MS/TP.
  - Control and monitor the ATC operation using the various BACnet objects.
  - Indoor unit operation data BACnet points

* The ATC can only be set as P1P2 main controller. No sub controller can be connected to the P1P2 network with ATC.

**Depends on model used

BACNET POINT LIST:

■ **Monitoring Points**

#	Value	Description	Type
1	SPACE_SENSOR	Space Temperature Value Measured By Controller	R
2	REMOTE_CO2_SENSOR	Remote CO_2 Sensor Value	R
3	REMOTE_HUMIDITY	Remote Humidity Sensor Value	R
4	REM_SPACE/DAT_SENSOR	Remote Space Temperature Or Discharge Air Temperature Value	R
5	OUTDOOR_AIR	Outside Air Temperature	R
6	SENSOR_FAILURE	Sensor Failure Value	R
7	IU_SUCTION_AIR_TEMP	Indoor Unit Return Air Temperature	R
8	COOLING_HOURS	Cooling Hours	R
9	HEATING_HOURS	Heating Hours	R
10	NUMBER_IDU_CONNECTED	Number Of Indoor Unit Connected To The Controller	R
11	IDU_GAS_PIPE_TEMP	Indoor Unit Gas Pipe Temperature	R
12	IDU_LIQUID_PIPE_TEMP	Indoor Unit Liquid Pipe Temperature	R
13	IU_FAN_HOURS	Indoor Unit Fan Operation Time	R
14	ODU_FAN_STEP	Outdoor Unit Fan Step	R
15	IU_OPERATING_HOURS	Indoor Unit Operation Hours	R
16	IU_ENERGIZED_HOURS	Indoor Unit Energized Hours	R
17	IU_FAN_SPEED_RPM	Indoor Unit Fan Speed RPM	R
18	IU_EV_OPEN_PULSE	Indoor Unit EEV Pulses	R
19	OU_TH1_OAT	Outdoor Unit TH1 Value	R
20	OU_TH2_HEAT_EXCHANGER	Outdoor Unit TH2 Heat Exchanger	R
21	OU_TH3_DAT	Outdoor Unit TH3	R
22	OU_TH4	Outdoor Unit TH4	R
23	OU_TH5	Outdoor Unit TH5	R
24	OU_TH6	Outdoor Unit TH6	R
25	OU_EV1	Outdoor Unit EEV Pulses	R
26	OU_COMP_SPEED_RPM	Outdoor Unit Compressor Speed	R
27	OU_OPERATION_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Operation Hours	R
28	IU_TH4_DISCHARGE_AIR_TEMP	Indoor Unit Discharge Air Temperature	R
29	OU_FAN1_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Fan 1 Hours	R
30	OU_FAN2_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Fan 2 Hours	R
31	OU_COMP1_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Compressor 1 Hours	R
32	OU_COMP2_HOURS	Outdoor Unit Compressor 2 Hours	R
33	AUX_TOTAL_HOURS	Auxiliary Heat Total Hours	R
34	HEAT_TOTAL_HOURS	Heating Total Hours	R
35	COOL_TOTAL_HOURS	Cooling Total Hours	R
36	ALARM_ON-OFF_ECON	Configurable Point (Alarm Or Motion Sensor Or Econ)	R
37	SYSTEM_FORCED_OFF	System Forced Off (T1-T2)	R
38	ALARM_STATUS	Alarm Status	R
39	FILTER_SIGN_STATUS	Filter Sign Status	R
40	IU_COOLING_THERMO_ON	Indoor Unit Cooling Thermo On	R
41	IU_HEATING_THERMO_ON	Indoor Unit Heating Thermo On	R
42	COMMUNICATION_STATUS	Indoor Unit Communication Status	R
43	TIMED OVERRIDE STATUS	Override Status	R
44	IU_FAN_STATUS	Indoor Unit Fan Status	R
45	AUX_HEATER_STATUS	Aux Heater Status	R
46	EMEREGENCY_HEATER_STATUS	Emergency Heater Status	R
47	IU_VRV_CENTRAL_CONTROLLER	Central Controller Connection Status	R
48	IU_THERMO-ON_STATUS	Indoor Unit Thermo-On	R
49	DEHUM_MODE	Dehumidification Mode	R
50	HUMIDIFICATION_MODE	Humidification Mode	R

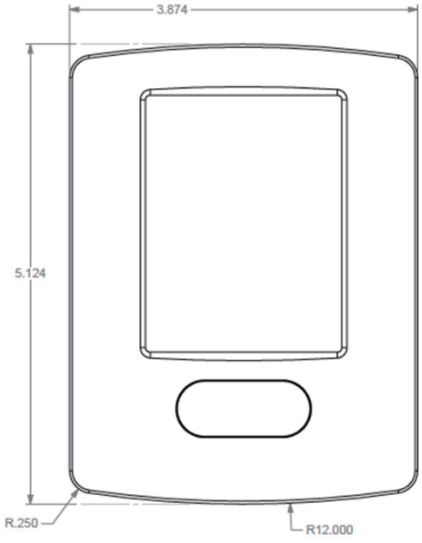
#	Value	Description	Type
51	AUX_HEAT_STG_1	Aux Heat Stg 1	R
52	AUX_HEAT_STG_2	Aux Heat Stg 2	R
53	ADPTR AUX Heat Status	Indoor Unit Aux Heat Status	R
54	CALL_FOR_DEHUM	Dehumidification Call	R
55	AUXH_EMERGENCY_OPERATION	Aux Heater Emergency Heater Operation	R
56	DEFROST_OIL_RETURN_MODE	Defrost Oil Return Mode Value	R
57	ECONOMIZER_MODE	Economizer Mode	R
58	TIMED_OVERRIDE_OPERATION	Time Override Operation	R
59	MOTION	Motion Sensor Value	R
60	MOTION_SENSOR_OUT	Motion Sensor Output	R
61	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_1_STATUS	Digital Output 1 Status Value	R
62	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_2_STATUS	Digital Output 2 Status Value	R
63	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_3_STATUS	Digital Output 3 Status Value	R
64	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_4_STATUS	Digital Output 4 Status Value	R
65	IU_CAUTION_1	Indoor Unit Caution	R
66	IU_WARNING	Indoor Unit Warning	R
67	IU_ERROR	Indoor Unit Error	R
68	ALARM_CONTACT	Alarm Contact Status	R
69	IU_DRAIN_PUMP_MP	Indoor Unit Drain Pump Status	R
70	IU_HUMIDIFIER	Indoor Unit Humidifier Status	R
71	IU_ANTIFREEZING_TBF	Indoor Unit Antifreeze Operation Status	R
72	IU_FLOAT	Indoor Unit Float Status	R
73	IU_RC Fan Prohibit	Indoor Unit Fan Speed Change Prohibit	R
74	On Prohibit	Indoor Unit On Prohibit	R
75	IU_TEST_RUN	Indoor Unit Test Run Operation	R
76	TEST_OPERATION	Test Operation Status	R
77	OU_TEST_RUN	Outdoor Unit Test Run Operation	R
78	Backup Operation	Outdoor Unit Backup Operation	R
79	IU_RC_LouverProhibit	Indoor Unit Louver Prohibit	R
80	IU_CHANGEOVER_OPTION	Indoor Unit Master Status	R
81	OU_SV1	Outdoor Unit SV1 Value	R
82	FORCED_THERMO_OFF_STATUS	Forced Thermo Off Status Value	R
83	FORCED_STPT_SHIFT	Indoor Unit Setpoint Shift	R
84	OU_OP_MODE_ACTUAL_DISP	Outdoor Unit Actual Mode	R

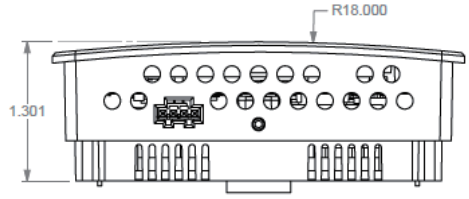
■ **Control Points**

#	Value	Description	Type
1	AUX_HEAT	Auxiliary Heat Output (Modulating)	W
2	CO2_DAMPER	CO_2 Damper Outoput (Modulating)	W
3	HUMIDIFIER_DEHUMIDIFIER	Humidifier Or Dehumidifier Output (Modulating)	W
4	IU_W_CONTROL_TEMP	Control Temperature Used By The Controller	W
5	UI_COOL_STPT	Active Cooling Setpoint	W
6	UI_HEAT_STPT	Active Heating Setpoint	W
7	OCC_COOLING_STPT	Occupied Cooling Setpoint	W
8	OCC_HEATING_STPT	Occupied Heating Setpoint	W
9	UNOCC_COOLING_STPT	Unoccupied Cooling Setpoint	W
10	UNOCC_HEATING_STPT	Unoccupied Heating Setpoint	W
11	MIN_COOLING_STPT	Minimum Cooling Setpoint	W
12	MAX_COOLING_STPT	Maximum Cooling Setpoint	W
13	MIN_HEATING_STPT	Minimum Heating Setpoint	W
14	MAX_HEATING_STPT	Maximum Heating Setpoint	W
15	AUX_H_CONFIG_OAT_STPT	Outside Air Temperature Setpoint For Aux Heat Logic	W
16	AUXH_PROP	Aux Heat Control Proportional	W
17	AUXH_INTG	Aux Heat Control Integral	W
18	DEHUM_STPT	Dehumidification Setpoint	W
19	HUM_HYSTERESIS	Hysteresis Used For Humidity Control	W
20	DEHUM_PROP	Dehumidification Control Proportional	W
21	DEHUM_INTG	Dehumidification Control Integral	W
22	HUM_PROP	Humidification Control Proportional	W
23	HUM_INTG	Humidification Control Integral	W
24	SPACE_HUM	Space Humidity Value	W
25	HUMIDITY_STPT	Humidification Setpoint	W
26	CO2_STPT	CO_2 Control Setpoint	W
27	CO2_DIFFERENTIAL	CO_2 Control Differential	W
28	CO2_MINIMUM_POSITION	CO_2 Damper Minimum Position For Occupied Mode	W
29	CO2_MAXIMUM_POSITION	CO_2 Damper Maximum Position For Occupied Mode	W
30	CO2_UNOCCUPIED_POSITION	CO_2 Damper Unoccupied Position	W
31	CO2_TIME_DELAY	Time Delay For CO_2 Control (Minutes)	W
32	CO2_PROP	CO_2 Control Proportional	W
33	CO2_INTG	CO_2 Control Integral	W
34	SPACE_CO2	Space CO_2 Value	W
35	MOTION_UNOCC_DELAY	Time To Set To Unit To Unoccupied When No Motion Is Detected	W
36	OCCUPANCY_RELAX_MAXIMUM	Maximum Setpoint Relax When No Motion Is Detected	W
37	DEMAND_SETPOINT_RELAX_CLG	Cooling Setpoint Relaxation Value During Demand Limit	W
38	DEMAND_SETPOINT_RELAX_HTG	Heating Setpoint Relaxation Value During Demand Limit	W
39	DEMAND_RECOVERY_STEP_TIME	Demand Recovery Step Time Minutes	W
40	ECONOMIZER_TIMER	Economizer Timer	W
41	COOL_MODE_TEMP_OFFSET	Cool Mode Temp Offset Value	W
42	HEAT_MODE_TEMP_OFFSET	Heat Mode Temp Offset Value	W
43	OUTDOOR_TEMP	Outdoor Temp	W
44	DISCHARGE_AIR_TEMP	Discharge Air Temp	W
45	STAGE_DELAY	Stage Delay For Aux Heat	W
46	FILTER_SIGN_RESET	Filter Sign Reset	W
47	HUMIDITY_CONTROL_ALWAYS	Enable Humidity Control During Unoccupied Mode	W
48	HUM_OVRRIDE	Turn On Humidity Control During Override	W
49	REMOTE_HUMIDITY_SENSOR	Enable Remote Humidity Sensor	W
50	HUMIDIFY_DURING_HEAT	Allow Humidity Control During Heat	W
51	OCCUPIED_MODE	Occupied Mode	W

#	Value	Description	Type
52	ENABLE_LOCAL_SCHED	Enabled Local Schedule	W
53	STPT_HOLD	Hold Enable	W
54	STPT_ TRACKING	Setpoint Tracking Mode	W
55	DAT_SENSOR	Enables Remote Discharge Air Temperature	W
56	DEHUM_WOUT_FAN	Dehumidification Without Fan	W
57	OAT_SENSOR	Enable Outside Air Sensor	W
58	HUMIDIFY_WOUT_FAN	Humidify Without Fan	W
59	ENABLE_REMOTE_CO2_SENSOR	Enable Remote CO_2 Sensor Monitoring	W
60	DEHUM_OVERCOOL_STATUS	Overcooling To Dehumidify	W
61	SPEED_UP	Speed Up Timers	W
62	RC_PROHIBIT_MODE_OPERATION	Remote Controller Prohibit Mode Operation	W
63	REMOTE_CONTROLLER_PROHIBIT_STPT	Remote Controller Prohibit Setpoint	W
64	ENABLE_DEMAND_CONTROL	Enables Demand Control	W
65	CO2 VENT ENABLE	Enable CO_2 Control	W
66	CONTINUOUS_AUX_FAN	Enable Fan Operation During Aux Heat	W
67	FORCE_FAN	External Forced Fan Input	W
68	CALL_FOR_HUMIDIFICATION	Humidification Call	W
69	HUMIDIFIER_OUT	Humidifier Output Status	W
70	ECONOMIZER	Economizer Status	W
71	CO2_ALARM_OUT	CO_2 Alarm Status	W
72	DEHUMIDIFIER_OUT	Dehumidification Output Status	W
73	ENERGY_SAVINGS_ICON	Energy Saving Icon Status	W
74	AUX_HEAT_FAN	Check For Fan Before Running Aux Heat	W
75	Humidity_Display_Enable	Enable Humidity Display	W
76	CO2_Display_Enable	Enable CO_2 Display	W
77	OAT_Display_Enable	Enable Outside Air Sensor Display	W
78	OPERATION_MODE	Controller Operation Mode	W
79	AUX_HEAT_CONFIGURATION	Aux Heat Configuration Setting	W
80	OVER_COOL_FAN_SPEED	Overcool Mode Fan Speed	W
81	FAN_MODE	Fan Speed	W
82	SCHEDULE_OCC_MODE	Occupancy Mode To Be During Start Of Schedule	W
83	ROOM_TEMP_CALCULATION	Room Temperature Calculation Logic	W
84	PRI_CHANGEOVER_DEADBAND	Primary Changeover Deadband	W
85	SEC_CHANGEOVER_DEADBAND	Second Changeover Deadband	W
86	GUARD_TIME	Autochangeover Gaurdtimer Value	W
87	MIN_STPT_DIFFERENTIAL	Minimum Setpoint Differential Value	W
88	TIMED_OVERRIDE_MINUTES	Timed Override Minutes	W
89	COOLING_UNOCC_RECOVERY	Cooling Unoccupied Recovery Setpoint	W
90	HEATING_UNOCC_RECOVERY	Heating Unoccupied Recovery Setpoint	W
91	DEMAND_CONTROL	Demand Control	W
92	OCCUPANCY_SENSOR_LOGIC	Occupancy Sensor Logic	W
93	OCCUPANCY_RELAX_TIME_DELAY	Occupancy Sensor Setpoint Relax Time Delay	W
94	IU_LOUVER_2_POSITION	Indoor Unit Louver 2 Position	W
95	INPUT_6_CONFIGURATION	Binary Input 6 Configuration	W
96	CO2_DAMPER_SELECTION	CO_2 Damper Type Selection	W
97	IU_W_AIRFLOW_DIRECTION	Indoor Unit Louver Direction	W
98	DO-1_SETTING	Do 1 Setting Value	W
99	DO-2_SETTING	Do 2 Setting Value	W
100	DO-3_SETTING	Do 3 Setting Value	W
101	DO-4_SETTING	Do 4 Setting Value	W
102	DEHUMIDIFICATION	Dehumidification Control Type	W
103	HUMIDIFICATION	Humidification Control Type	W
104	EXTERNAL_DEHUM_CONTROL	External Dehumidification Control Type	W
105	OVERCOOL_OPTION	Overcool Degree	W

DIMENSIONS:





2.6 AZAI6WSCDKA DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

MODEL COMPATIBILITY:

Compatible with ***VRV*** indoor unit models: FXAQ, FXDQ, FXEQ, FXFQ, FXHQ, FXLQ, FXMQ, FXMQ_MF, FXNQ, FXSQ, FXTQ, FXUQ, FXZQ, CXTQ

Compatible with SkyAir indoor unit models: FAQ, FBQ, FCQ, FHQ, FTQ

Compatible with Single Zone/Multi Zone/SkyAir system indoor unit models: FDMQ, FFQ

Backwards compatible with indoor unit models that communicate via the P1P2 protocol

SPECIFICATIONS:

Model		AZAI6WSCDKA
Description		DKN Cloud Wi-Fi Adaptor for ***VRV*** (P1P2)
Maximum Indoor Units		16 indoor units in one remote controller group
Total Wiring Length		6ft (2m)
Dimensions		3.6 in x 3.15 in x 1.15 in (92mm x 80mm x 29 mm)
Weight		0.28lbs (130 g)
Communication Protocol		P1P2
Storage Temperature		-4°F to 158°F (-20 °C to 70 °C)
Operation Temperature		32°F to 122°F (0 °C to 50 °C)
Operation Humidity		5% to 90% (non-condensing)
Communication	**Connection**	WiFi-Certificated network 802.11b/g/n (802.11n up to 150 Mbps) Daikin's Bluetooth furnace: v4.2 BR/EDR and BLE specification
	Communication Frequency	2.4GHz
	Max Antenna power	20 dBm
	Sensitivity	-97 dBm
	IP Addressing	Static DHCP
Modbus RS485 communication baud rate		19200 bps
Power Supply (obtained from indoor unit PCB)	**Type**	Vdc
	Voltage	12 – 16V
	max current	85 mA
	max Power	1360 mW

PRODUCT IMAGE:

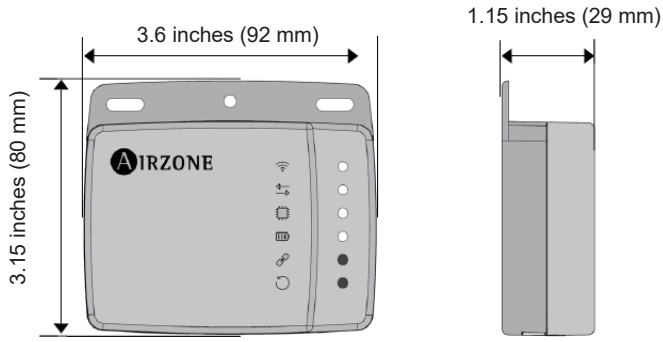
FEATURES:

- A wired remote controller is optional to connect to the indoor unit together with the Wi-Fi adaptor.
- The DKN Cloud Wi-Fi adaptor is capable of controlling a group of up to 16 indoor units
- The Wi-Fi adaptor wiring consists of a non-polar two-wire connection to the indoor unit at terminals P1/P2 and a connection to the indoor unit power supply connector X18A or X35A (16VDC).
  - Wiring harness provided with Wi-Fi adapter
- The DKN Cloud Wi-Fi adaptor enables the control of P1P2 indoor units through an iOS or Android smartphone app:
  - Monitor and/or control the indoor units:
    - On/Off
    - Mode – Cool, Heat, Auto*, Dry and Fan
    - Room temperature
    - Sensed by the remote controller or indoor unit return air sensor (depends on indoor unit model)
    - Setpoint
    - Fan speed
    - Error code
    - Next scheduled event
  - Capable of setting a 7 day schedule for each indoor unit group
  - Capable of editing unit name and icon, and grouping units
  - Capable of managing users with Basic and Advanced authority
  - Capable of displaying different languages: English, Spanish and French
  - Capable of selecting temperature units °F/°C
- Open API document is available for cloud to cloud integration
- Modbus Integration
  - The following points are available through Modbus:

No.	Point Name	Read Only/Writable
1	Unit on/off	Writable
2	Setpoint	Writable
3	Room temperature	Writable
4	Mode Auto/Cool/Heat/Fan/Dry	Writable
5	Fan speed	Writable
6	Louver position	Writable
7	Error code	Read only

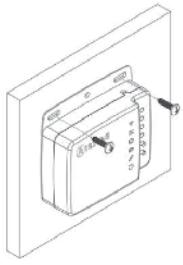
*Applicable to indoor units that connect to ***VRV*** Heat Recovery outdoor units only.

DIMENSIONS:

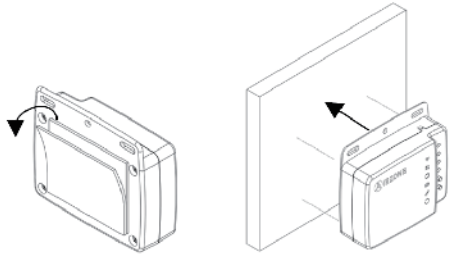


MOUNTING:

The Wi-Fi adaptor shall be mounted onto a flat surface either through screws or double-sided adhesive tape provided with the Wi-Fi adapter

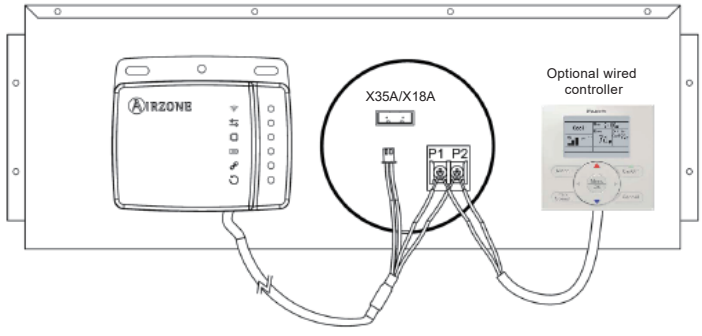


Screw attachment



Double-sided adhesive attachment

CONNECTION:



*For FTQ_P and FXTQ_P, use the X9A connector on the A2P PCB

ADAPTOR COMPATIBILITY:

This adaptor is not compatible with the following adaptors:

- KRP4A71, KRP4A72, KRP4A73, KRP4A74
- DTA104A53, DTA104A61, DTA104A62
- DTA116A51 if powered by the indoor unit PCB

2.7 AZAI6WSPDKC DKN Plus Interface

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

MODEL COMPATIBILITY:

Compatible with the following indoor units:

Indoor Unit Family	Model Number	Type
VRV and ***VRV*** Life	CXTQ, FXAQ, FXDQ, FXEQ, FXFQ, FXHQ, FXLQ, FXMQ, FXNQ, FXSQ, FXTQ, FXUQ, FXZQ	P1P2
SkyAir	FAQ, FBQ, FTQ, FCQ, FHQ	P1P2
Single-Zone and Multi-Zone	FDMQ, FFQ	P1P2
	CDXS, CTXS, FDXS, FTK, FTX, FTXG, FTXR, FTXS, FVXS	S21

The following indoor units do not have the S21 connection and require an additional interface adaptor (ordered separately) to provide the S21 connect for the adaptor:

Indoor Unit Models	Required Interface Adaptor
FTX09NMVJU, FTX12NMVJU, FTK09NMVJU, FTK12NMVJU	KRP067A41E
FTX15NMVJU, FTX18NMVJU, FTX24NMVJU, FTK18NMVJU, FTK24NMVJU	KRP980B2E

SPECIFICATIONS:

Model		AZAI6WSPDKC
Description		DKN Plus Interface
Maximum connections		1 S21 indoor units / 16 P1P2 indoor units
Wiring	**P1P2/S21 communication and power wire**	7.7ft / 2.35m (included)
	S21 wire adaptor	0.5ft / 0.15m (included)
	P1P2 wire adaptor	0.5ft / 0.15m (included)
Modbus RS485 communication baud rate		19200 bps
BACnet MS/TP communication baud rate		9600/19200/38400 bps (Default: 38400)
Power supply	**For DKN Plus Interface**	12-16VDC from indoor unit PCB
	For 3rd party thermostat	24VAC from external power supply
Dimensions		3.62 in x 3.15 in x 1.14 in / 92mm x 80 mm x 29 mm
Weight		3.24 oz / 92g
Storage temperature		-4°F to 158°F
Operation temperature		32°F to 113°F
Compliance		EMC with the standard 47 CFR Part 15B (US) EMC with ICES-003 Issue6 standard (Canada)

PRODUCT IMAGE:

FEATURES:

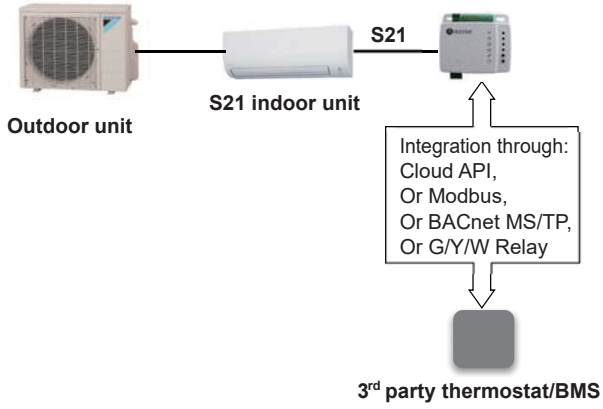
- Versatile interface that can integrate with a third-party thermostat through multiple approaches:
  - Cloud API
  - Modbus
  - BACnet MS/TP
  - Thermostat G/Y/W Relay Control: Fan, Cool, Heat
    - Advanced control logic to maximize indoor unit efficiency
    - Automatically disables thermostat relay logic when cloud API connection detected
- Easy commissioning with Daikin's Bluetooth furnace configuration app
- Indoor unit control and monitoring points*
  - On/Off
  - Setpoint
  - Room temperature
  - Mode (Auto, Cool, Heat, Fan, Dry)
  - Fan speed
  - Louver position
  - Error code
  - Interlock control with indoor unit On/Off – Dry Contact
- Aux Heater Control
- Modbus and BACnet MS/TP Integration
  - The following points are available through Modbus or BACnet MS/TP:

No.	Point Name	Read Only/Writable
1	Unit on/off	Writable
2	Setpoint	Writable
3	Room temperature	Writable
4	Mode Auto/Cool/Heat/Fan/Dry	Writable
5	Fan speed	Writable
6	Louver position	Writable
7	Error code	Read only

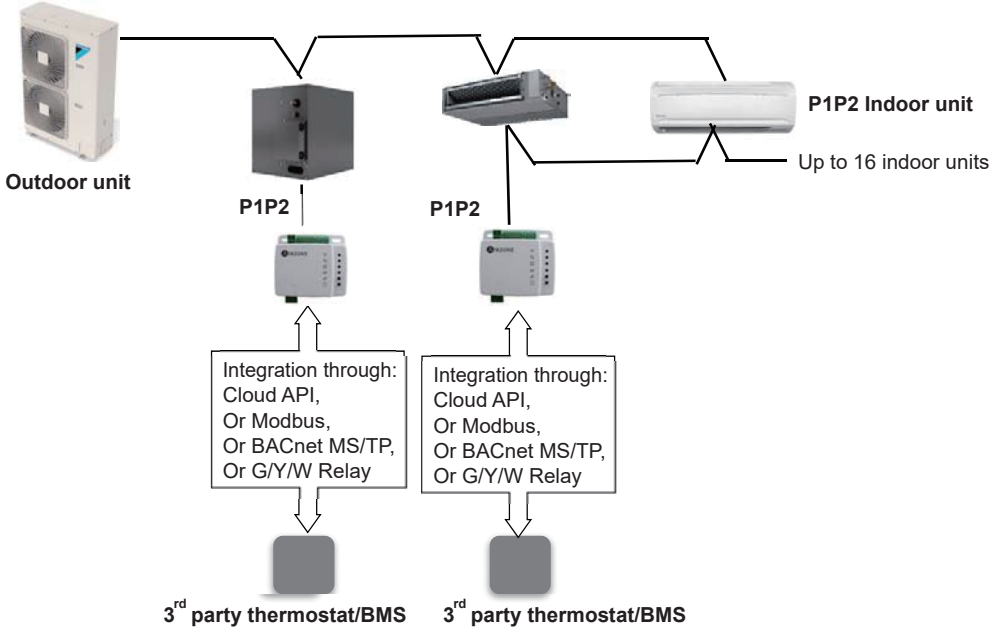
* For integration through cloud, Modbus, and BACnet MS/TP only

SYSTEM DIAGRAM:

- For S21 indoor units:

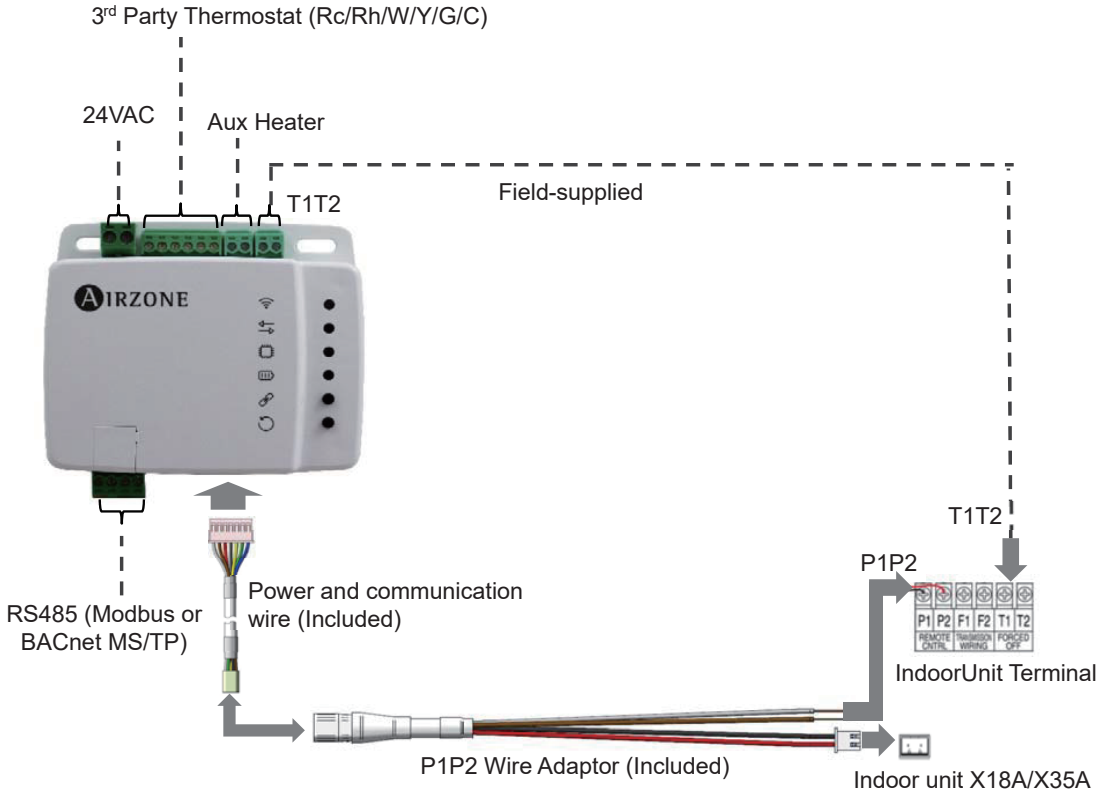


- For P1P2 indoor units:

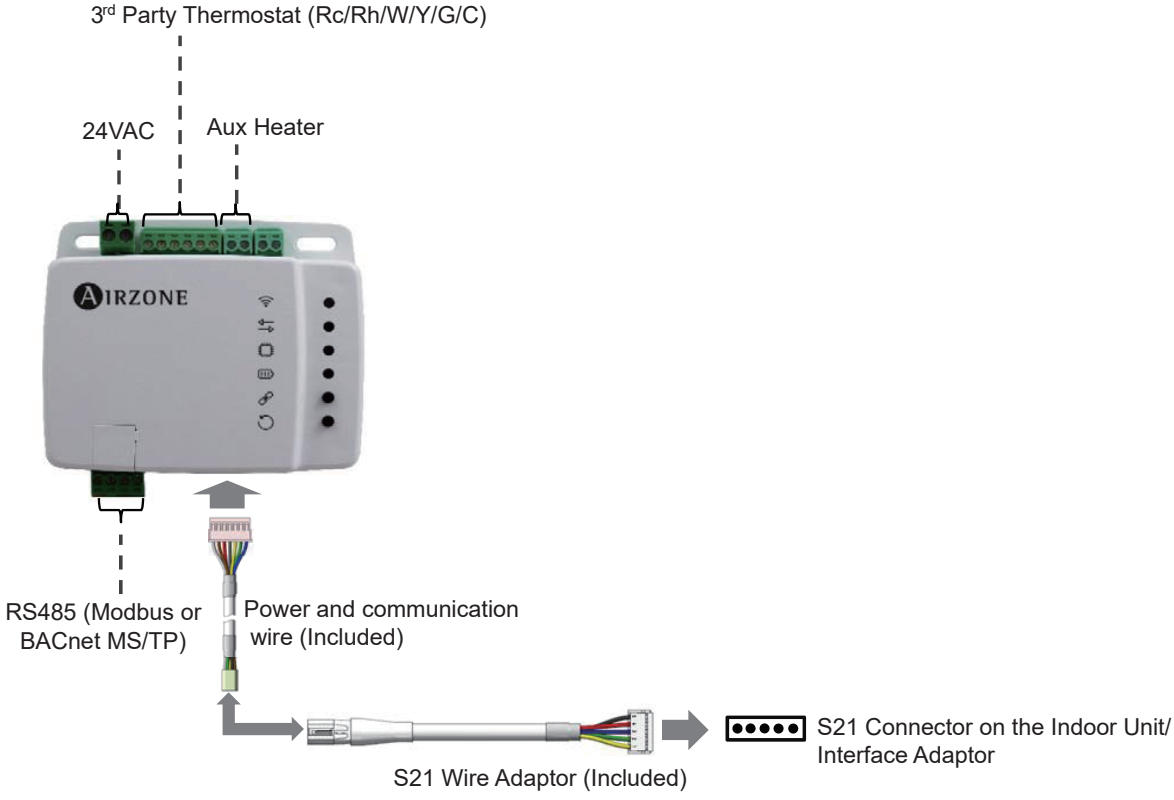


WIRING DIAGRAM:

- Connects to P1P2 indoor unit



- Connects to S21 indoor unit



DIMENSIONS:

2.8 DSE401A71/DSE401B71 HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication Adaptor

Submittal Data Sheet

DSE401A71/DSE401B71 – HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

MODEL COMPATIBILITY:

Compatible with VRV Emerion (REYQ_AA) outdoor unit.

SPECIFICATIONS:

Hero Simple Edge	
Model	DSE401A71/DSE401B71
Description	HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication Adaptor
Maximum Connections	64 Indoor Units / 1 Outdoor Units
Communication to Outdoor unit	Proprietary
Communication to Cloud	LTE-CAT-M1 (Verizon) Continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii
Power	16VDC supplied by Outdoor Unit, less than 3W
Operating Temp Range	-22 to 125 °F (-30～52℃)
Storage Temp range	-22 to 158 °F (-30～70℃)
Operating Humidity Range	Less than 95% RH（Non-condensing）
Storage Temp range	Less than 95% RH（Non-condensing）
Installation Elevation	Less than 6500ft (2000m)
Dimensions (WxHXD)	6.2”X3.8”X1.7” (160mm X 96mm X 42mm)
Weight (Mass)	1.0lb (0.46kg)
Communication wire	9-33/64ft (2900mm)
Conversion harness	0.55ft (170mm)
Enclosure Rating	IP66
Hero Cloud Services	
Compatible Browser	Google Chrome, Safari
Compatible Devices	PC, MAC, Smartphone and Tablet with internet connection
Requires Subscription	Yes
URL	www.daikinhero.com

PRODUCT IMAGE:

Daikin Comfort Technologies North America, Inc., 19001 Kermier Road, Waller, TX, 77484
www.daikinac.com www.daikincity.com

Submittal Data Sheet

DSE401A71/DSE401B71 – HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

FEATURES:

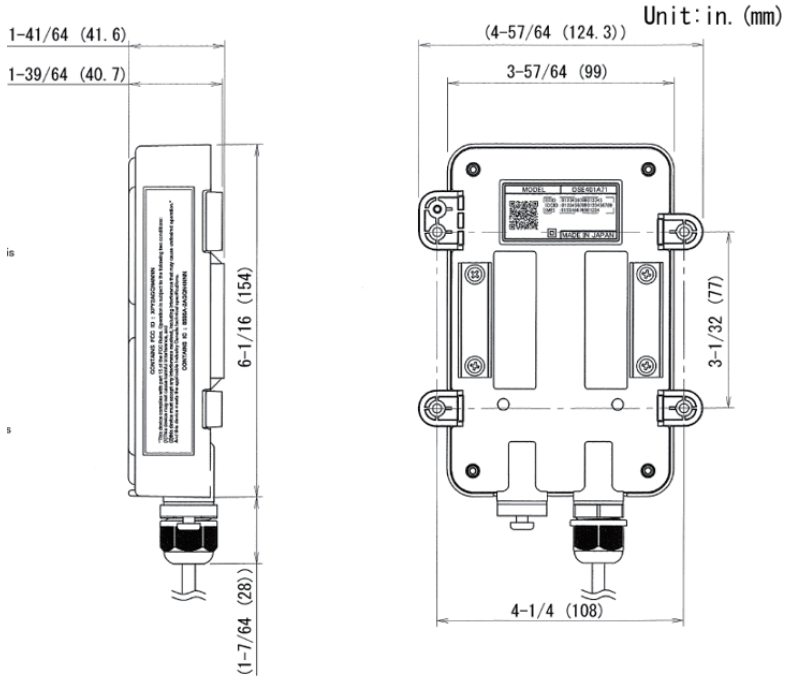
- On-board LED indicates the operation status of the Daikin HERO Simple Edge.
- Included SIM card for cloud connection
- Directly powers from the outdoor unit, no external power supply is required.
- Connects the VRV system to the HERO Cloud Service.
- Easy setup with QR code label with device information (Edge ID, SIM Card Information).
- Remote monitoring for outdoor unit operation data
- Remote monitoring for indoor unit operation data
- Simple customizable dashboards to provide quick status of connected units and sites
- Animated piping layout with live data and past data at 1-minute intervals.
- View and download trend graphs of historical operation data.
- Download historical operation data.
- Alarm dashboard with automatic email notifications when an alarm occurs
- Energy management dashboard to view energy consumption for the outdoor units.
- User management with customizable access for the specified user type.
- Monitors multiple outdoor units across multiple sites with a single login.

Submittal Data Sheet

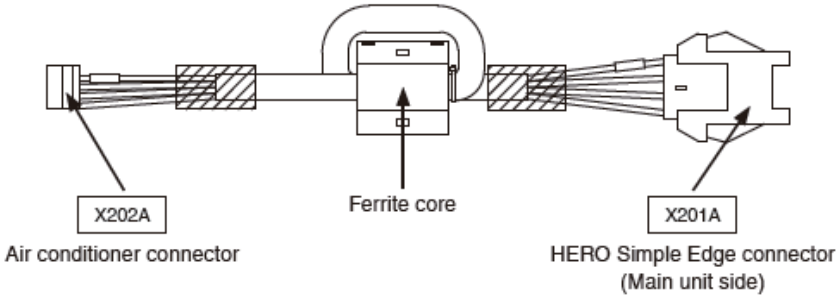
DSE401A71/DSE401B71 – HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

HERO SIMPLE EDGE



Harness included with device to connect to outdoor unit.



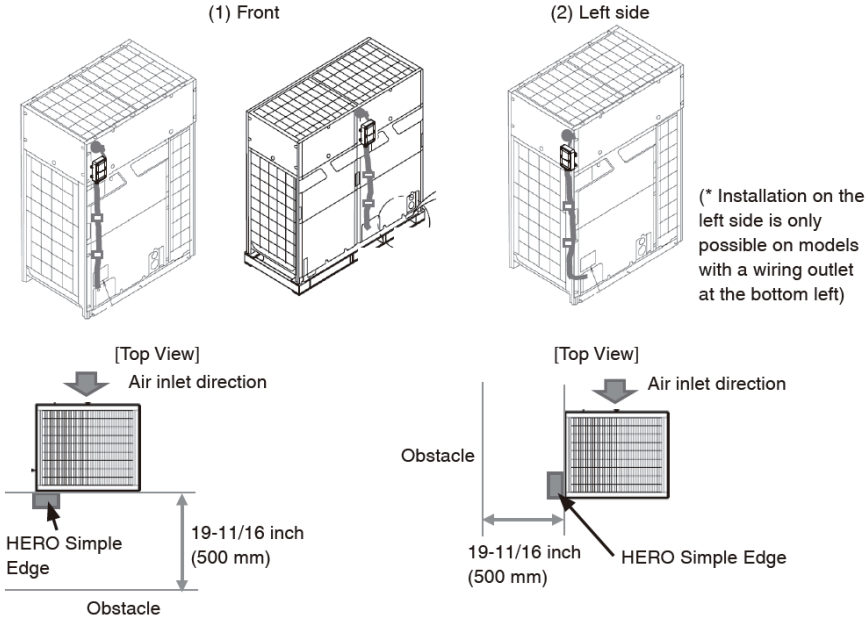
Daikin Comfort Technologies North America, Inc., 19001 Kermier Road, Waller, TX, 77484
www.daikinac.com www.daikincity.com

Submittal Data Sheet

DSE401A71/DSE401B71 – HERO Simple Edge Cloud Communication adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

MOUNTING EXAMPLE:



Please refer to installation manual for more information.

* Since this product uses wireless communication, it cannot be used in tunnels, or underground, or within buildings where cellular signal cannot reach, or outdoors where the signal is weak or outside the communication service area. Even within the communication service area, this product may not be able to be used in places where cellular signal is difficult to transmit, such as indoors, underground, in tunnels, where blocked by buildings, in mountainous areas, on the open ocean, or on high floors within buildings such as high-rise apartment buildings or condominiums.

DOCUMENTATION:

Documentation available on www.daikincity.com and/or www.daikinac.com:

- Submittal
- Product Flyer
- Installation Manual
- Guide Specification

Daikin Comfort Technologies North America, Inc., 19001 Kermier Road, Waller, TX, 77484
www.daikinac.com www.daikincity.com

DSE401A71

Safety Precautions

Also see the installation manual provided with the equipment that you connect.

Please read these "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully before installing the unit, and be sure to install the unit correctly.

- The installation manual and the **"SAFETY PRECAUTIONS"** contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions.

⚠ **WARNING**	Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.
⚠ **CAUTION**	Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

- After completing the installation, conduct a trial run to check for faults, and explain to the customer how to operate the unit and take care of it with the aid of the operation manual. Ask the customer to store the installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.

⚠ **WARNING**
• **Ask your dealer or other qualified personnel to do the installation work.** Do not attempt to install the unit yourself. Improper installation may result in electric shock or fire.
• **Do not relocate or reinstall the unit yourself.** Improper installation work may result in electric shock or fire. Ask your local dealer to carry out the relocation and reinstallation of the unit.
• **Install the unit in accordance with the instructions in this installation manual.** Improper installation may result in electric shock or fire.
• **Be sure to use only the specified accessories and parts for the installation work.** Failure to use the specified parts may result in the DSE401A71 falling, electric shock, or fire.
• **Install the unit on a foundation strong enough to withstand the weight of the unit.** A foundation of insufficient strength may result in the equipment falling and causing injury.
• **Always perform the installation work with the power supply shut off.** Touching energized electric parts will cause electric shock.

DSE401A71

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not disassemble, modify or repair the unit.**
  Electric shock or fire may result.
- **Make sure that all wiring is secured, that the specified wires are used, and that there is no strain on the terminal connections or wires.**
  Improper connection or securing of wires may result in abnormal heat build-up or fire.
- **The choice of materials and installations must comply with the applicable national and international standards.**
- **Carry out the installation work taking earthquakes into account.**
  Failure to do so during installation work may result in the unit falling and causing accidents.
- **When wiring the power supply, position the wires so that the electric parts box lid can be securely fastened.**
  Improper positioning of the electric parts box lid may result in an abnormal heat build-up, electric shock, or fire.
- **This unit is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety.**
- **Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit.**
  This equipment is not suitable for use in locations where children are likely to be present.

DSE401A71

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be very careful when transporting the unit.**
- **Safely dispose of the packing materials.**
  Tear apart and throw away plastic packaging bags so that children will not play with them.
  If children play with a plastic bag which was not torn apart, they face the risk of suffocation.
- **This unit is a FCC class B product.**
- **In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference.**
  In such cases, the user may be required to take adequate measures.
- **Disposal requirements: the dismantling of the unit and of other parts must be done in accordance with relevant local and national legislation.**
- **Fill wiring intake hole with putty.**
  Entry of water or insects may result in electric leakage or malfunction.
- **Do not operate with wet hands.**
  Electric shock and malfunction may result.
- **Do not wash the unit with water.**
  Electric shock or fire may result.
- **Install the unit, its power cord, and its communication cable at least 39-3/8 inch (1 m) away from televisions or radios.**
  This is to prevent picture interference and noise. (Depending on the incoming signal strength, a distance of 39-3/8 inch (1 m) may not be sufficient to eliminate noise.)
- **If this product is installed in an area high in salt, the magnet may rust.**
- **Do not install the unit in the following places.**

1. **In places with a high concentration of mineral oil spray or vapor (e.g. a kitchen).**
   Plastic parts will deteriorate, parts may fall off and water leakage could result.
2. **Near machinery emitting electromagnetic radiation.**
   Other than connected VRV outdoor unit.
   Electromagnetic radiation may disturb the operation of the control system and result in a malfunction of the unit.
3. **In places where flammable gas may leak, where there is carbon fibre or ignitable dust suspensions in the air, or where volatile flammables such as paint thinner or gasoline are handled.**
   Operating the unit in such places may result in fire.
4. **In places where the unit is exposed to direct flames.**
   Abnormal heat build-up or firing may result.

DSE401A71

■ Cautions about using wireless communication

⚠ WARNING
Do not install this product in places where a person wearing a medical device or an implanted medical device such as a cardiac pacemaker may come within 7-7/8 inch (20 cm) of this product. Malfunction of the medical devices may result.
Do not use this product at airports, hospitals, or other buildings where the use of radio waves is prohibited or restricted, or near high-precision electronic devices. Malfunction of avionic instruments, medical equipment and electronic equipment may result.
This product is not intended for use with equipment or machines that may endanger human life in the event of a malfunction such as medical equipment, nuclear power equipment, aerospace equipment, or transportation equipment, as well as with equipment or machines that require high reliability such as core communication equipment and computer systems. If this product is used with equipment or machines such as those described above, this company shall not be liable for any personal injury, fire accidents, damage to reputation, etc. caused by the failure of this company's product.

⚠ CAUTION
This product performs wireless communication. If it is installed in an environment surrounded by metal, the metal will block the radio waves and normal operation may become impossible. Keep magnetic cards such as cash cards and credit cards away from this product. The cards may become unusable.
Since this product is a device that communicates using wireless infrastructure, proper communication may become impossible due to the effects coming from the factors listed below. • Effects from the characteristics of the infrastructure network used • Effects on the infrastructure network used due to construction, disasters, large-scale events, etc.
Since this product uses wireless communication, it cannot be used in tunnels, or underground, or within buildings where radio waves cannot reach, or outdoors where the signal is weak or outside the communication service area. Even within the communication service area, this product may not be able to be used in places where radio waves are difficult to transmit, such as indoors, underground, in tunnels, where blocked by buildings, in mountainous areas, on the open ocean, or on high floors within buildings such as high-rise apartment buildings or condominiums.
This company shall not be liable for any damages caused by the product losing opportunities to communicate due to external factors such as power outages and communication equipment.

DSE401A71

■ **About handling of magnets for installing on the outdoor unit**

Neodymium magnets are used to install this product on the outdoor unit.

Neodymium magnets have a strong magnetic force, so be sure to read this manual carefully before use.

⚠ WARNING
Bringing this product close to people with medical devices such as cardiac pacemakers and to other medical devices is very dangerous. It may interfere with the normal operation of the medical device.
Accidental ingestion of magnets can lead to life-threatening accidents. If you ingest a magnet, there is a risk of choking, and if it stays in your body, you may need abdominal surgery. If ingested, consult a doctor immediately. To prevent accidental ingestion, keep magnets out of the reach of children.
When magnets are attracted to each other or to the air conditioner, fingers or skin may become pinched and injury may result.

⚠ CAUTION
If the magnets are vigorously attracted to each other or to an air conditioner by the attractive force of the magnets themselves, the surface coating of the magnet body may be chipped or peel off, or the magnet body itself may chip, which may lead to rust on the magnets.
If you have an allergic reaction to metals, your skin may become irritated or red when you touch the magnets. Do not touch the magnets if you experience any of these symptoms. Never lick the magnets or drink water that touches the magnets, as the components of the magnets may dissolve in water and cause symptoms such as abdominal pain.
Keep magnetic cards such as cash cards and credit cards away from the magnets. The records on the cards may be destroyed or magnetized, and the cards may become unusable.
Bringing magnets close to various electronic devices, video devices, and communication devices (speakers, CD/DVD players, cathode ray tubes, mobile phones, watches, etc.) may interfere with normal operation or lead to malfunction.
If magnets of this product is placed near electronic control equipment, it may result in malfunction or accident. Do not place magnets of this product near electronic control equipment. Do not bring the magnets close to such devices or bring them into an aircraft.
If this product is left exposed, it is dangerous to attract surrounding magnets and metals vigorously. When storing this product, put it in the packing box.

DSE401A71

■ **About export of this product**

⚠ CAUTION

This product (including software) is for the US/Canada region only and cannot be used overseas.
This company shall not be liable if this product is used in other regions. In addition, please note that this company does not provide any overseas maintenance support or technical support for this product.

This device, which was assembled by Goodman Manufacturing Company, L.P., contains a component that is classified as an intentional radiator.
This intentional radiator has been certified by the FCC: FCC ID (XPY2AGQN4NNN).
And this international radiator has an Industry Canada ID (8595A-2AGQN4NNN).

The manufacturer of the intentional radiator (model no. SARA-R410M-02B) is u-blox AG (www.u-blox.com).

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC's Rules. Operation of this device is subject to two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference; and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesirable operation.

And this device meets the applicable industry Canada technical specifications.

The FCC responsible party is Goodman Manufacturing Company, L.P., and may be contacted by calling (713)-861-2500, or at 19001 Kermier Rd., Waller, TX 77484. (www.GoodmanMFG.com)

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits. To ensure compliance, human proximity to the antenna shall not be less the 7-7/8 inch (20 cm) during normal operations.

DSE401A71

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there in no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

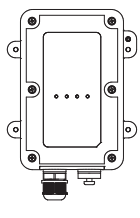
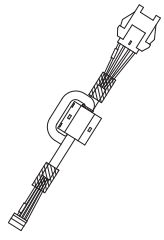
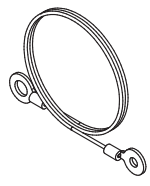
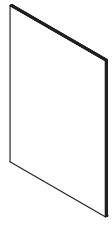
DSE401A71

Contents

1 Before Installation

Accessories

Check that the following accessories are included.

Name	HERO Simple Edge	Conversion harness	Fall prevention wire	Fall prevention wire fixing screw	Installation manual (this document)
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 copy
Shape					

DSE401A71

⚠ WARNING

HERO Simple Edge SIM card must be activated before applying power to the device.
Failure to do this will cause up to a 5-hour delay in connecting to the Daikin HERO Cloud Service.

⚠ CAUTION

- Accessories are required for installation work. Please keep them safe, and do not lose them.
- Also, please ask the customer to keep the manual after the installation work is completed.

Field Supplied Parts (NOT Included)

The following parts are required when wiring to the air conditioner.
Please prepare by acquiring them locally.

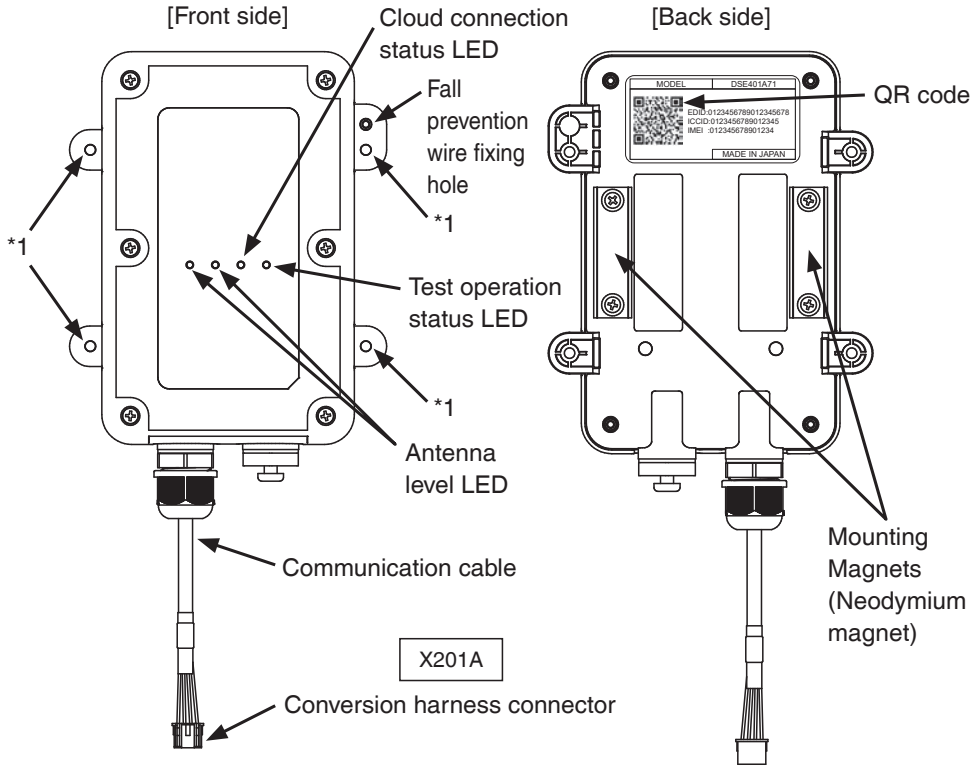
Name	Wiring securing bracket	Cable tie
Quantity	2 pcs.	5 pcs.
Shape		

* For wiring securing brackets, use something with the following properties.
- Something made for outdoor use which is weather resistant
- Something with no burrs or edges
- Something fixed with double-sided tape

DSE401A71

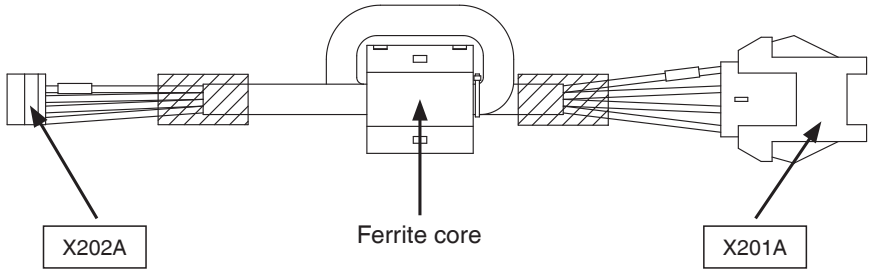
2 Names of parts

HERO Simple Edge



*1 Not used when installing on an outdoor unit.
When installing on the main unit, do not make holes in the outdoor unit.

Conversion harness



DSE401A71

3 Selecting an installation location

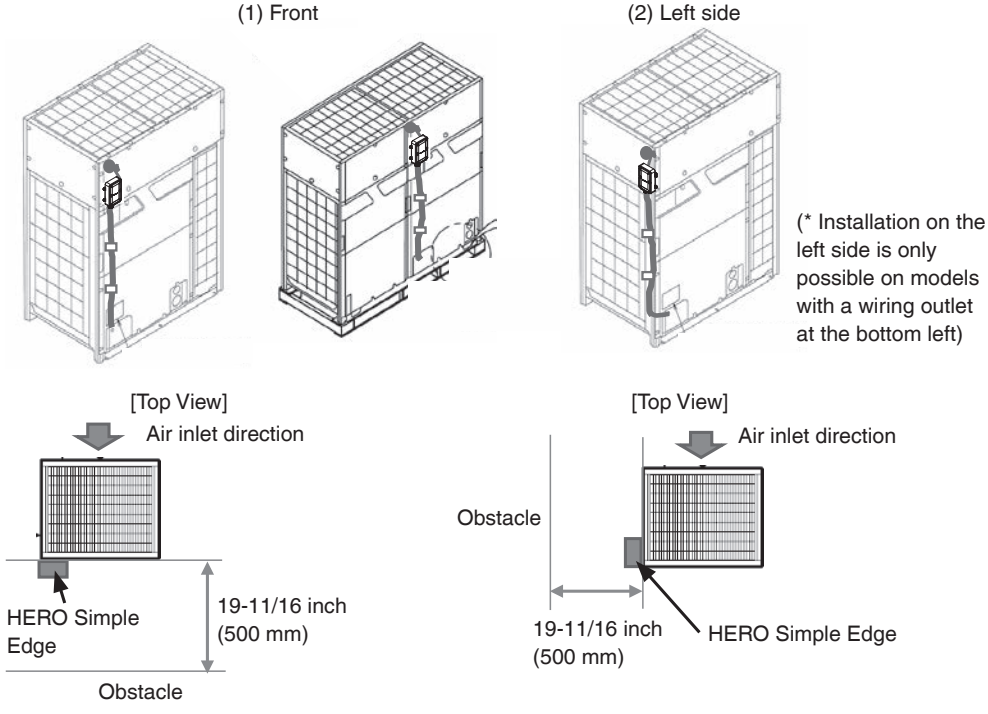
CAUTION

This product performs wireless communication. Do not install in an environment surrounded by metal, as metal interferes with radio waves.

Select an installation location satisfying the following requirements with approval of the customer.

(1) Install on the outer panel of the outdoor unit (installing on the front of the outdoor unit is recommended).
(2) As shown in the figure below, make sure that there is a space of 19-11/16 inch (500 mm) or more from the installation surface to the nearest obstacle.
(3) Install vertically to the ground (the radio wave environment changes depending on the installation angle).

Installation location example



DSE401A71

⚠ CAUTION

If this product is installed in an area high in salt, the magnet may rust.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install in locations such as the following.

(1) Do not install on the top surface of the outdoor unit
- May cause a loss of waterproofness.
- You may not be able to communicate with cloud services.

(2) Do not install near the air outlet
- The heat in the outlet air* may cause deformation or malfunction.

* Make sure that heat in the outlet air does not affect the unit by installing an airflow direction adjustment plate or windbreak plate.

(3) Do not install inside the air conditioner
- This product performs wireless communication. If it is installed in an environment surrounded by metal, the metal will block the radio waves and communication with cloud services will not be possible.

(4) Do not attach the outdoor unit mounting magnets in a place where the surface is uneven
- The unit can become easily detached from the air conditioner.

(5) Do not install in places exposed to chemicals
- May cause damage and a loss of waterproofness.

DSE401A71

4 Installing the HERO Simple Edge

Prohibited	• When installing the HERO Simple Edge, turn off the power supply of the air conditioner before starting work.

• Install the HERO Simple Edge on the air conditioner.

4.1 Connecting the conversion harness

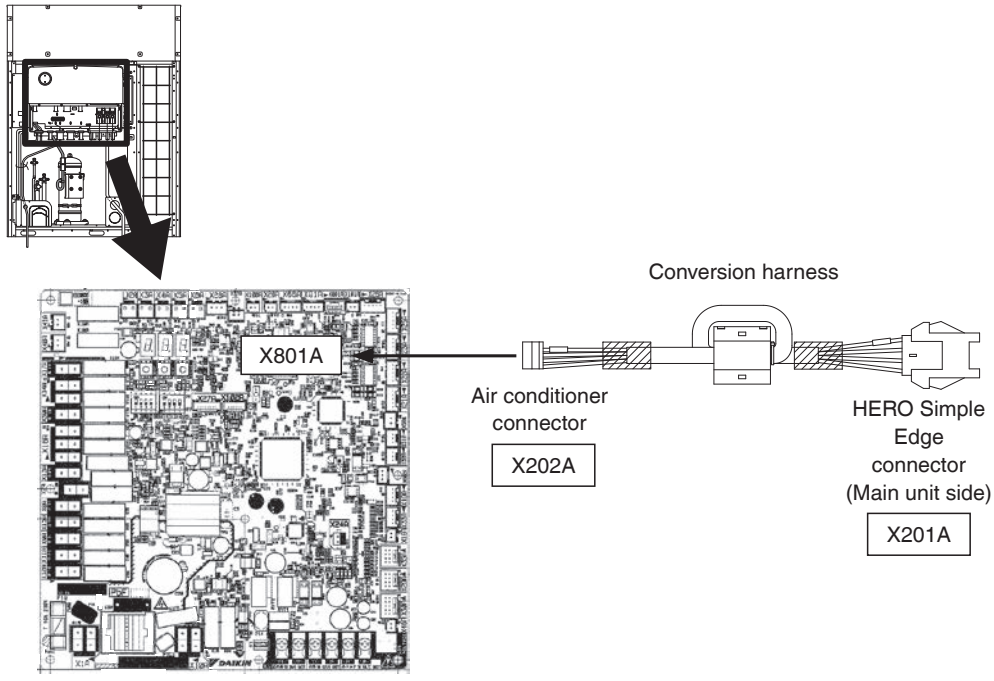
• Connect the conversion harness to the air conditioner.

CAUTION

- Remove the outer panel of the outdoor unit according to the removal procedure outlined in the installation manual and service guide for each model.
- Do not remove the ferrite core.
  (Comply with the emission limits.)

(1) Connect the air conditioner connector (X202A) of the conversion harness to the communication connector (X801A) of the outdoor unit printed circuit board.

■ **Connector connection example [REYQ96-168A]**

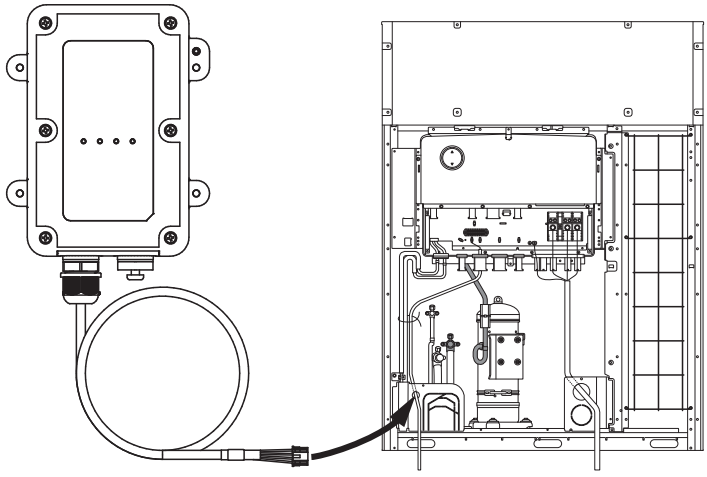


DSE401A71

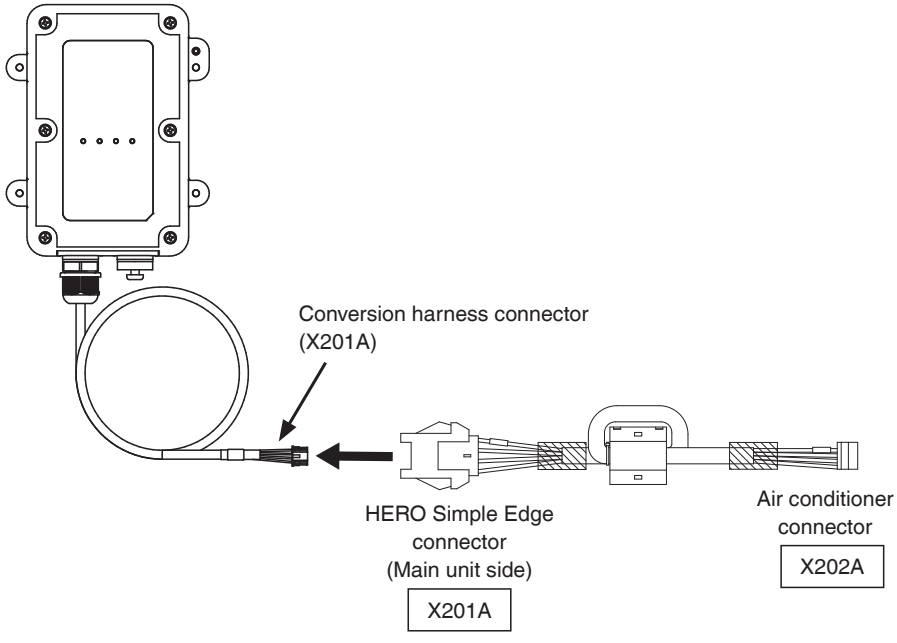
4.2 Connecting the HERO Simple Edge

- Connect the HERO Simple Edge to the conversion harness.

(1) Pass the communication cable of the HERO Simple Edge through the wiring outlet of the air conditioner.



(2) Connect the conversion harness connector (X201A) to the HERO Simple Edge connector (Main unit side) (X201A).



DSE401A71

4.3 Wiring the inside of the air conditioner

• Refer to the figure below when wiring.

Maintain a gap of 1-31/32 inch (50 mm) or more between the communication cable and the power supply cable/earth wire.

WARNING

HERO Simple Edge SIM card must be activated before applying power to the device.
Failure to do this will cause up to a 5-hour delay in connecting to the Daikin HERO Cloud Service.

CAUTION

After the wiring work is completed, make sure that the connector of each electrical part in the control box is connected and that all screws on the terminal block are tight.

(1) Install the conversion harness in the control box and secure it with cable ties.
- Be sure to install in the control box.
- Wrap a cable tie around the ferrite core to fix it securely and prevent it from touching other connection terminals or metal parts.
- So that tension is not applied to the connector, use a cable tie (white) to fix the ferrite core securely to the wiring clamp material closest to the connector.
- The harness of HERO Simple Edge should not cut across the control board.

* Please acquire cable ties locally. They are not included in the accessories.

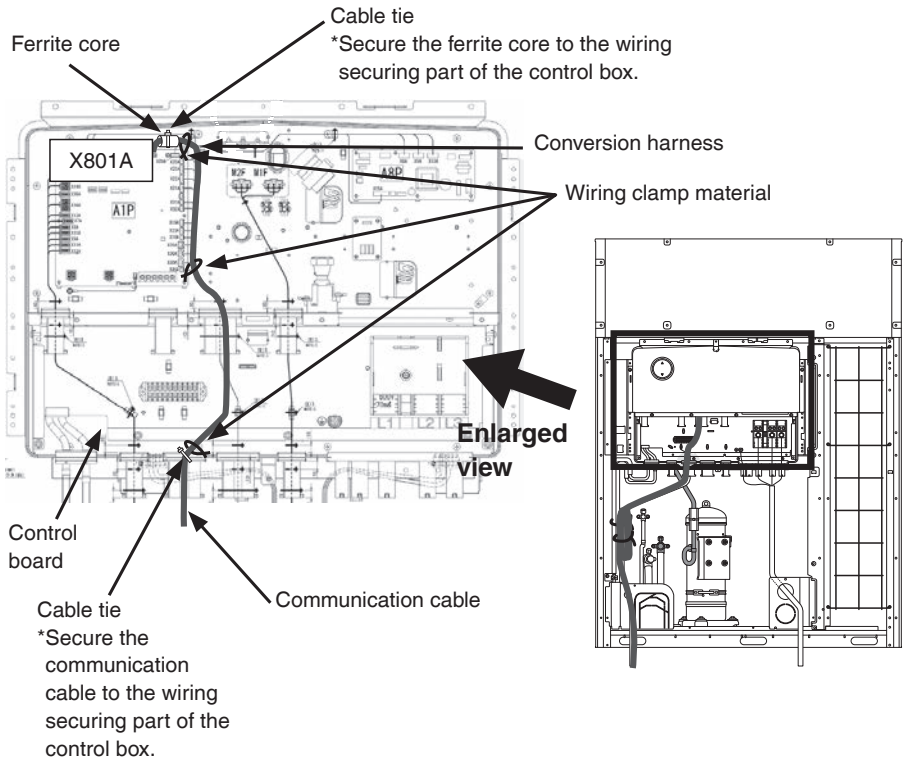
(2) Secure the communication cable to the wiring clamp material that secures the lead wire of the outdoor unit.

(3) Using a cable tie, secure the communication cable in at least 1 place to the wiring clamp material and the outdoor unit.

(4) Install the control box and outer panel of the air conditioner in their original positions.

DSE401A71

■ **Internal wiring example [REYQ96-168A]**



4.4 Installing the HERO Simple Edge temporarily

⚠ WARNING

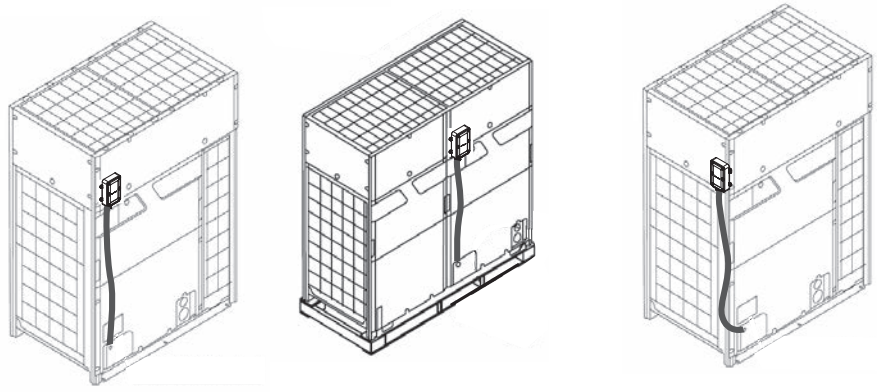
HERO Simple Edge SIM card must be activated before applying power to the device.
Failure to do this will cause up to a 5-hour delay in connecting to the Daikin HERO Cloud Service.

- Install the unit on the air conditioner temporarily at the planned installation location.

(1) Remove the protective tape from the magnets for installing on the outdoor unit.
(2) Temporarily install the unit on the outdoor unit according to the following installation location example.
  - Before performing wiring on the outside of the air conditioner, check the cell signal reception of the HERO Simple Edge and perform test operation.
  - Install the HERO Simple Edge vertically to the ground. If it is not installed vertically to the ground, for example, if it is installed sideways, cellular reception may become bad.
(3) After temporary installation, perform test operation of the HERO Simple Edge.

DSE401A71

[Installation location example]

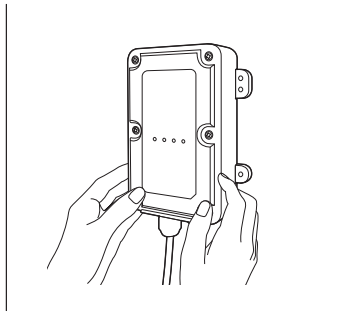


* To remove the unit from the outdoor unit, follow the procedure below.

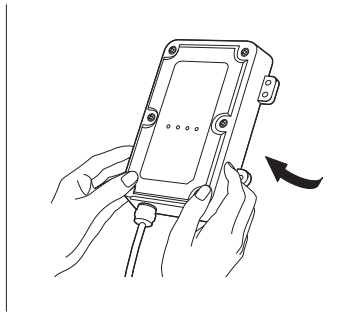
⚠ CAUTION

After installing this product on the outdoor unit, do not slide it side-to-side to move it. The outdoor unit or the magnets for installing on the outdoor unit may be scratched and rust.

(1) Hold the bottom surface of the unit with both hands.



(2) Slowly lift the unit and remove it from the outdoor unit.



DSE401A71

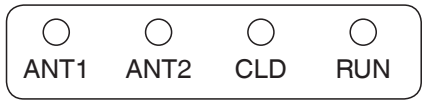
5 Performing test operation of the HERO Simple Edge

⚠ WARNING

HERO Simple Edge SIM card must be activated before applying power to the device.
Failure to do this will cause up to a 5-hour delay in connecting to the Daikin HERO Cloud Service.

- Associate the HERO Simple Edge with the customer's property (via test operation).

[About HERO Simple Edge LED display]



LED display ●: Unlit ○: Lit ◑: Blinking ●: Unlit or Lit/Blinking

LED name	LED color	Name	Explanation
ANT1	Orange	Antenna level	Cell signal reception display
ANT2	Orange		
CLD	Green	Cloud connection	Cloud connection status display
RUN	Green	Test operation	Test operation status display

DSE401A71

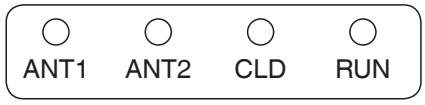
5.1 Checking the cell signal strength

- The HERO Simple Edge is equipped with a wireless communication function. Install it in an environment with a good cell signal strength to communicate with the cloud.

⚠ CAUTION

- With the HERO Simple Edge installed in the installation location, check cell signal strength.
  The cell signal changes due to the influence of metal objects such as the outer panel of the air conditioner and obstructions.
- If a device that relays radio waves from a mobile phone line is installed nearby, cellular reception may become bad.

(1) Turn on the power supply to the air conditioner.
Make sure the HERO Simple Edge starts up properly (all 4 LEDs light up for 5 seconds).



NOTE

- If the 4 LEDs of the HERO Simple Edge do not light up, refer to "Troubleshooting".

(2) Wait for **about 3 minutes** until ANT1 and ANT2 light up.
(3) Make sure that the antenna level LED of the HERO Simple Edge is displaying **"2 (Good)" or better**.

LED display ●: Unlit ○: Lit ◑: Blinking ●: Unlit or Lit/Blinking

Antenna level	Cell signal strength	Cell signal reception				Usability in installation location
		ANT1	ANT2	CLD	RUN	
3	Very good	○	○	●	●	OK
2	Good	○	●	●	●	OK
1	Bad	●	○	●	●	(NOTE 1)
0	Out of service area	●	●	●	●	No (NOTE 2)

(NOTE 1)
If the antenna level is 1 (Bad), changing the installation location is recommended.
(NOTE 2)
If the antenna level is 0 (Out of service area), change the installation location.

DSE401A71

5.2 Performing test operation of the HERO Simple Edge

- Register the HERO Simple Edge in the cloud.

⚠ CAUTION

- Prepare a device such as a PC, smart phone or tablet with INTERNET connection to register the HERO Simple Edge.

Register the HERO Simple Edge from the following URL. https://www.daikinhero.com	

- During test operation of the HERO Simple Edge, the cloud connection status LED (CLD) and the test operation status LED (RUN) will be as follows.

LED display ●: Unlit ○: Lit ◑: Blinking

Test operation status	ANT1	ANT2	CLD	RUN	How to respond
(1) Connecting to the cloud	○	○	◑	◑	
⬇					
(2) Cloud connection completed	○	○	○	◑	If CLD does not light up, refer to “Troubleshooting”.
⬇					
(3) Performing test operation	○	○	○	◑	
⬇					
(4) Restarting the HERO Simple Edge	○	○	○	○	All LEDs will light up for 5 seconds.
⬇					
(5) Test operation completed	○	○	○	○	If RUN does not light up, refer to “Troubleshooting”.

* In the example, the antenna level is shown as 3 (Very good).

- When both CLD and RUN LEDs light up, test operation is completed.

DSE401A71

6 Installing the HERO Simple Edge permanently

■ **How to attach the wiring securing brackets (NOT included)**

When attaching the wiring securing brackets to the outdoor unit, follow the procedure below.

(1) Wipe the mounting surface of the outdoor unit with a clean cloth.
(2) Peel off the tape backing, being careful not to touch the adhesive surface of the wiring securing bracket.
(3) Attach the wiring securing bracket to the mounting surface of the outdoor unit, and press firmly with your thumb for at least 5 seconds.
(4) Make sure that the wiring securing bracket is securely fixed, and then wire the communication cable.

■ **Wiring method to the outside of the air conditioner**

(1) After performing test operation of the HERO Simple Edge, check again that the radio condition is good.
(2) Secure the communication cable coming from the wiring outlet of the outdoor unit in 2 places using wiring securing brackets.
- Do not make holes in the outdoor unit to secure the cable with screws.
- Install the wiring securing brackets so that the communication cable exposed on the outside the unit is divided into 3 equal parts.
- Any remaining length of communication cable should be **bundled and stored in the outdoor unit**.

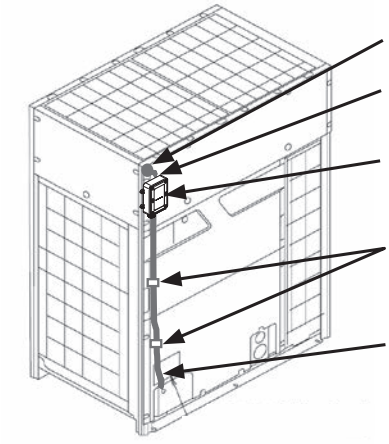
(3) Attach the fall prevention wire to the unit.
- Use the fall prevention wire fixing screw.
  * Tightening torque: 5.31 lbf·in (0.6N·m)

(4) Secure the fall prevention wire to the outer panel of the air conditioner using one of the panel screws.
- Tighten together with the outer panel of the air conditioner. (See the next page.)
- Attach it to a location above the unit.
  (If it is attached below the unit, the unit may be damaged due to dropping.)

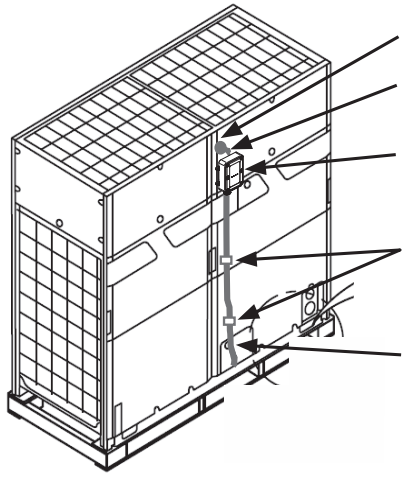
* Be sure to attach the fall prevention wire to prevent the unit from being blown away by heavy winds.

DSE401A71

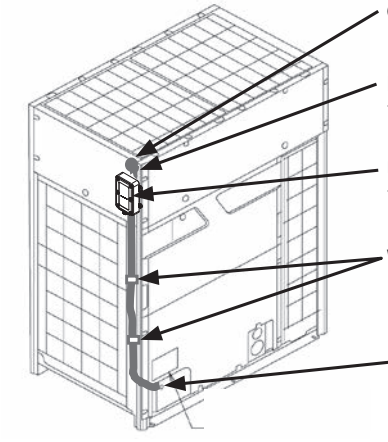
■ External wiring example (1) (Front installation) [REYQ96-168A]



■ External wiring example (2) (Front installation) [REYQ192-240A]

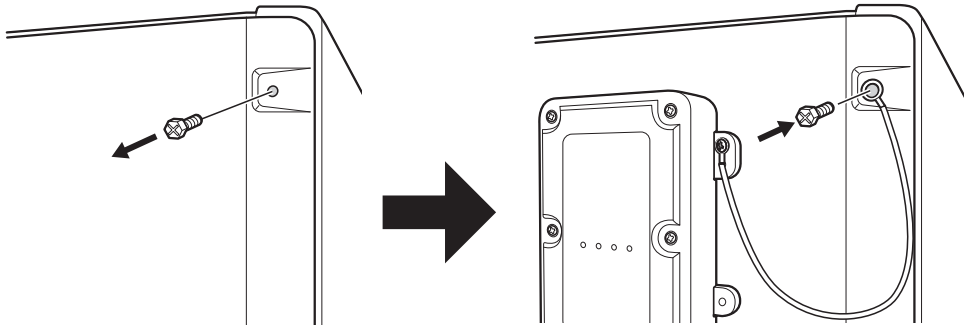


■ External wiring example (3) (Side installation) [REYQ96-168A]



DSE401A71

* How to joint tighten the fall prevention wire
  Tighten and secure the outdoor unit outer panel together with the fall prevention wire using the outdoor unit panel screw.



7 Troubleshooting

	Problem	How to respond
HERO Simple Edge test operation	When the power supply of the air conditioner is turned on, the LED doesn't light up	● Is the conversion harness properly connected to the air conditioner? (1) Make sure that the air conditioner connector (X202A) of the conversion harness and the HERO Simple Edge connector (Main unit side) (X201A) are connected properly. (2) Make sure that the harness of HERO Simple Edge is not broken. (3) If the conversion harness is connected properly, there is a possibility that the HERO Simple Edge is defective. Replace the HERO Simple Edge.
	The antenna level LED does not light up/blink	● Make sure that the installation location is within a communication service area. • If you are outside the communication service area, installation is not possible. ● There is a possibility that the cell signal strength is poor, such as because the HERO Simple Edge is covered by an obstacle or metal. • Change the installation location and then check if the antenna level LED blinks/lights up. ● If you take the measures noted above but the situation still does not improve, please contact our sales representative.

DSE401A71

	Problem	How to respond
HERO Simple Edge test operation	The cloud connection status LED keeps blinking	● Check the cell signal strength. • If the antenna level is 1 or worse, communication cannot be performed normally. Change the installation location to a location where the antenna level is 2 or better and install. ● If you take the measures noted above but the situation still does not improve, please contact our sales representative.
	Won't connect to the cloud	● If HERO Simple Edge was powered up before the SIM card was registered wait up to 5 hours and try to connect again.
	The test operation status LED keeps blinking or is unlit	● Make sure that the device information is correctly registered in the cloud service. • Make sure that the registered device information and the installed device match. If they do not match, correct the registered device information and perform test operation again. ● Is the antenna level 1 or worse? • Change the installation location to a location where the antenna level is 2 or better, then perform test operation again. ● Is the HERO Simple Edge connected to the main outdoor unit? • If it is connected to a sub outdoor unit, test operation can not be completed. Reconnect to the main outdoor unit and perform test operation again. ● Is the conversion harness properly connected? • If communication with the air conditioner is not correct, test operation can not be completed. Make sure that the conversion harness is connected properly, then perform test operation again.

DSE401B71

Safety Precautions

Also see the installation manual provided with the equipment that you connect.

Please read these "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully before installing the unit, and be sure to install the unit correctly.

- The installation manual and the **"SAFETY PRECAUTIONS"** contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions.

⚠ **WARNING**	Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.
⚠ **CAUTION**	Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

- After completing the installation, conduct a trial run to check for faults, and explain to the customer how to operate the unit and take care of it with the aid of the operation manual. Ask the customer to store the installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.

⚠ **WARNING**
• **Ask your dealer or other qualified personnel to do the installation work.** Do not attempt to install the unit yourself. Improper installation may result in electric shock or fire.
• **Do not relocate or reinstall the unit yourself.** Improper installation work may result in electric shock or fire. Ask your local dealer to carry out the relocation and reinstallation of the unit.
• **Install the unit in accordance with the instructions in this installation manual.** Improper installation may result in electric shock or fire.
• **Be sure to use only the specified accessories and parts for the installation work.** Failure to use the specified parts may result in the DSE401B71 falling, electric shock, or fire.
• **Install the unit on a foundation strong enough to withstand the weight of the unit.** A foundation of insufficient strength may result in the equipment falling and causing injury.
• **Always perform the installation work with the power supply shut off.** Touching energized electric parts will cause electric shock.

DSE401B71

⚠ WARNING
• **Do not disassemble, modify or repair the unit.** Electric shock or fire may result.
• **Make sure that all wiring is secured, that the specified wires are used, and that there is no strain on the terminal connections or wires.** Improper connection or securing of wires may result in abnormal heat build-up or fire.
• **The choice of materials and installations must comply with the applicable national and international standards.**
• **Carry out the installation work taking earthquakes into account.** Failure to do so during installation work may result in the unit falling and causing accidents.
• **When wiring the power supply, position the wires so that the electric parts box lid can be securely fastened.** Improper positioning of the electric parts box lid may result in an abnormal heat build-up, electric shock, or fire.
• **This unit is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety.**
• **Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit.** This equipment is not suitable for use in locations where children are likely to be present.

DSE401B71

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be very careful when transporting the unit.**
- **Safely dispose of the packing materials.**
  Tear apart and throw away plastic packaging bags so that children will not play with them. If children play with a plastic bag which was not torn apart, they face the risk of suffocation.
- **This unit is a FCC class B product.**
- **In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference.**
  In such cases, the user may be required to take adequate measures.
- **Disposal requirements: the dismantling of the unit and of other parts must be done in accordance with relevant local and national legislation.**
- **Fill wiring intake hole with putty.**
  Entry of water or insects may result in electric leakage or malfunction.
- **Do not operate with wet hands.**
  Electric shock and malfunction may result.
- **Do not wash the unit with water.**
  Electric shock or fire may result.
- **Install the unit, its power cord, and its communication wire at least 39-3/8 inch (1 m) away from televisions or radios.**
  This is to prevent picture interference and noise. (Depending on the incoming signal strength, a distance of 39-3/8 inch (1 m) may not be sufficient to eliminate noise.)
- **If this product is installed in an area high in salt, the magnet may rust.**
- **Do not install the unit in the following places.**

1. **In places with a high concentration of mineral oil spray or vapor (e.g. a kitchen).**
   Plastic parts will deteriorate, parts may fall off and water leakage could result.
2. **Near machinery emitting electromagnetic radiation.**
   Other than connected VRV outdoor unit.
   Electromagnetic radiation may disturb the operation of the control system and result in a malfunction of the unit.
3. **In places where flammable gas may leak, where there is carbon fibre or ignitable dust suspensions in the air, or where volatile flammables such as paint thinner or gasoline are handled.**
   Operating the unit in such places may result in fire.
4. **In places where the unit is exposed to direct flames.**
   Abnormal heat build-up or firing may result.

DSE401B71

■ **Cautions about using wireless communication**

⚠ WARNING
Do not install this product in places where a person wearing a medical device or an implanted medical device such as a cardiac pacemaker may come within 7-7/8 inch (20 cm) of this product. Malfunction of the medical devices may result.
Do not use this product at airports, hospitals, or other buildings where the use of radio waves is prohibited or restricted, or near high-precision electronic devices. Malfunction of avionic instruments, medical equipment and electronic equipment may result.
This product is not intended for use with equipment or machines that may endanger human life in the event of a malfunction such as medical equipment, nuclear power equipment, aerospace equipment, or transportation equipment, as well as with equipment or machines that require high reliability such as core communication equipment and computer systems. If this product is used with equipment or machines such as those described above, this company shall not be liable for any personal injury, fire accidents, damage to reputation, etc. caused by the failure of this company's product.

⚠ CAUTION
This product performs wireless communication. If it is installed in an environment surrounded by metal, the metal will block the radio waves and normal operation may become impossible. **Keep magnetic cards such as cash cards and credit cards away from this product. The cards may become unusable.**
Since this product is a device that communicates using wireless infrastructure, proper communication may become impossible due to the effects coming from the factors listed below. **• Effects from the characteristics of the infrastructure network used** **• Effects on the infrastructure network used due to construction, disasters, large-scale events, etc.**
Since this product uses wireless communication, it cannot be used in tunnels, or underground, or within buildings where radio waves cannot reach, or outdoors where the signal is weak or outside the communication service area. Even within the communication service area, this product may not be able to be used in places where radio waves are difficult to transmit, such as indoors, underground, in tunnels, where blocked by buildings, in mountainous areas, on the open ocean, or on high floors within buildings such as high-rise apartment buildings or condominiums.
This company shall not be liable for any damages caused by the product losing opportunities to communicate due to external factors such as power outages and communication equipment.

DSE401B71

■ **About handling of magnets for installing on the outdoor unit**

Neodymium magnets are used to install this product on the outdoor unit.

Neodymium magnets have a strong magnetic force, so be sure to read this manual carefully before use.

⚠ WARNING
Bringing this product close to people with medical devices such as cardiac pacemakers and to other medical devices is very dangerous. It may interfere with the normal operation of the medical device.
Accidental ingestion of magnets can lead to life-threatening accidents. If you ingest a magnet, there is a risk of choking, and if it stays in your body, you may need abdominal surgery. If ingested, consult a doctor immediately. To prevent accidental ingestion, keep magnets out of the reach of children.
When magnets are attracted to each other or to the outdoor unit, fingers or skin may become pinched and injury may result.

⚠ CAUTION
If the magnets are vigorously attracted to each other or to an outdoor unit by the attractive force of the magnets themselves, the surface coating of the magnet body may be chipped or peel off, or the magnet body itself may chip, which may lead to rust on the magnets.
If you have an allergic reaction to metals, your skin may become irritated or red when you touch the magnets. Do not touch the magnets if you experience any of these symptoms. Never lick the magnets or drink water that touches the magnets, as the components of the magnets may dissolve in water and cause symptoms such as abdominal pain.
Keep magnetic cards such as cash cards and credit cards away from the magnets. The records on the cards may be destroyed or magnetized, and the cards may become unusable.
Bringing magnets close to various electronic devices, video devices, and communication devices (speakers, CD/DVD players, cathode ray tubes, mobile phones, watches, etc.) may interfere with normal operation or lead to malfunction.
If magnets of this product is placed near electronic control equipment, it may result in malfunction or accident. Do not place magnets of this product near electronic control equipment. Do not bring the magnets close to such devices or bring them into an aircraft.
If this product is left exposed, it is dangerous to attract surrounding magnets and metals vigorously. When storing this product, put it in the packing box.

DSE401B71

■ **About export of this product**

⚠ CAUTION
This product (including software) is for the US/Canada region only and cannot be used overseas. **This company shall not be liable if this product is used in other regions. In addition, please note that this company does not provide any overseas maintenance support or technical support for this product.**

This device, which was assembled by Daikin Comfort Technologies Manufacturing Inc., contains a component that is classified as an intentional radiator.
This intentional radiator has been certified by the FCC: FCC ID (XPY2AGQN4NNN).
And this international radiator has an Industry Canada ID (8595A-2AGQN4NNN).

The manufacturer of the intentional radiator (model no. SARA-R410M-02B) is u-blox AG (www.u-blox.com).

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC's Rules. Operation of this device is subject to two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference; and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesirable operation.

And this device meets the applicable industry Canada technical specifications.

The FCC responsible party is Daikin Comfort Technologies Manufacturing, Inc., and may be contacted by calling (713)-861-2500, or at 19001 Kermier Rd., Waller, TX 77484. (www.daikinac.com)

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits. To ensure compliance, human proximity to the antenna shall not be less the 7-7/8 inch (20 cm) during normal operations.

DSE401B71

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there in no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

DSE401B71

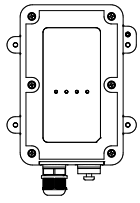
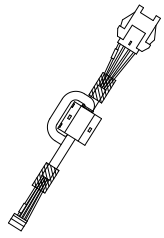
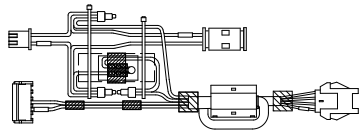
Contents

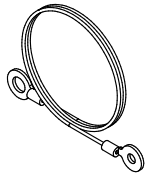
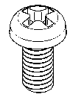
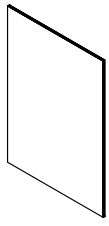
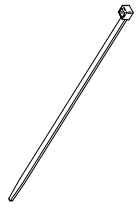
DSE401B71

1 Before Installation

Accessories

Check that the following accessories are included.

Name	HERO Simple Edge	Conversion harness (VRV Emerion Series onward)	Conversion harness (VRV-IV Series)
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape			

Name	Fall prevention wire	Fall prevention wire fixing screw	Installation manual (this document)	Cable ties
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 copy	5 pcs.*
Shape				

* All accessories may not be used depending on the outdoor unit to be installed.

WARNING

HERO Simple Edge SIM card must be activated before applying power to the device.
Failure to do this will cause up to a 5-hour delay in connecting to the Daikin HERO Cloud Service.

CAUTION

- Accessories are required for installation work. Please keep them safe, and do not lose them.
- Also, please ask the customer to keep the manual after the installation work is completed.

DSE401B71

Field Supplied Parts (NOT Included)

The following parts are required when wiring to the outdoor unit.
Please prepare by acquiring them locally.

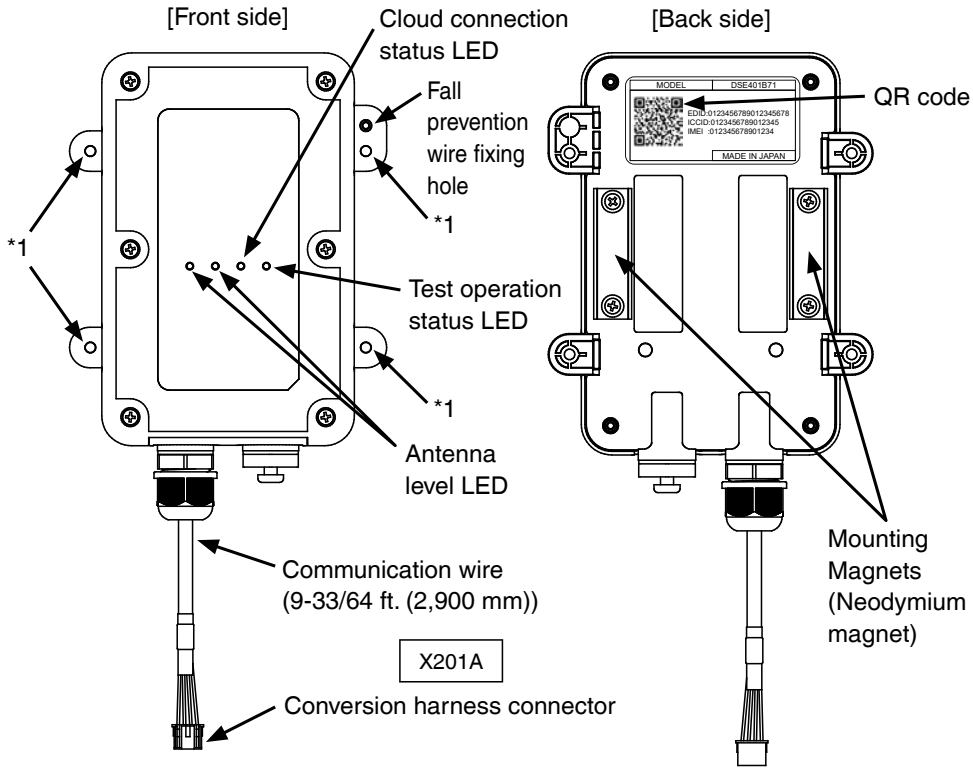
Name	Wire securing brackets
Quantity	2 pcs.
Shape	

* For wire securing brackets, use something with the following properties.
  - Something made for outdoor use which is weather resistant
  - Something with no burrs or edges
  - Something fixed with double-sided tape

DSE401B71

2 Names of parts

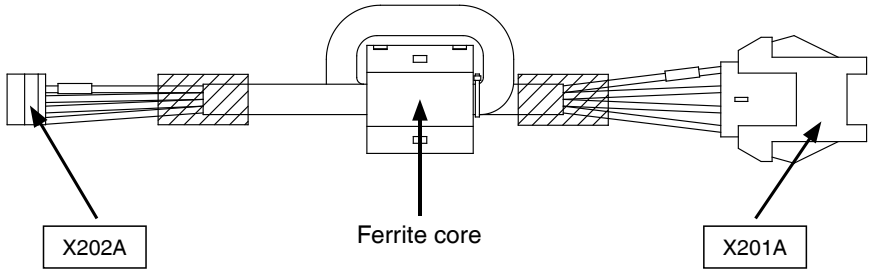
HERO Simple Edge



***1 Not used when installing on an outdoor unit. When installing on the main unit, do not make holes in the outdoor unit.**

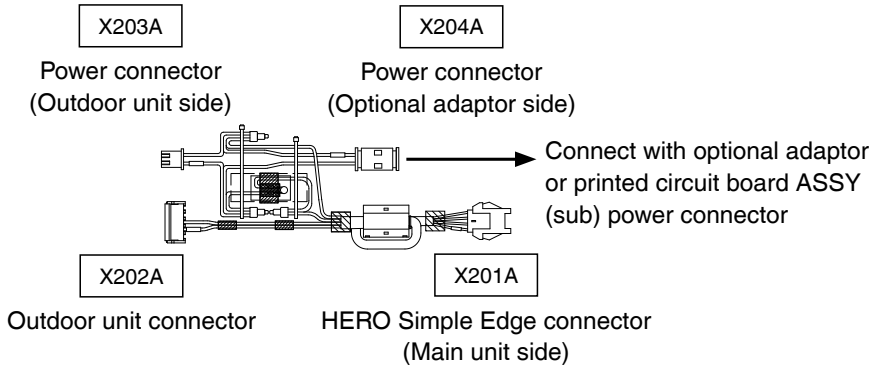
Conversion harness

[VRV Emerion Series onward]



DSE401B71

[VRV-IV Series]



[About HERO Simple Edge LED display]

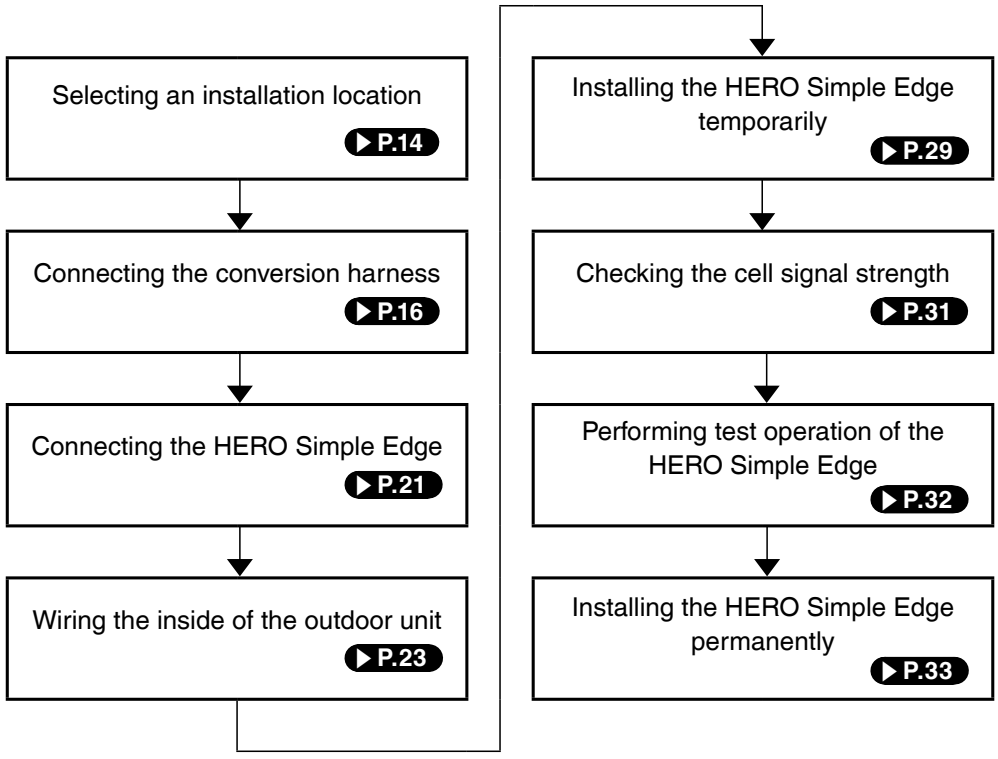
LED display

LED name	LED color	Name	Explanation
ANT1	Orange	Antenna level	Cell signal reception display
ANT2	Orange		
CLD	Green	Cloud connection	Cloud connection status display
RUN	Green	Test operation	Test operation status display

DSE401B71

3 Installation process

Install the HERO Simple Edge in accordance with the following flowchart.



DSE401B71

4 Selecting an installation location

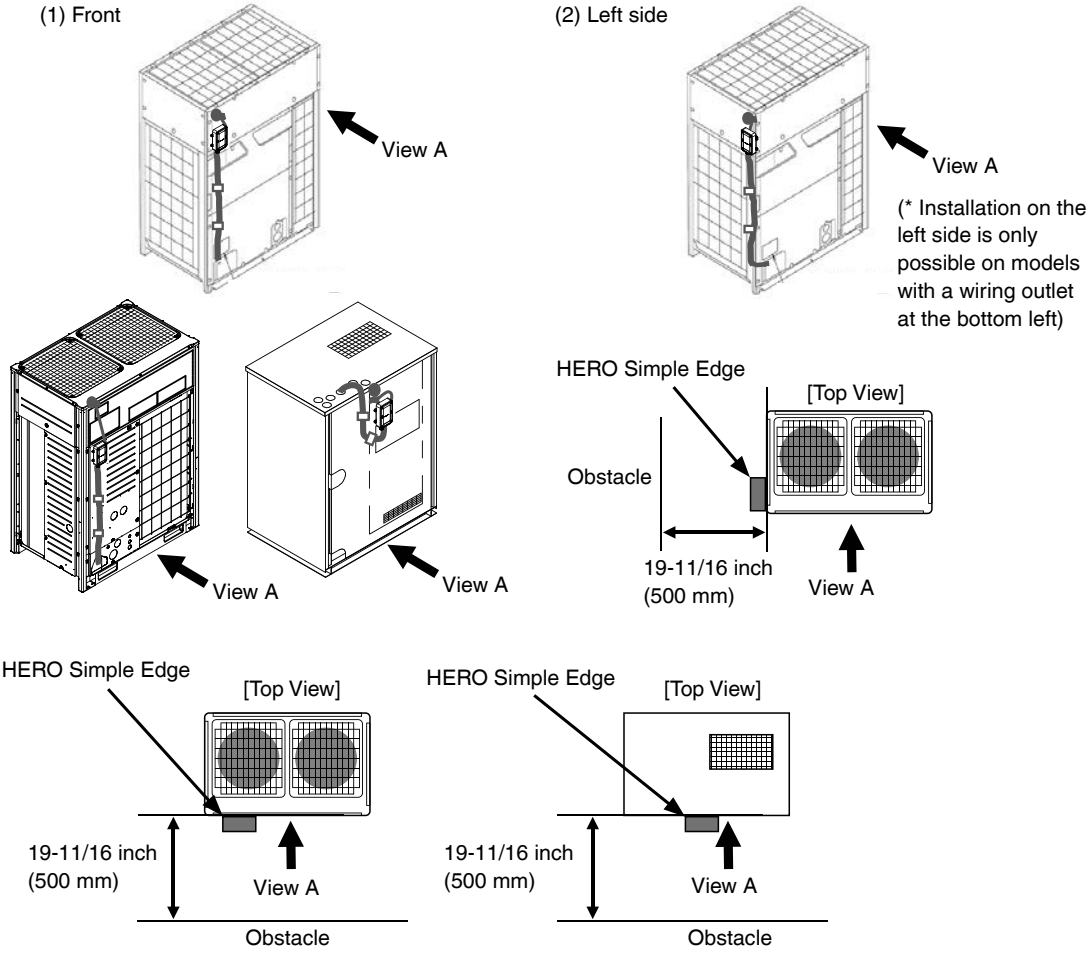
⚠ CAUTION

This product performs wireless communication. Do not install in an environment surrounded by metal, as metal interferes with radio waves.

Select an installation location satisfying the following requirements with approval of the customer.

(1) Install on the outer panel of the outdoor unit (installing on the front of the outdoor unit is recommended).
(2) As shown in the figure below, make sure that there is a space of 19-11/16 inch (500 mm) or more from the installation surface to the nearest obstacle.
(3) Install vertically to the ground (the radio wave environment changes depending on the installation angle).

Installation location example



DSE401B71

⚠ CAUTION

If this product is installed in an area high in salt, the magnet may rust.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install in locations such as the following.

(1) Do not install on the top surface of the outdoor unit
- May cause a loss of waterproofness.
- It may not be able to communicate with cloud services.

(2) Do not install near the air outlet
- The heat in the outlet air* may cause deformation or malfunction.

* Make sure that heat in the outlet air does not affect the unit by installing an airflow direction adjustment plate or windbreak plate.

(3) Do not install inside the outdoor unit
- This product performs wireless communication. If it is installed in an environment surrounded by metal, the metal will block the radio waves and communication with cloud services will not be possible.

(4) Do not attach the outdoor unit mounting magnets in a place where the surface is uneven
- The unit can become easily detached from the outdoor unit.

(5) Do not install in places exposed to chemicals
- May cause damage and a loss of waterproofness.

DSE401B71

5 Installing the HERO Simple Edge

Prohibited	• When installing the HERO Simple Edge, turn off the power supply of the outdoor unit before starting work.

CAUTION

- When installing on an existing outdoor unit, since shutting off the power supply will prevent monitoring and control from the centralized controller and other company's equipment, be sure to obtain the customer's approval before proceeding with the installation work.

5.1 Connecting the conversion harness

- Connect the conversion harness to the outdoor unit.

CAUTION

- Remove the outer panel of the outdoor unit according to the removal procedure outlined in the installation manual and service guide for each model.
- Do not remove the ferrite core.
  (Comply with the emission limits.)

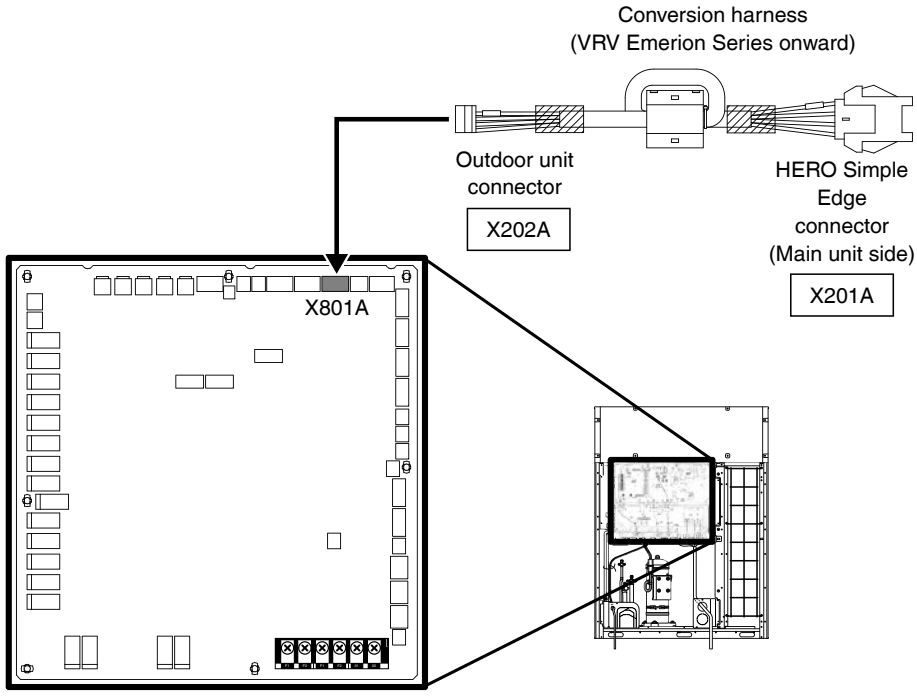
VRV Emerion Series onward

Connect the conversion harness (VRV Emerion Series onward).

(1) Connect the outdoor unit connector (X202A) of the conversion harness to the communication connector (X801A) of the outdoor unit printed circuit board.

DSE401B71

■ **Connection example: VRV Emerion [REYQ-A]**



VRV-IV Series

Connect the conversion harness (VRV-IV Series).

(1) Connect the outdoor unit connector (X202A).
Connect the outdoor unit connector (X202A) of the conversion harness to the communication connector **(X27A, X32A, or X41A)** of the outdoor unit printed circuit board.

(2) Connect the power connector (X203A).
Connect the power connector (X203A) of the conversion harness to the power connector **(X24A or X37A)** of the outdoor unit printed circuit board.

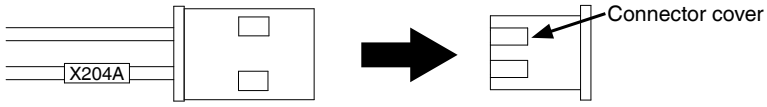
***Only when installing on VRV-T [RWEQ-T]**
First, unplug the printed circuit board ASSY (sub) power connector.

***Only when an optional adaptor is installed to the outdoor unit**
Power for the main unit and various optional adaptors is supplied from the same connector on the outdoor unit printed circuit board.
Therefore, when installing an optional adaptor alongside the main unit, disconnect the power connector of the optional adaptor from the outdoor unit printed circuit board.

DSE401B71

(3) Protect the power connector (X204A).
The power connector (X204A) is not used when an optional adaptor is not also installed. To prevent the connector from coming into contact with the board, take measures such as protecting it with vinyl tape.
***When installed in combination with an optional adaptor**

a. Remove the connector cover of the conversion harness. Dispose of the connector cover.



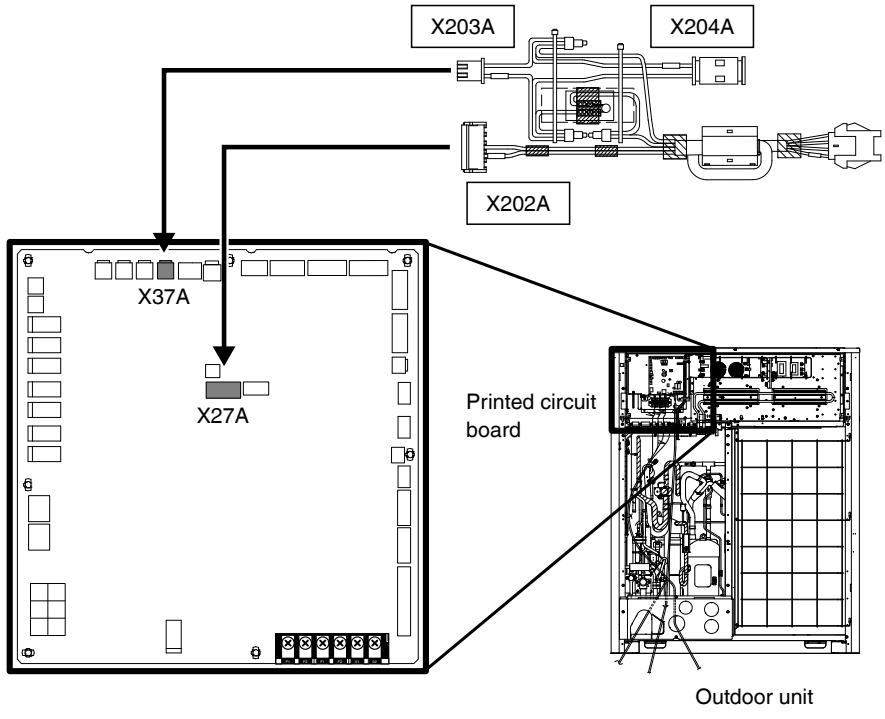
b. Connect the power connector of the optional adaptor removed from the outdoor unit printed circuit board to the power connector (X204A) of the conversion harness.
(Only when installing on VRV-T [RWEQ-T])
Connect the power connector (X204A) with the printed circuit board ASSY (sub) power connector.

c. After turning on the outdoor unit, be sure to check the continuity and operation of the optional adaptor.

⚠ CAUTION

Do **NOT** install the VRV-T (RWEQ-T) in combination with an optional adaptor, for example, External control adaptor for outdoor unit.

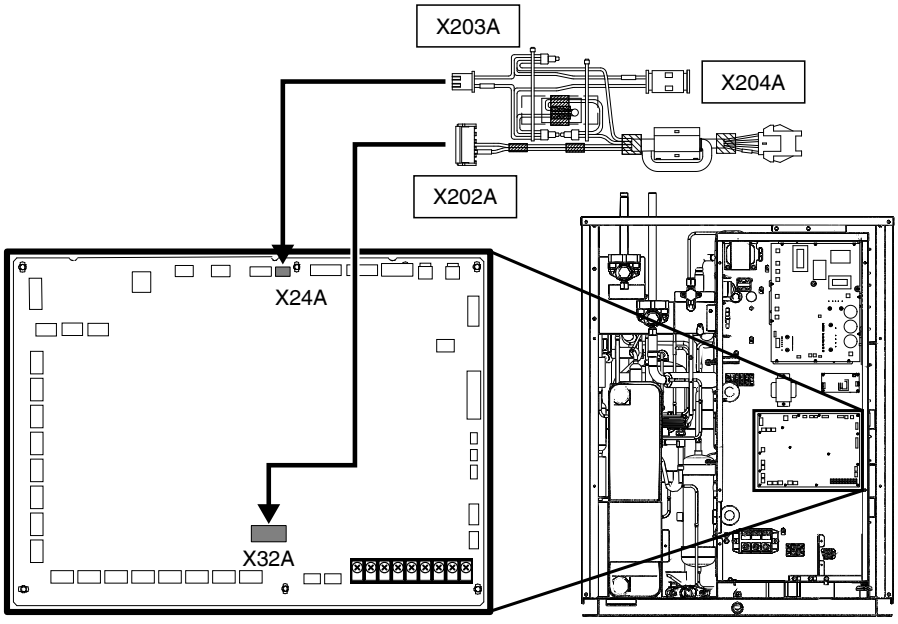
■ **Connection example: VRV-IV X [REYQ-X]**



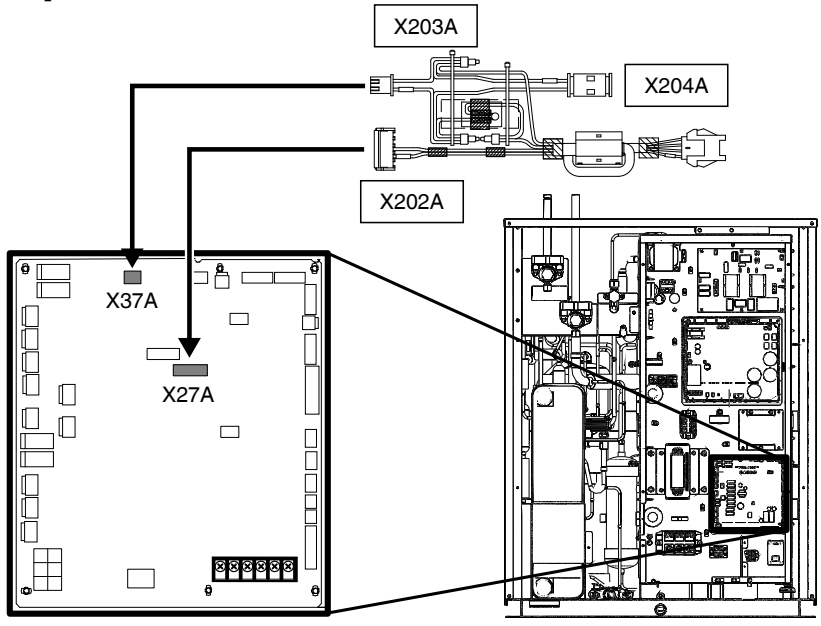
DSE401B71

■ Connection example: VRV-WIV [RWEYQ-P]

[208/230 V]



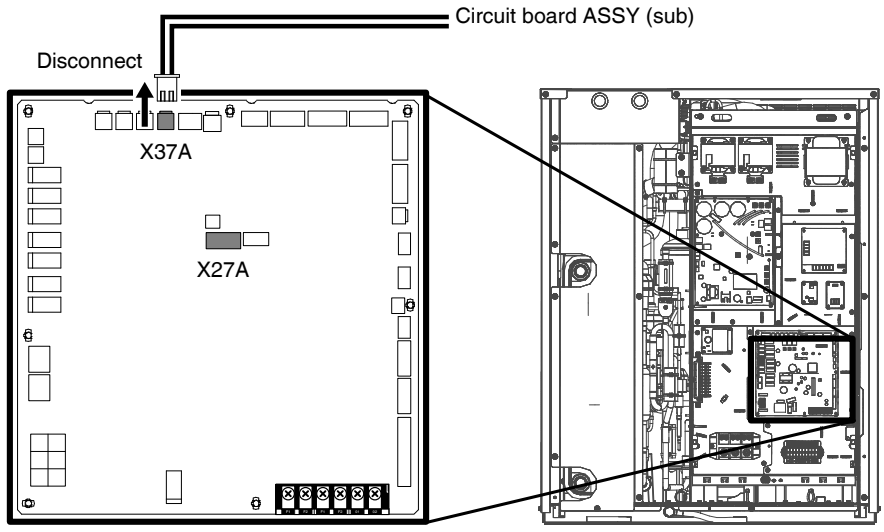
[460 V]



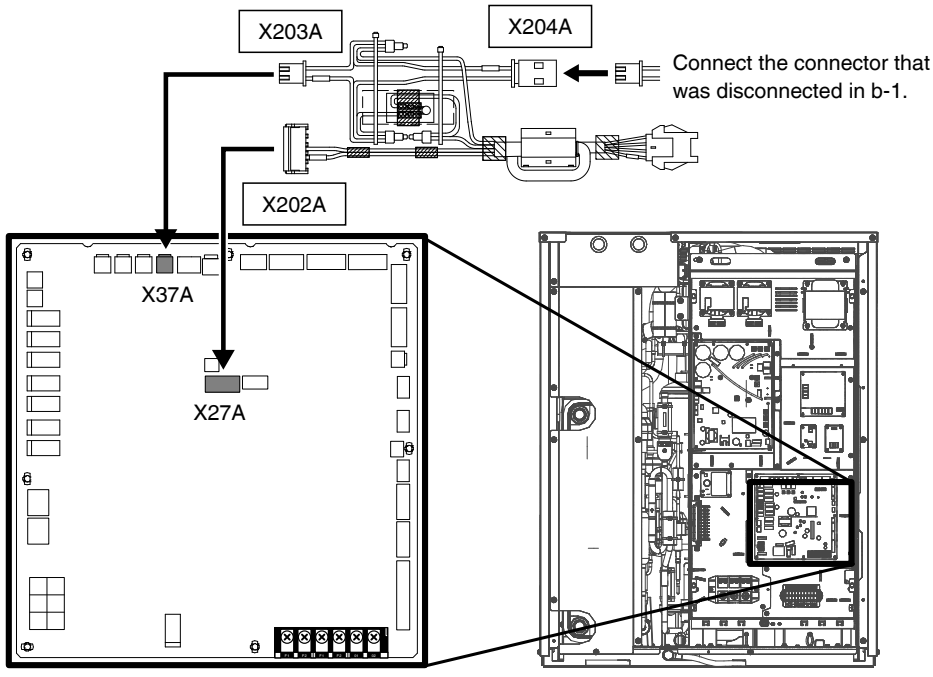
DSE401B71

■ Connection example: VRV-T [RWEQ-T]

b-1.



b-2.



⚠ CAUTION

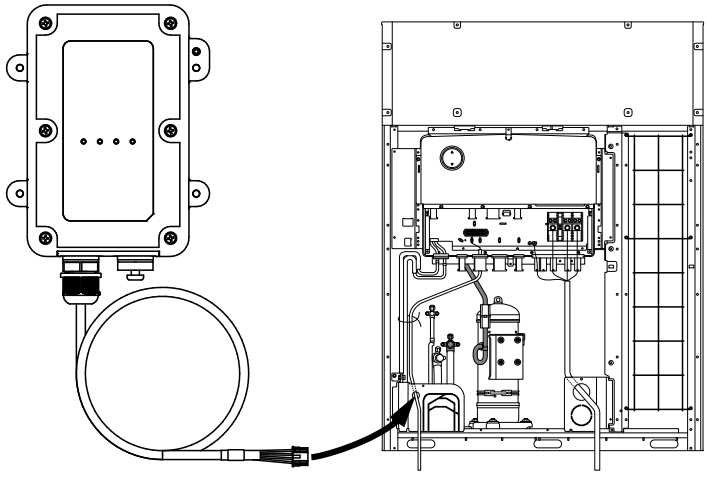
Do **NOT** install the VRV-T (RWEQ-T) in combination with an optional adaptor, for example, External control adaptor for outdoor unit.

DSE401B71

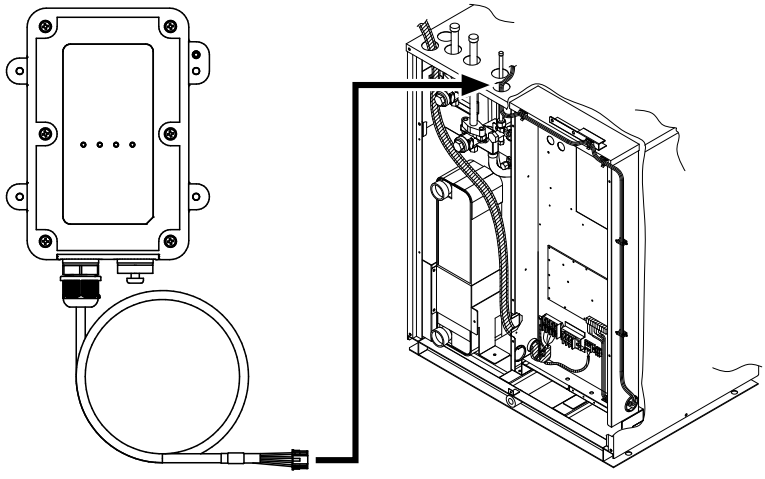
5.2 Connecting the HERO Simple Edge

- Connect the HERO Simple Edge to the conversion harness.

(1) Pass the communication wire of the HERO Simple Edge through the wiring outlet of the outdoor unit.



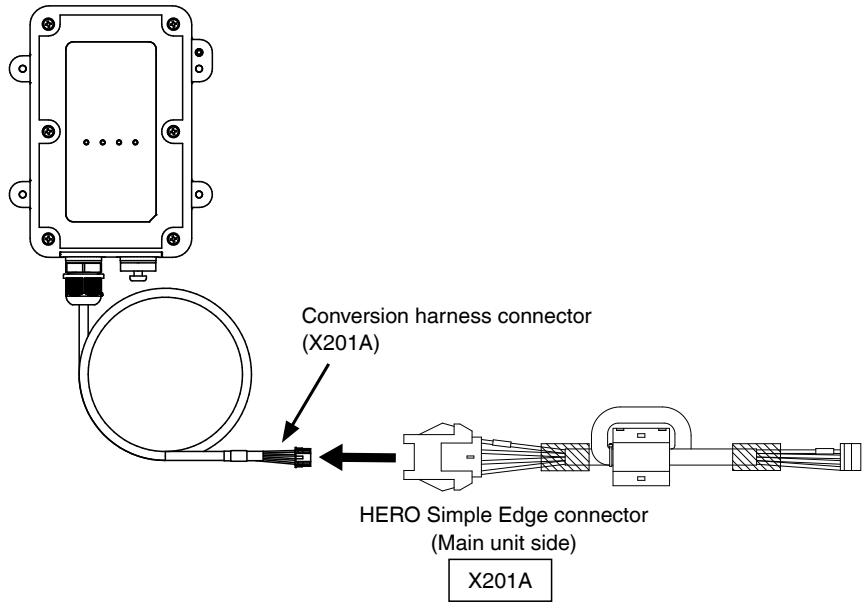
- Where necessary, cut to make a slit hole, using nippers or similar.
- After making the slit hole, remove burrs and apply a repair coating to the edges and surrounding edge surfaces to prevent corrosion.
- When passing the communication harness through the slit hole, protect it using a conduit, bushing, etc., to prevent damage from the edges.
- After passing the wires through, be sure to close any gaps with putty or other sealant (field supplied).
- For details on making the slit hole, refer to the installation manual for the outdoor unit.
- When installing on VRV-WIV [RWEYQ-P] or VRV-T [RWEQ-T], pass the wiring through from above.



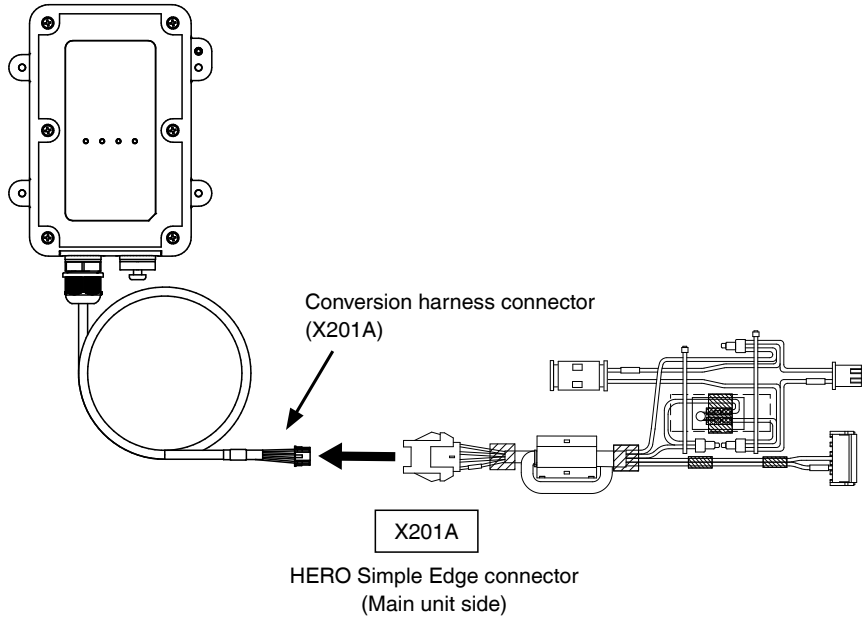
DSE401B71

(2) Connect the conversion harness connector (X201A) to the HERO Simple Edge connector (Main unit side) (X201A).

VRV Emerion Series onward



VRV-IV Series



DSE401B71

5.3 Wiring the inside of the outdoor unit

• Refer to the figure below when wiring.

Maintain a gap of 1-31/32 inch (50 mm) or more between the communication wire and the power supply cable/earth wire.

WARNING

HERO Simple Edge SIM card must be activated before applying power to the device.
Failure to do this will cause up to a 5-hour delay in connecting to the Daikin HERO Cloud Service.

CAUTION

After the wiring work is completed, make sure that the connector of each electrical part in the control box is connected and that all screws on the terminal block are tight.

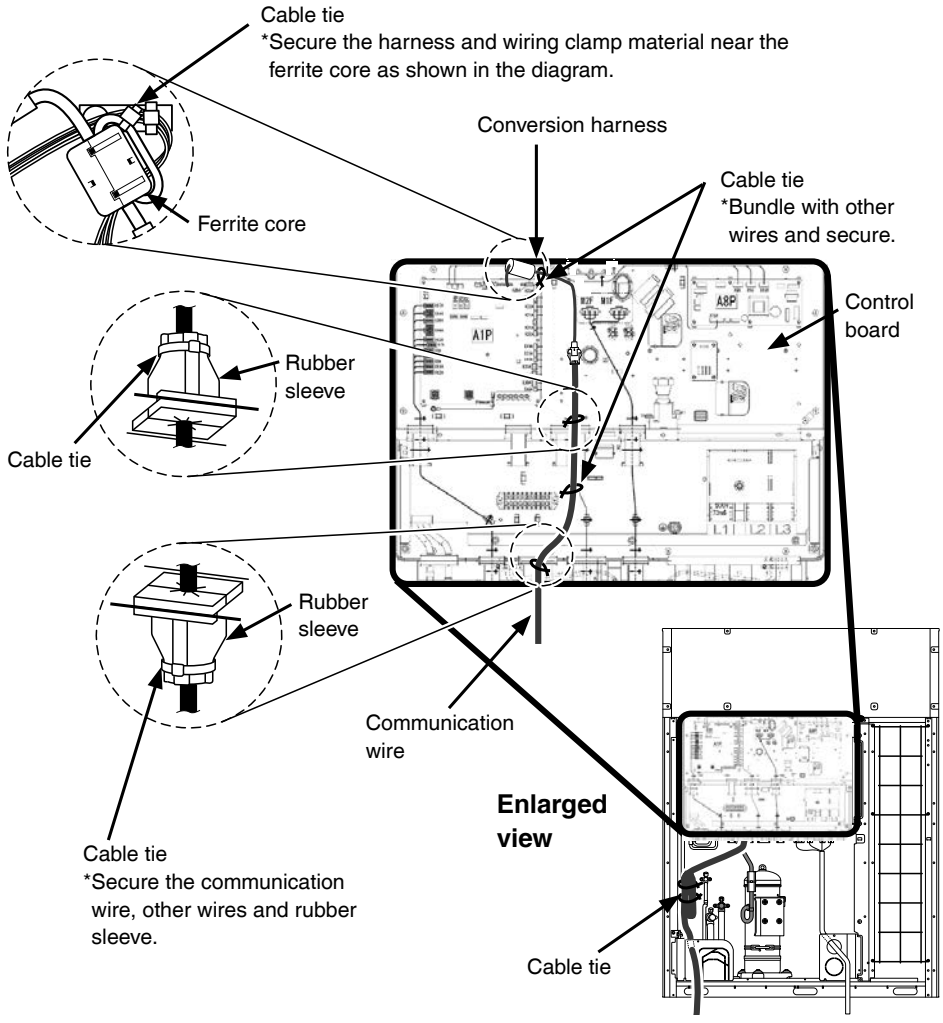
(1) Install the conversion harness in the control box and secure it with cable ties.
- Be sure to install in the control box.
- Wrap a cable tie around the ferrite core to fix it securely and prevent it from touching other connection terminals or metal parts.
- So that tension is not applied to the connector, use a cable tie to fix the ferrite core securely to the wiring clamp material closest to the connector.
- The harness of HERO Simple Edge should not cut across the control board.

(2) Secure the communication wire to the wiring clamp material that secures the lead wire of the outdoor unit.
(3) Using a cable tie, secure the communication wire in at least 1 place to the wiring clamp material and the outdoor unit.
(4) Install the control box and outer panel of the outdoor unit in their original positions.

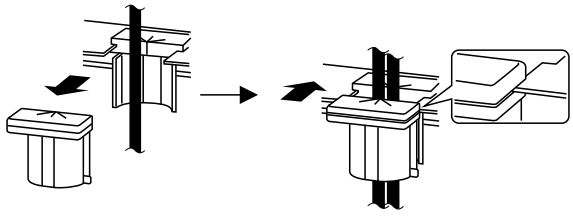
DSE401B71

[Internal wiring example for VRV Emerion Series]

■ Wiring example: VRV Emerion [REYQ-A]



How to pass wire through the rubber sleeve:



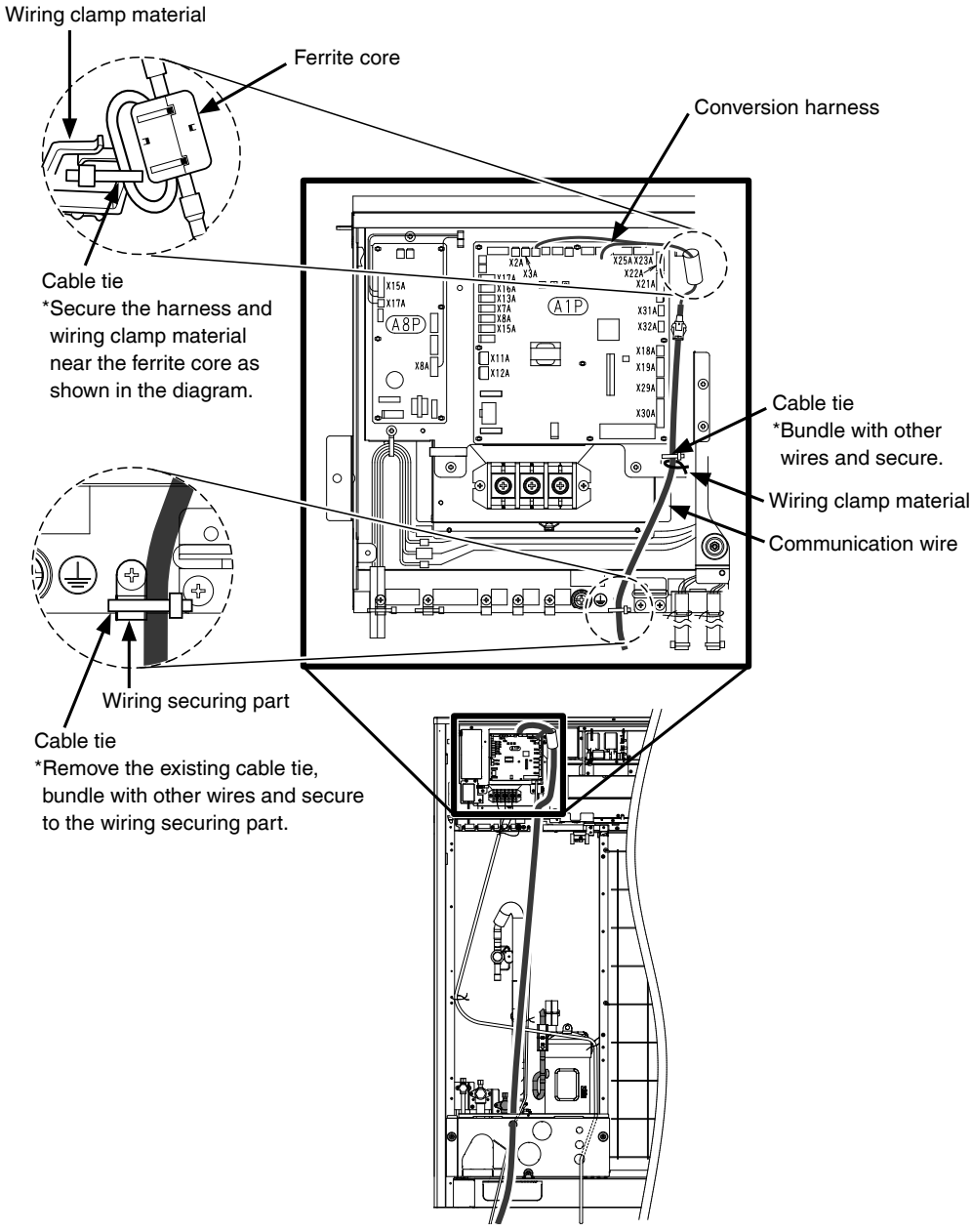
Remove the rubber sleeve (detachable portion) and bundle with other wires and secure.

- Route wiring so that it does not come into contact with the high temperature pipes.
- Install the control box and outer panel of the outdoor unit in their original positions.

DSE401B71

[Internal wiring example for VRV-IV Series]

■ Wiring example: VRV-IV [REYQ-X]

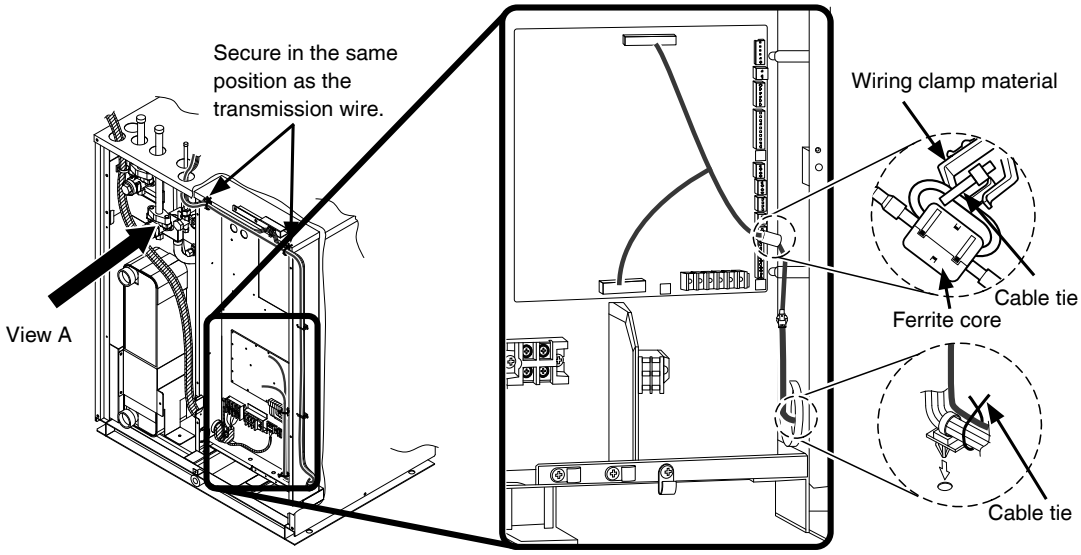


- Route wiring so that it does not come into contact with the high temperature pipes.

DSE401B71

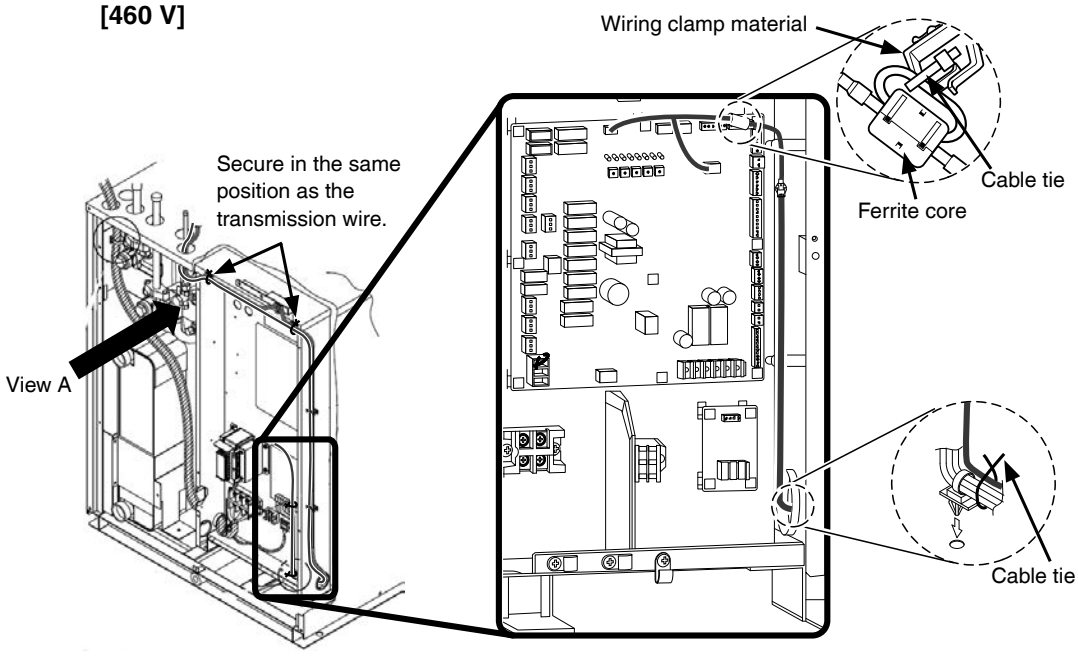
■ Wiring example: VRV-WIV [RWEYQ-P]

[208/230 V]

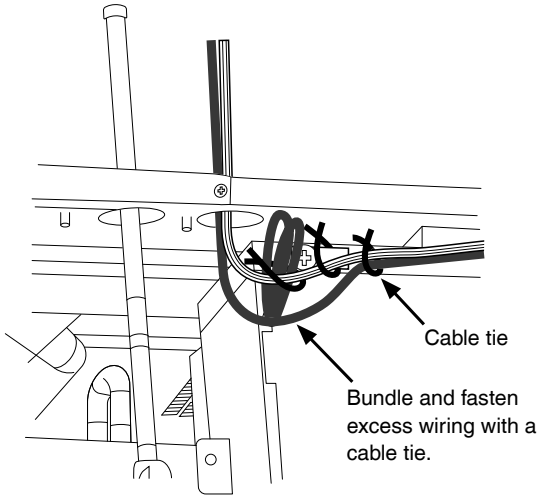


DSE401B71

[460 V]



View A

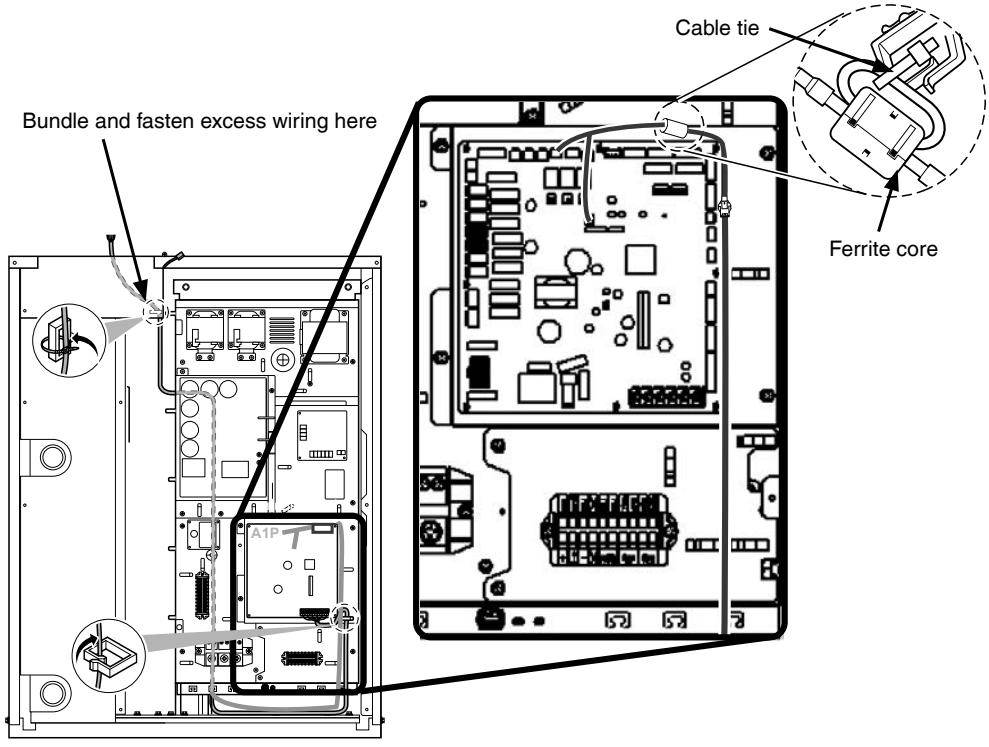


- Route wiring so that it does not come into contact with the high temperature pipes.

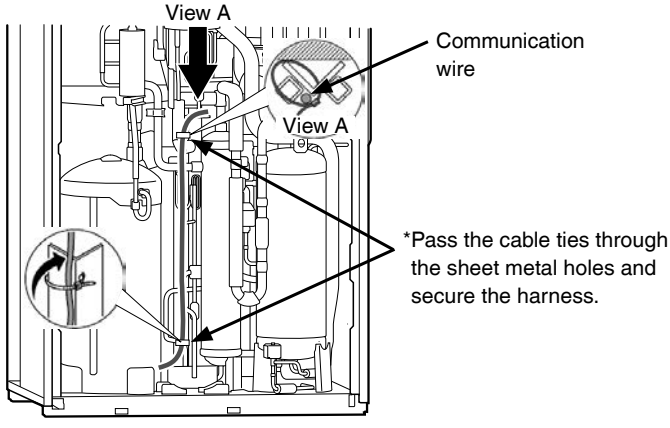
DSE401B71

■ Wiring example: VRV-T [RWEQ-T]

[Front side]



[Back side]



- Route wiring so that it does not come into contact with the high temperature pipes.

DSE401B71

5.4 Installing the HERO Simple Edge temporarily

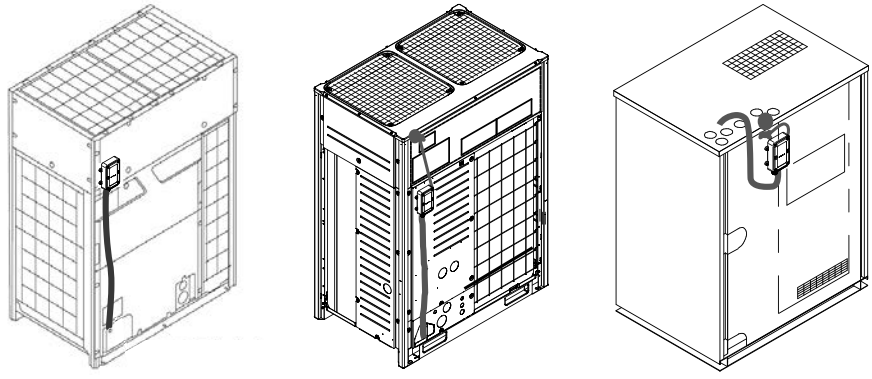
⚠ WARNING

HERO Simple Edge SIM card must be activated before applying power to the device.
Failure to do this will cause up to a 5-hour delay in connecting to the Daikin HERO Cloud Service.

- Install the unit on the outdoor unit temporarily at the planned installation location.

(1) Remove the protective tape from the magnets for installing on the outdoor unit.
(2) Temporarily install the unit on the outdoor unit according to the following installation location example.
  - Before securing wiring on the outside of the outdoor unit, check the cell signal reception of the HERO Simple Edge and perform test operation.
  - Install the HERO Simple Edge vertically to the ground. If it is not installed vertically to the ground, for example, if it is installed sideways, cellular reception may become bad.
(3) After temporary installation, turn on the power supply to the outdoor unit and perform test operation of the HERO Simple Edge.

[Installation location example]



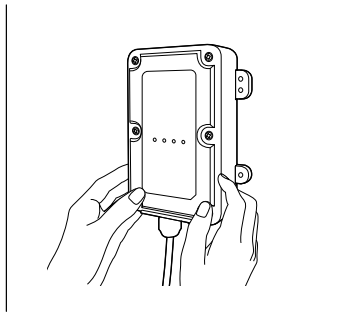
* To remove the unit from the outdoor unit, follow the procedure below.

⚠ CAUTION

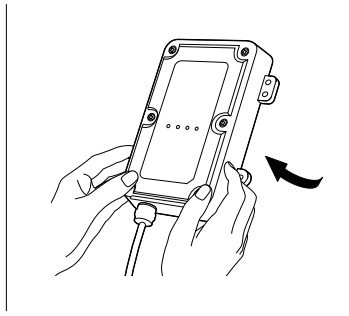
After installing this product on the outdoor unit, do not slide it side-to-side to move it. The outdoor unit or the magnets for installing on the outdoor unit may be scratched and rust.

DSE401B71

(1) Hold the bottom surface of the unit with both hands.



(2) Slowly lift the unit and remove it from the outdoor unit.



6 Performing test operation of the HERO Simple Edge

⚠ WARNING

HERO Simple Edge SIM card must be activated before applying power to the device.
Failure to do this will cause up to a 5-hour delay in connecting to the Daikin HERO Cloud Service.

- Associate the HERO Simple Edge with the customer's property (via test operation).

DSE401B71

6.1 Checking the cell signal strength

- The HERO Simple Edge is equipped with a cellular communication function. Install it in an environment with a good cell signal strength to communicate with the cloud.

⚠ CAUTION

- With the HERO Simple Edge installed in the installation location, check cell signal strength.
  The cell signal changes due to the influence of metal objects such as the outer panel of the outdoor unit and obstructions.
- If a device that relays radio waves from a mobile phone line is installed nearby, cellular reception signal may be reduced.

(1) Turn on the power supply to the outdoor unit.
Make sure the HERO Simple Edge starts up properly (all 4 LEDs light up for 5 seconds).

NOTE

- If the 4 LEDs of the HERO Simple Edge do not light up, refer to "Troubleshooting".

(2) Wait for **about 3 minutes** until ANT1 and ANT2 light up.
(3) Make sure that the antenna level LED of the HERO Simple Edge is displaying **"2 (Good)" or better**.

LED display ●: Unlit ○: Lit ◑: Blinking ●: Unlit or Lit/Blinking

Antenna level	Cell signal strength	Cell signal reception				Usability in installation location
		ANT1	ANT2	CLD	RUN	
3	Very good	○	○	●	●	OK
2	Good	○	●	●	●	OK
1	Weak	●	○	●	●	(NOTE 1)
0	Out of service area	●	●	●	●	No (NOTE 2)

(NOTE 1)
If the antenna level is 1 (Weak), changing the installation location is recommended.
(NOTE 2)
If the antenna level is 0 (Out of service area), change the installation location.

* Antenna level is updated at 5 second intervals.

DSE401B71

6.2 Performing test operation of the HERO Simple Edge

- Register the HERO Simple Edge in the cloud.

⚠ CAUTION

- Prepare a device such as a PC, smart phone or tablet with INTERNET connection to register the HERO Simple Edge.

Register the HERO Simple Edge from the following URL. https://www.daikinhero.com	

- During test operation of the HERO Simple Edge, the cloud connection status LED (CLD) and the test operation status LED (RUN) will be as follows.

LED display ●: Unlit ○: Lit ◑: Blinking

Test operation status	ANT1	ANT2	CLD	RUN	How to respond
(1) Connecting to the cloud	○	○	◑	◑	
⬇					
(2) Cloud connection completed	○	○	○	◑	If CLD does not light up, refer to “Troubleshooting”.
⬇					
(3) Performing test operation	○	○	○	◑	
⬇					
(4) Restarting the HERO Simple Edge	○	○	○	○	All LEDs will light up for 5 seconds.
⬇					
(5) Test operation completed	○	○	○	○	If RUN does not light up, refer to “Troubleshooting”.

* In the example, the antenna level is shown as 3 (Very good).

- When both CLD and RUN LEDs light up, test operation is completed.

DSE401B71

7 Installing the HERO Simple Edge permanently

■ **How to attach the wire securing brackets (NOT included)**

When attaching the wire securing brackets to the outdoor unit, follow the procedure below.

(1) Wipe the mounting surface of the outdoor unit with a clean cloth.
(2) Peel off the tape backing, being careful not to touch the adhesive surface of the wire securing bracket.
(3) Attach the wire securing bracket to the mounting surface of the outdoor unit, and press firmly with your thumb for at least 5 seconds.
(4) Make sure that the wire securing bracket is securely fixed, and then wire the communication wire.

■ **Wiring method to the outside of the outdoor unit**

(1) After performing test operation of the HERO Simple Edge, check again that the cell signal condition is good.
(2) Secure the communication wire coming from the wiring outlet of the outdoor unit in 2 places using wire securing brackets.
- Do not make holes in the outdoor unit to secure the wire with screws.
- Install the wire securing brackets so that the communication wire exposed on the outside the unit is divided into 3 equal parts.
- Any remaining length of communication wire should be **bundled and stored in the outdoor unit**.

(3) Attach the fall prevention wire to the unit.
- Use the fall prevention wire fixing screw.
  * Tightening torque: 5.31 lbf·in (0.6 N·m)

(4) Secure the fall prevention wire to the outer panel of the outdoor unit using one of the panel screws.
- Tighten together with the outer panel of the outdoor unit. (See the next page.)
- Attach it to a location above the unit.
  (If it is attached below the unit, the unit may be damaged due to dropping.)

* Be sure to attach the fall prevention wire to prevent the unit from being blown away by heavy winds.

DSE401B71

[External wiring example]

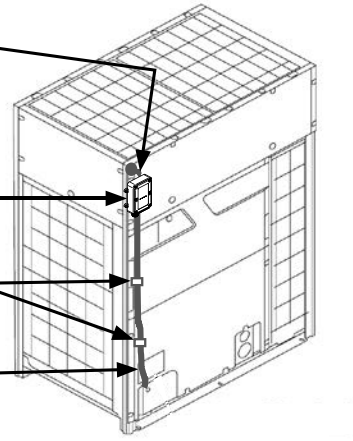
■ Wiring example: VRV Emerion [REYQ-A]

Fall prevention wire
* Attach to a location above the unit using the panel screw.

Main unit
* Do not make holes in the outdoor unit
* Be sure to not attach upside down.

Wire securing brackets

Communication wire
* Excess communication wire should be bundled and fit inside the outdoor unit.



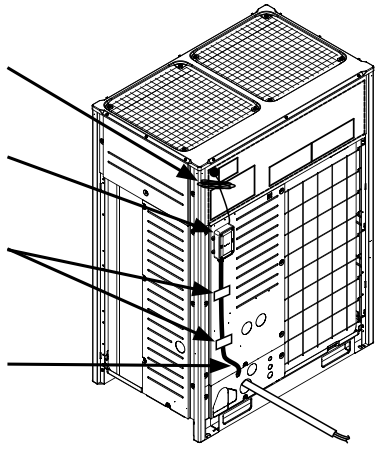
■ Wiring example: VRV-IV [REYQ-X]

Fall prevention wire
* Attach to a location above the unit using the panel screw.

Main unit
* Do not make holes in the outdoor unit.
* Be sure to not attach upside down.

Wire securing brackets
* Fasten the communication wire to the wire securing brackets using the cable ties.

Communication wire
*Excess communication wire should be bundled and fit inside the outdoor unit.

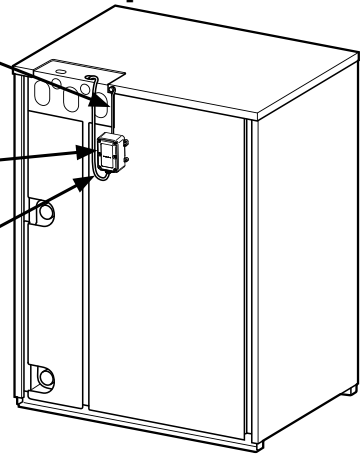


■ Wiring example: VRV-WIV/VRV-T [RWEYQ-P/RWEQ-T]

Fall prevention wire
* Attach to a location above the unit using the panel screw.

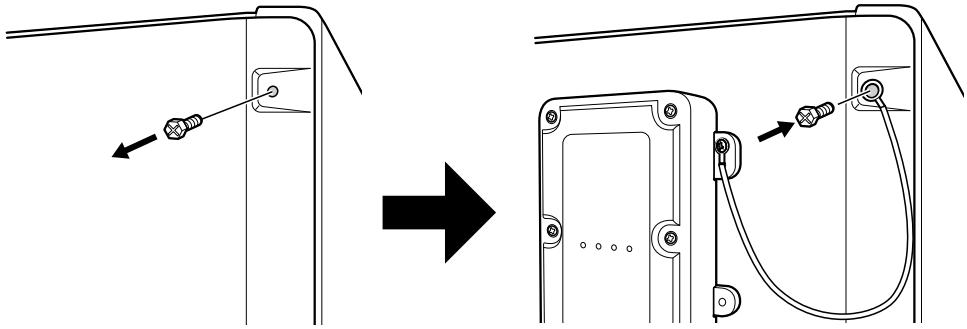
Main unit
* Do not make holes in the outdoor unit.
* Be sure to not attach upside down.

Communication wire



DSE401B71

* How to joint tighten the fall prevention wire
  Tighten and secure the outdoor unit outer panel together with the fall prevention wire using the outdoor unit panel screw.



8 Troubleshooting

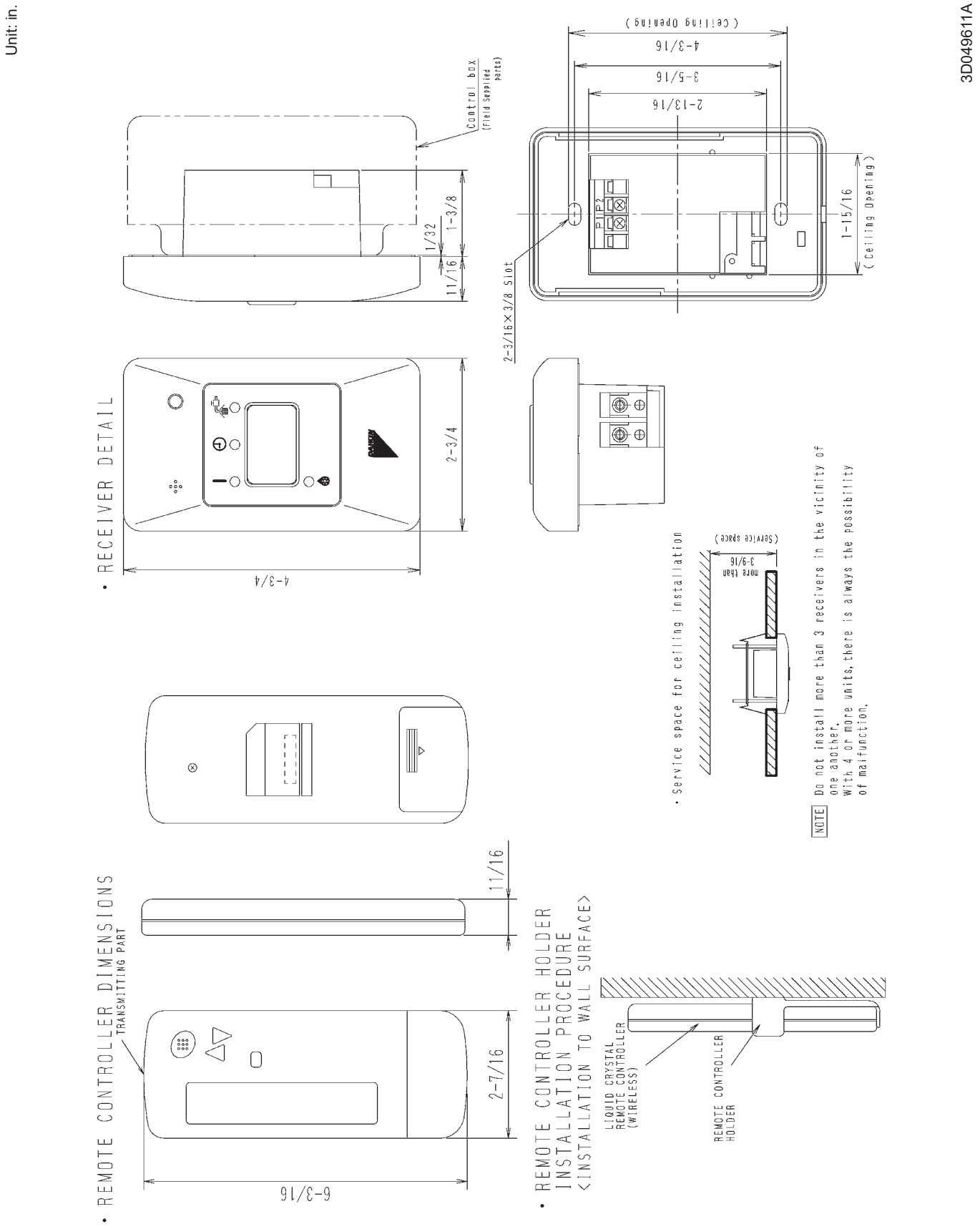
	Problem	How to respond
HERO Simple Edge test operation	When the power supply of the outdoor unit is turned on, the LED doesn't light up	● Is the conversion harness properly connected to the outdoor unit? (1) Make sure that the outdoor unit connector (X202A) of the conversion harness and the HERO Simple Edge connector (Main unit side) (X201A) are connected properly. (2) Make sure that the harness of HERO Simple Edge is not broken. (3) If the conversion harness is connected properly, there is a possibility that the HERO Simple Edge is defective. Replace the HERO Simple Edge.
	The antenna level LED does not light up/blink	● Make sure that the installation location is within a communication service area. • If you are outside the communication service area, installation is not possible. ● There is a possibility that the cell signal strength is weak, such as because the HERO Simple Edge is covered by an obstacle or metal. • Change the installation location and then check if the antenna level LED blinks/lights up. ● If you take the measures noted above but the situation still does not improve, please contact our sales representative.

DSE401B71

	Problem	How to respond
HERO Simple Edge test operation	The cloud connection status LED keeps blinking	● Check the cell signal strength. • If the antenna level is 1 or worse, communication cannot be performed normally. Change the installation location to a location where the antenna level is 2 or better and install. ● If you take the measures noted above but the situation still does not improve, please contact our sales representative.
	Won't connect to the cloud	● If HERO Simple Edge was powered up before the SIM card was registered wait up to 5 hours and try to connect again.
	The test operation status LED keeps blinking or is unlit	● Make sure that the device information is correctly registered in the cloud service. • Make sure that the registered device information and the installed device match. If they do not match, correct the registered device information and perform test operation again. ● Is the antenna level 1 or worse? • Change the installation location to a location where the antenna level is 2 or better, then perform test operation again. ● Is the HERO Simple Edge connected to the main outdoor unit? • If it is connected to a sub outdoor unit, test operation can not be completed. Reconnect to the main outdoor unit and perform test operation again. ● Is the conversion harness properly connected? • If communication with the outdoor unit is not correct, test operation can not be completed. Make sure that the conversion harness is connected properly, then perform test operation again.

2.9 BRC4C / 7E / 082A Wireless Remote Controller / Receiver

BRC4C82 / BRC082A43

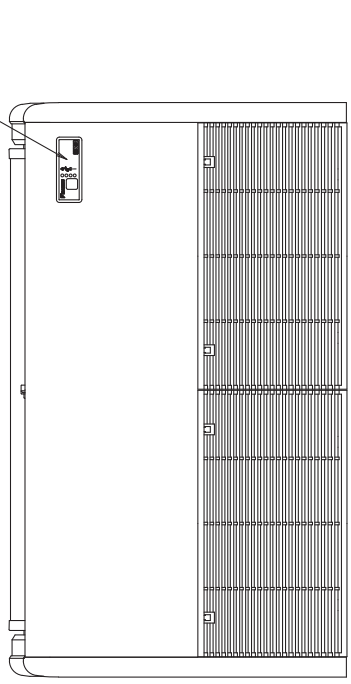


BRC7E83

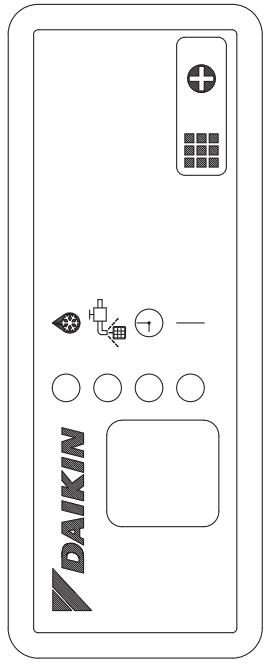
Unit : in.

3D049336

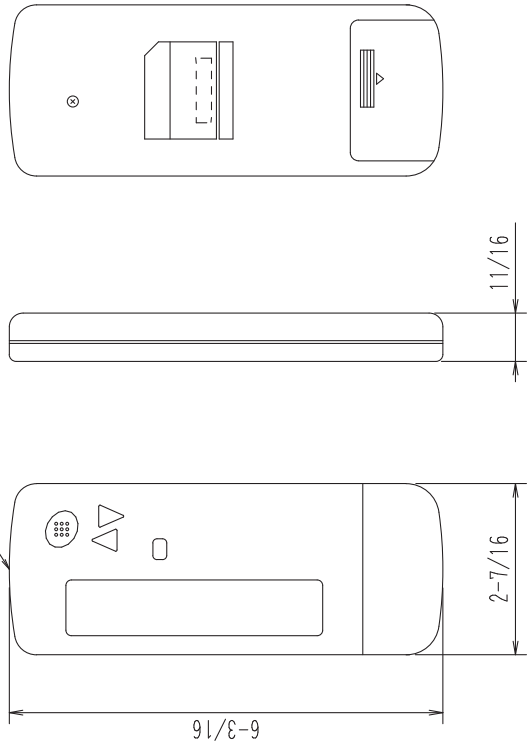
• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



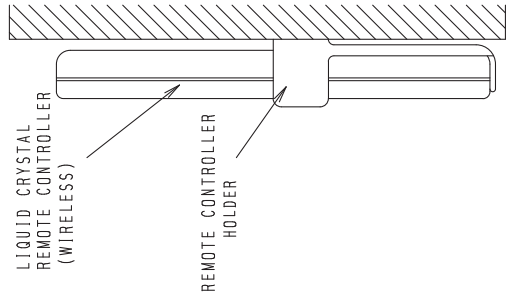
• RECEIVER DETAIL



• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS

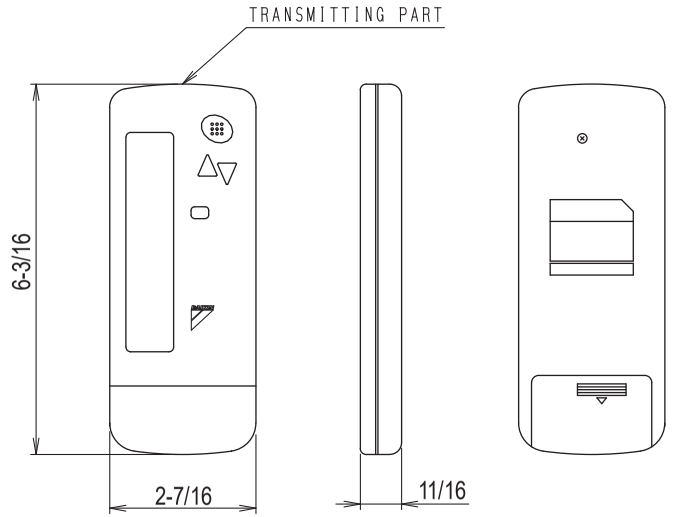


• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



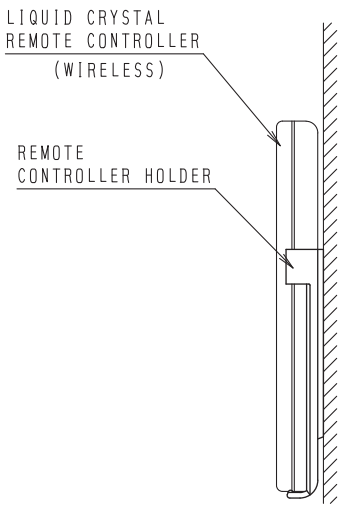
Unit : in.

• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS

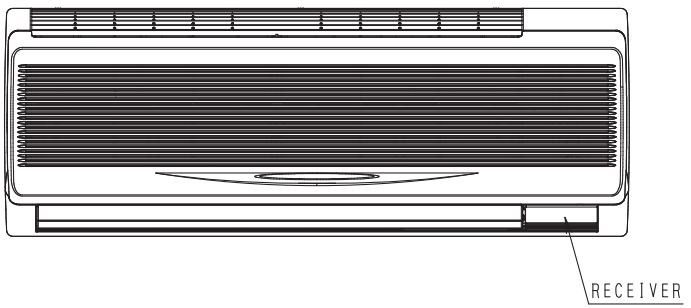


• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

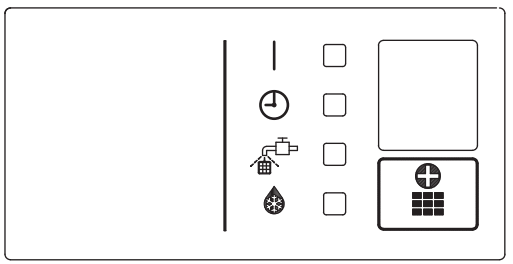
< INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE >



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• RECEIVER DETAIL



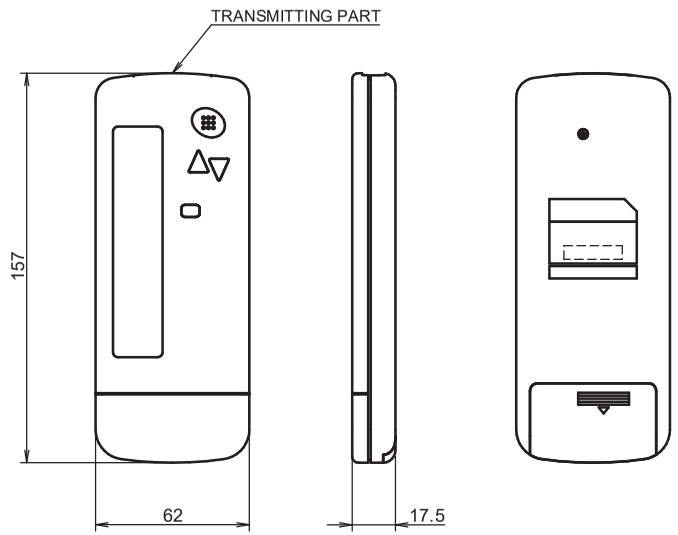
• WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT

WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	INDOOR UNIT
BRC7E818	FXAQ～MVJU

C: 3D034905B

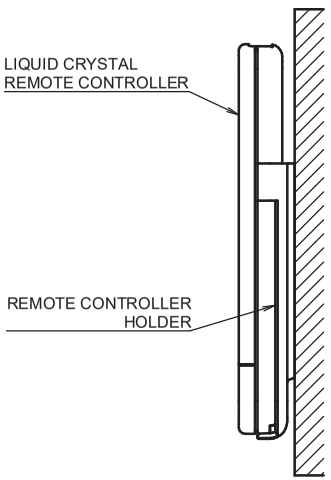
Unit : in.

• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS

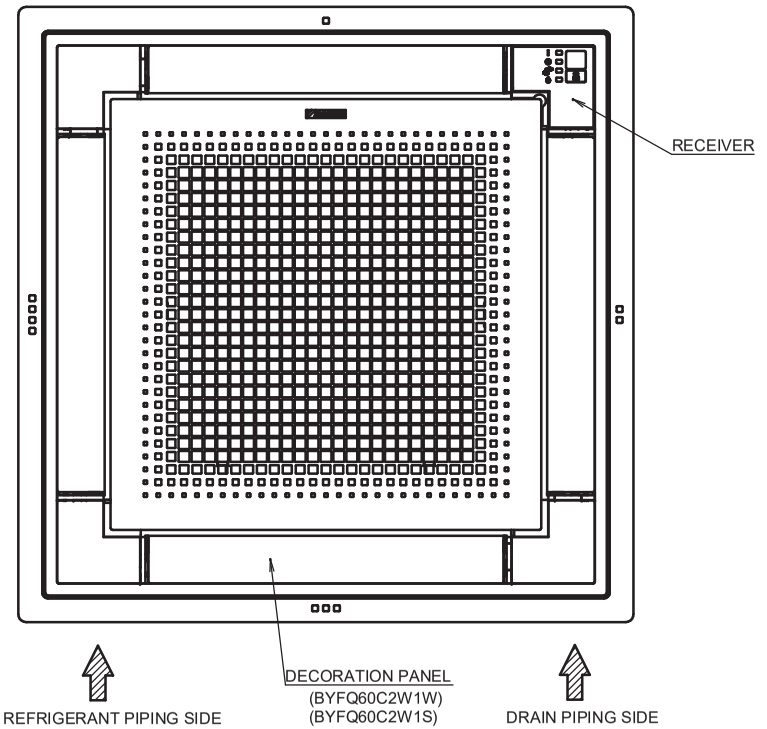


• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

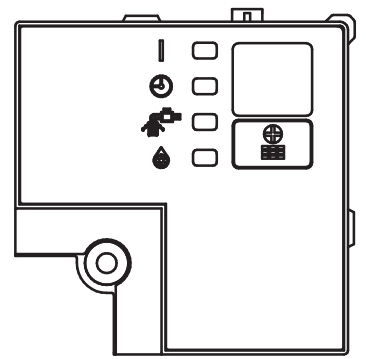
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



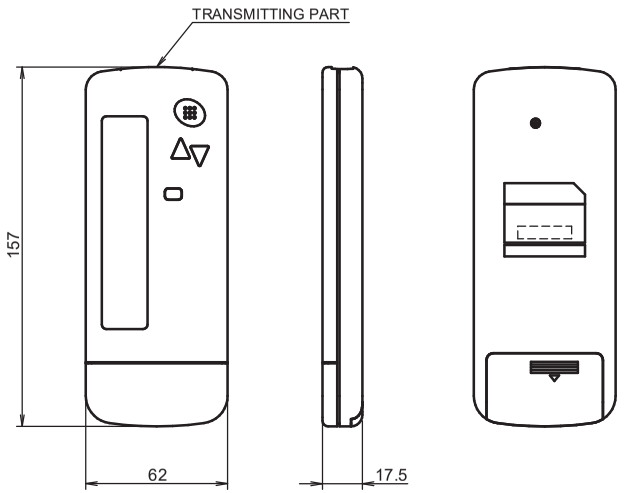
• RECEIVER DETAIL



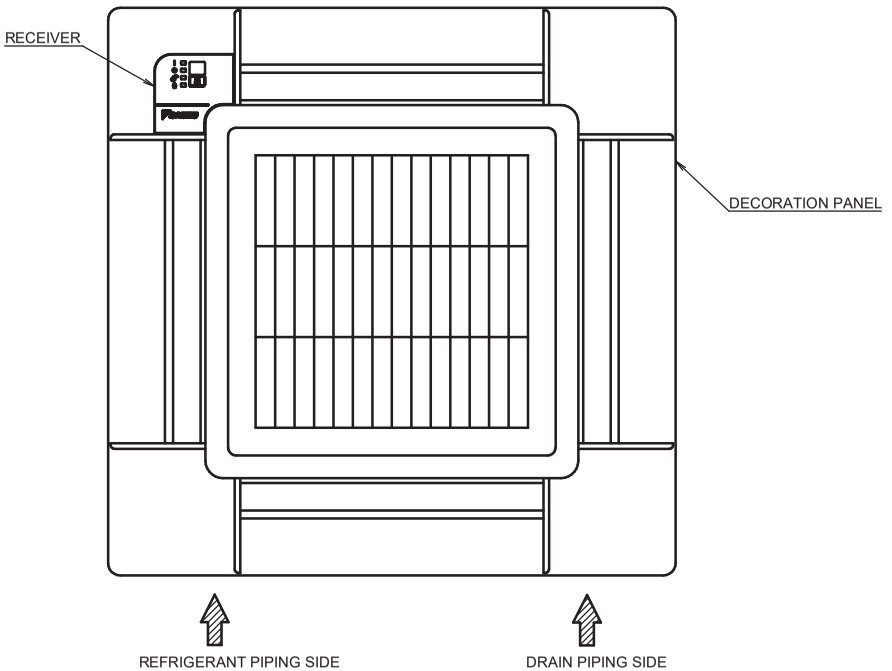
3D082024

Unit : in.

• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS

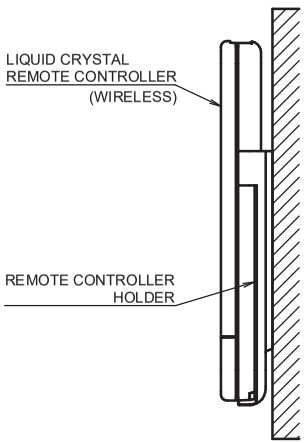


• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

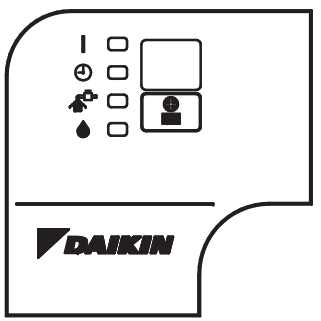


• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



• RECEIVER DETAIL



3D082556A

2.10 DCM601B71 intelligent Touch Manager

2.10.1 Features

The intelligent Touch Manager (iTM) is an advanced multi-zone controller that controls and monitors the Daikin ***VRV*** system. The iTM can also provide a cost-effective mini Building Management System (BMS) solution to integrate and control third-party devices through optional software and hardware. If a BMS already exists, the iTM can be used as a BACnet gateway interface for BMS integration with iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option.

- **Easy Operation and Configuration**
  - Intuitive user interface with 10.4" LCD touch screen
  - Flexible screen views includes the icon view, list view and layout view for system configurations
  - Easy engineering with use of the Preset Tool and USB port

- **Advanced Control Logic**
  - Independent Cool and Heat setpoints or Single setpoint in the occupied period
  - Independent Setback setpoints in the unoccupied period
  - Weekly Schedule with Optimum Start and Timed Override
  - Auto Changeover with configurable methods

- **Facility Management and Billing**
  - Remote Web access
  - Automatic Error and Alert emails
  - Tenant Billing with the iTM PPD option

- **Mini BMS Solution with Software and Hardware Options**
  - Interlock and Emergency Stop for facility management
  - DI, DO, AI, AO points integrated via the WAGO I/O System
  - BACnet points (AI, AO, AV. BI, BO. BV, MSI, MSO, MSV) integrated with the iTM BACnet Client Option

- **BACnet Server Gateway Option**
  - Direct connection to the ***VRV*** system using the iTM as a gateway
  - Individual device ID assigned to each indoor unit group and outdoor unit
  - Seamless control logic integration between the iTM and BMS
  - Greatly reduces the need for BMS integrator programming

- **Built-in Service Tool with Remote Access**
  - Operation data are stored in the iTM for the last 5 days:
    - Indoor unit and outdoor unit operation data
    - BACnet Client objects
    - WAGO I/O system data
  - Operation data can be exported through a USB drive or through the iTM web browser remotely
  - BMS can monitor the BACnet objects of indoor unit and outdoor unit operation data with the BACnet Server Gateway Option activated

2.10.2 System Overview

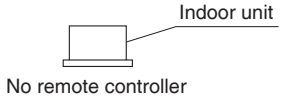
System Overview

1. About the iTM (intelligent Touch Manager)

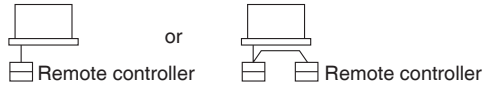
1-1 Main Features

- iTM is an advanced central controller operated by using a 10.4" touch panel. It allows you to easily monitor as well as operate air conditioners and generic equipment connected to the iTM from the touch panel.
- One iTM can monitor and control a maximum of 64 groups of indoor units (128 units), including Ventilator. The iTM can be expanded with up to a maximum of 7 iTM plus adaptors, which similarly to the iTM, can connect a maximum of 64 groups of indoor units (128 units); that is, with one iTM you can control and monitor a maximum of 512 groups of indoor units (1024 units).
  A group of indoor units refers to the following:

(1) One indoor unit without remote controller



(2) One indoor unit controlled with one or two remote controllers



(3) Up to 16 indoor units controlled as group with one or two remote controllers

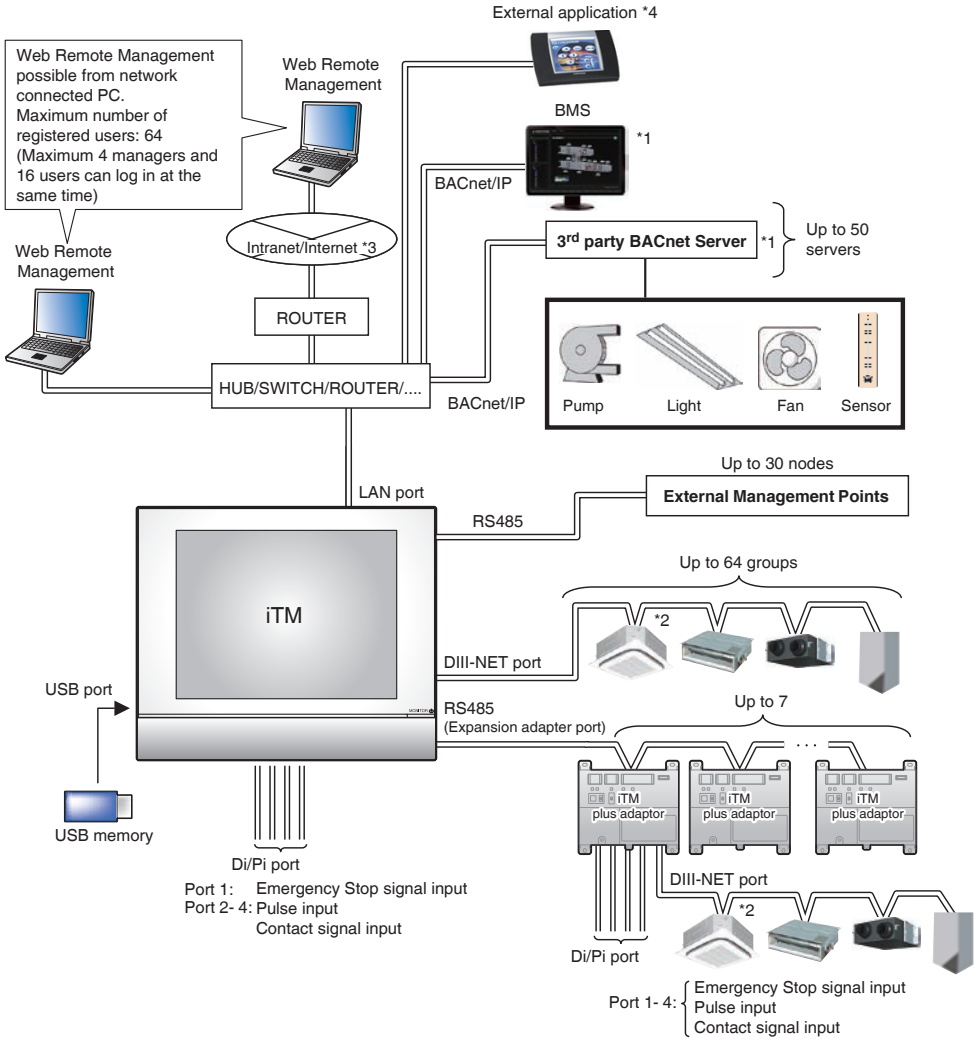
- The iTM allows you to define privileges for Users and Managers, so that you can set up and manage them according to their respective privileges. Furthermore, by connecting the iTM with computers in a LAN, you can set up Web Remote Management and allow a maximum of 4 managers and 16 users to simultaneously access the iTM, and if a connection to the Internet is available, then, you can monitor and operate the iTM remotely, via the Internet.
- The iTM allows you to schedule the operation of each air conditioner in detail.
  You can set up an annual schedule by setting up a schedule by the day of the week and defining Special Days such as extra holidays.
  Changes by the season are achieved by setting up a validity period to programs.
- By using optional functions, you can display the floor plan of individual buildings and the like as background on the iTM monitoring screen, and monitor and operate by viewing the actual layout of the air conditioners.
- You can use Interlocking Control to start/stop air conditioners in conjunction with other equipment or Setback function to save energy.
- You can use Power Proportional Distribution function (option software) to distribute the electric bill among tenants or the Energy Navigator function (option software) to manage the energy consumption systematically.
- By connecting a USB memory to the iTM, you can output billing data, budget/actual energy consumption data, function settings, history data, etc. to a CSV file.

NOTE

- Periodical data saving is recommended in order to prevent loss of your important data due to an accidental problem.

2.10.3 System Configuration

1-2 System Configuration



NOTE

- The total number of management points that can be registered is 650.
  For more information on the number of management points that can be registered, see Appendix in the User's Manual (EM11A017).

*1 iTM BACnet Server/Gateway software (DCM014A51) cannot be used together with iTM BACnet client software (DCM009A51) on the same iTM.
*2 The iTM BACnet Server/Gateway software (DCM014A51) guarantees performance for BMS to monitor and control up to 128 indoor units management points. Furthermore, Do not use WAGO nodes, Demand Control with the DCM014A51. The iTM has to be set as the DIII-NET master for this option to work.
*3 If connecting to the Internet, connection must always be via a VPN router, and security must be ensured by the customer.
*4 If you use iTM Web Interface software (DCM007A51), you can monitor and operate D3 devices connected to the iTM with an external application.

NOTE

When using the Web Remote Management function

<To prevent unauthorized use>

- As a product using network technology, this product faces the following security risks:
  * Information leakage
  * Unauthorized operation as a result of impersonation
  * Equipment stoppage as a result of an attack

  For the reasons above, be sure to use this product in a secure network environment.

- To strengthen security, observe the following points when managing users:
  * Restrict users that can log in by setting user names and passwords
  * Passwords must be a combination of alphanumeric characters that cannot be easily guessed by others

- This product logs user operation and the equipment operational status for the purpose of system maintenance.

  The logs can be viewed on the History screen.

2.10.4 Specification

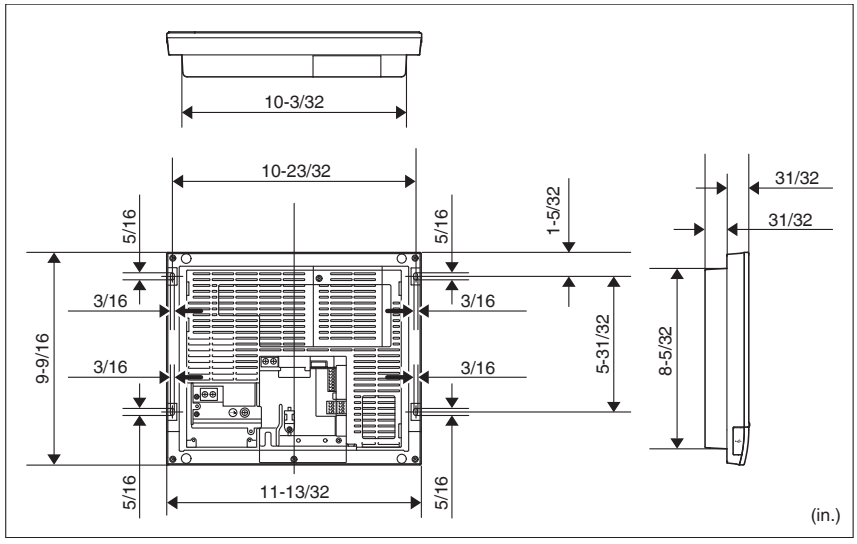
Model		DCM601B71
Power supply		AC 24 V, 60 Hz
Power consumption		23 W maximum
Operating conditions	Surrounding temperature	32 °F to 104 °F
	Humidity	15% to 85% RH (non condensing)
Dimensions	H x W x D (inch)	9.57 x 11.42 x 1.97
Capacity	Max. number of indoor unit	64 addressed indoor unit groups (maximum 128 indoor units)
	Max. number of outdoor unit	10
Interface	F1F2 (Daikin DIII-NET communication)	1
	100Base-TX (Ethernet communication)	1 (RJ-45)
	USB port (for flash memory drive)	1 (2 to 32 GB)
	RS-485 (for iTM Plus Adaptor connection)	1 (2-wire polarity sensitive)
Input terminals	Di (Digital input for forced shutdown)	1
	Di/Pi (Digital/Pulse input)*	3
EMC certification		FCC Part 15 Class B

* Pulse input from kWh meter requirements: 1 pulse to 1kWh or 10kWh. Pulse width must be between 40-400 msec.
Non voltage, normally open semi-conductor type.

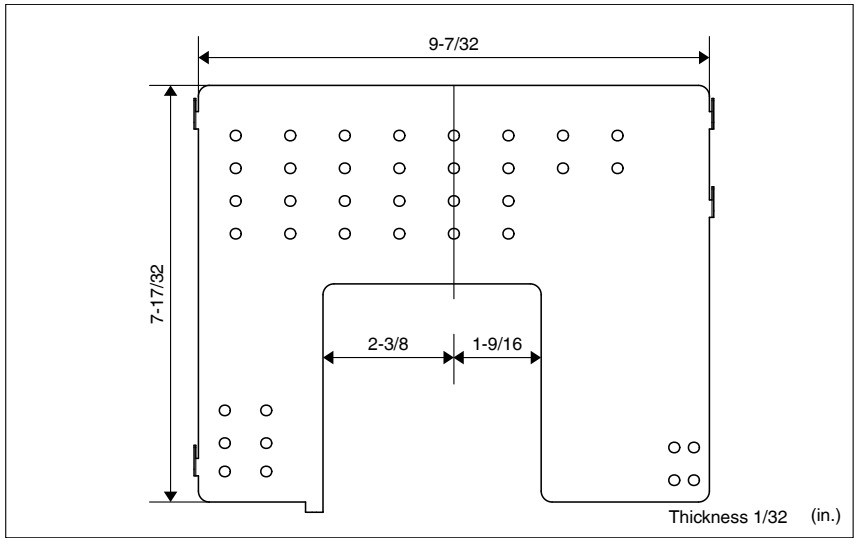
2.10.5 Dimension

1.2 Understanding external dimensions

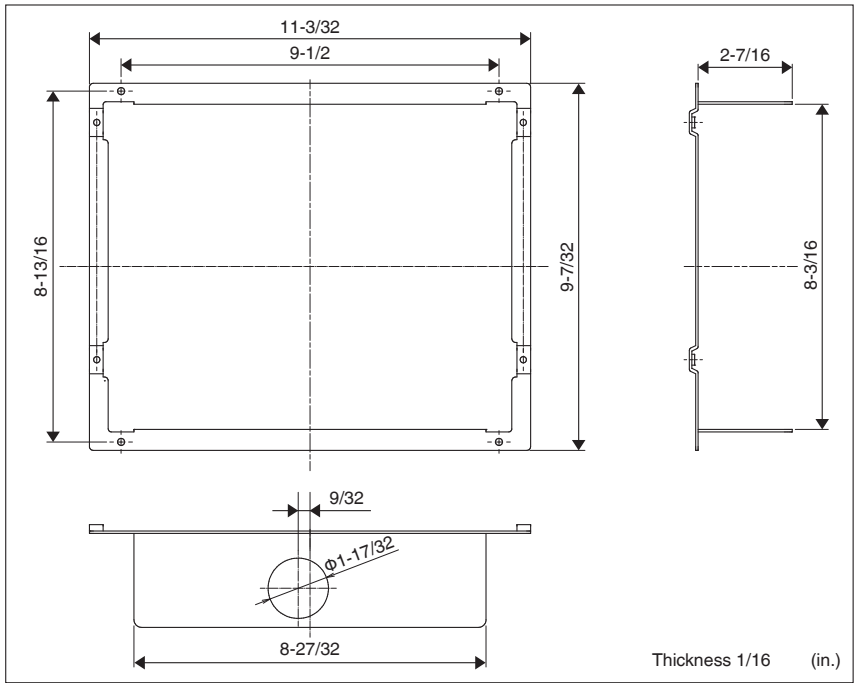
• intelligent Touch Manager body



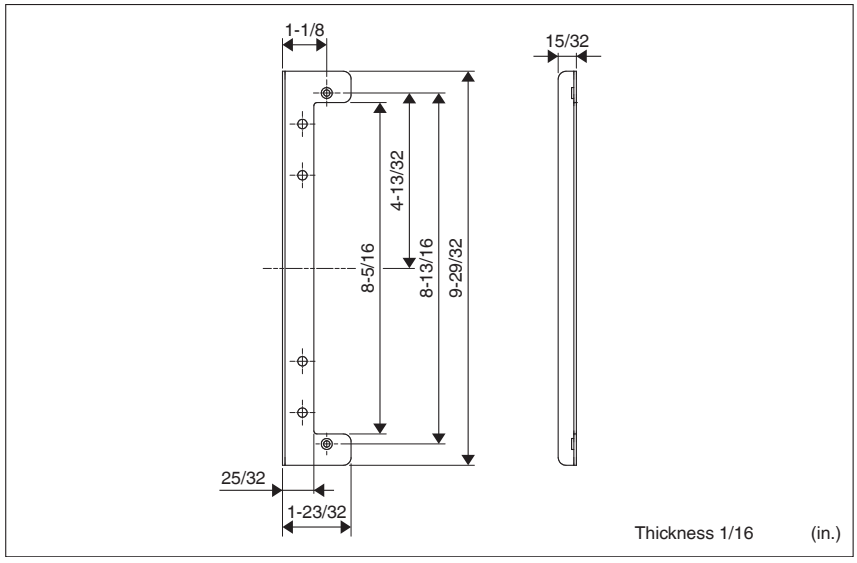
• Wall mounting metal plate



• Frame bracket



• Angle bracket



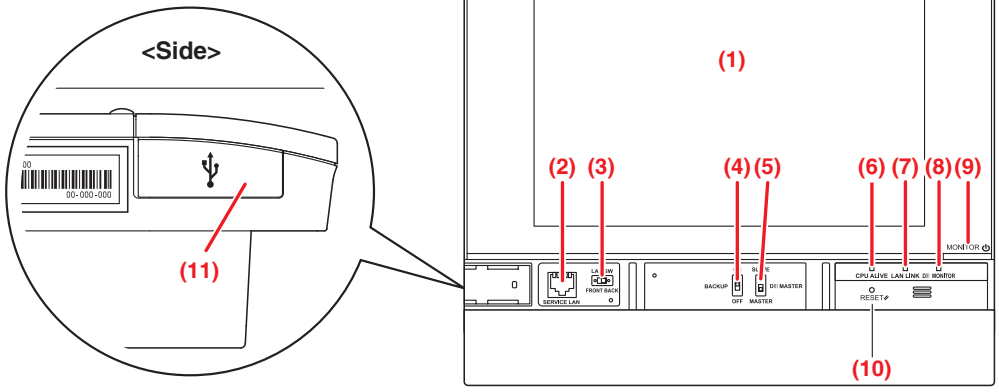
2.10.6 Part Names and Functions

Names and Functions

3. Names and Functions of Each Part

3-1 Front Panel and Side View

<Front panel>



(1) MONITOR

LCD touch panel for monitoring and performing operations.

(2) SERVICE LAN

Service LAN connection port. Unused.

(3) LAN SW

Switch for toggling between the LAN port on the rear and the SERVICE LAN port on the front.

When set to FRONT, you cannot close the cover.

To close the cover, set it to Back. (Be careful not to touch the switch inadvertently.)

(4) BACKUP

Power ON/OFF switch for settings backup battery. (Be careful not to touch the switch inadvertently.)

(5) DIII MASTER

Switch for setting up the MASTER and SLAVE when there are two or more DIII-NET central control devices such as the intelligent Touch Manager.

(6) CPU ALIVE (Green)

This LED flashes when the CPU is operating normally.

If it is not flashing, an operational error occurred in the CPU. (It takes about 10 seconds to determine the cause of an error.)

On: Software error

Off: Hardware error, power-off

(7) LAN LINK (Green)

This LED indicates whether the LAN connection between the intelligent Touch Manager and the connected hardware is correct. The LED is On when the connection is correct.

(8) DIII MONITOR (Yellow)

This LED flashes when data transmission occurs on the DIII-NET communication line.

(9) MONITOR key/LED (Orange/Green)

Press this switch to turn on/off the monitor. Doing so also causes the LED color to change as follows.

Off: Indicates that the power is off.

On (Orange): Indicates that the monitor is on.

On (Green): Indicates that the monitor is on.

(10) RESET//

Restart switch for restarting the intelligent Touch Manager.

(11) USB socket cover (side)

USB memory port.

NOTE

Do not use the socket for any purpose other than connecting a USB memory.

2.10.7 Detailed Screen Description

4. Detailed Screen Description

4-1 Setup Screen Structure

Standard functions

Icon View	Displays the operational status of areas and indoor units.	(See page 37.)
List View	Displays the operational status of areas and indoor units as a list.	(See page 51.)
Menu List Screen	Displays the list of menu items.	(See page 56.)
Schedule	Sets up weekly and annual schedules.	(See page 64.)
Weekly Schedule	Sets up a weekly schedule for each day.	(See page 67.)
Annual Schedule	Sets up schedules for special days, such as extra holidays.	(See page 76.)
Timer Extension	Sets up the off-timer to prevent failure to turn off indoor units.	(See page 117.)
Auto Changeover	Sets up the automatic change between cool and heat modes.	(See page 119.)
Emergency Stop	Sets up the emergency stop at fire alarms.	(See page 151.)
Area	Creates and sets up areas.	(See page 163.)
Mgmt. Pts.	Creates and sets up management points.	(See page 176.)
Passwords	Sets up passwords, such as the administrator password.	(See page 178.)
Maintenance	Places the management points under maintenance.	(See page 180.)
Regional	Changes the date format and unit of temperature to those appropriate for the locale.	(See page 181.)
Time/DST	Sets the current time and the daylight saving time.	(See page 184.)
Screensaver	Sets up the screensaver.	(See page 185.)
Hardware	Sets up the luminance for the screen and volume for the touch sound.	(See page 186.)
Confirmation Dialog	Enables or disables the display of a confirmation dialog at On/Off.	(See page 187.)
Touch Panel Calibration	Corrects the contact points of the touch panel.	(See page 188.)
Backup	Saves iTM data.	(See page 189.)
Version Information	Displays version information for the iTM.	(See page 190.)
History	Function for checking and exporting history, such as that of error occurrences.	(See page 191.)
Setup Export	Settings for exporting the entire setup information.	(See page 197.)
Operation Data Export	Operation data export.	(See page 198.)

See page 109 for the Optimum Start function and page 153 for the Setback function, respectively.

Optional functions

Icon View	Displays the operational status of areas and indoor units.	(See page 37.)
List View	Displays the operational status of areas and indoor units as a list.	(See page 51.)
Layout View	Displays the areas and operational statuses of indoor units on the relevant floor plan.	(See page 54.)
Menu List Screen	Displays the list of menu items.	(See page 56.)
Interlocking Control	Function for starting/stopping management points in conjunction with other equipment.	(See page 200.)
Emergency Stop	Sets up an arbitrary emergency stop program.	(See page 242.)
Network	Sets up the network IP address and the like.	(See page 259.)
Web Access Users	Sets up users of the Web Remote Management.	(See page 262.)
E-mail	Sets up e-mail transmission at error occurrence and the like.	(See page 272.)
Power Limit Control	Function for reducing power consumption.	(See page 246.)

Maker option

Menu List Screen	Displays the list of menu items.	(See page 56.)
Power Proportional Distribution	Function for distributing power to each tenant.	(See page 279.)
Energy Navigator	Function for managing the budget/actual energy consumption.	(See page 282.)

4-2 Standard View (Icon) Screen

(1) Area/Management Point view area

Displays area and management point icons.

(2) Menu List switch button

Switches to the Menu List screen, which consists of Automatic Ctrl., System Settings, Operation Mgmt. and Energy Navigator (optional) tabs.

The button changes to Close while the Menu List screen is being displayed.

(3) Standard View switch button

Switches from the Layout View screen (optional) to the Standard View screen.

(4) Layout View switch button

Switches the screen to the Layout View, which displays icons on a floor plan.

NOTE

Displayed only when the Layout View option (see “4-4 Layout View (Optional) Screen”) is enabled.

(5) Lock/Unlock button

Locks/Unlocks switching to the Menu List screen.

The button is not displayed when the screen lock is disabled.

(6) Group monitoring icon

A Error detection Reports error when any of the following faults is detected.


(Red)

Flashing indicator: System error
Text: System error occurred. Touch this icon to check and restore.


(Yellow)

Flashing indicator: Unit/Limit Error
Text: Error occurred. Touch this icon to check.


(Blue)

Lit indicator: Communication error

B Emergency Stop Reports emergency stop.

Emergency Stop
Text: Emergency stop occurred. Touch this icon to release.

Waiting for Release
Text: Emergency stop occurred. Touch this icon to release.
*A balloon is displayed when the target unit entered into waiting for release status automatically, without the icon being touched even once. The balloon is not displayed if the target unit was put into waiting for release status manually, by touching the icon.

OFF

C Energy Save Displays the Energy Save status.

Enabled
Energy Saving control is enabled and being active.

Suspended
Energy Saving control is suspended.

Under Control
Energy Saving control is disabled.

D Demand Control Displayed when the cut-off level exceeds the start level set for the demand control group.

Executing

(7) Time

Displays the current time.

(8) Area hierarchy indicator

Displays the hierarchical level of the currently displayed area.

(9) Top, Down, and Up buttons

Top button: Displays the area and management points at the Top.

Down button: Moves into the selected area and displays the areas and management points there.

Up button: Moves up one hierarchical level from that of the currently displayed area and displays the areas and management points there.

(10) List switch button

Toggles the Standard View screen between Icon View and List View.

(11) Information button

Displays the legend for an icon or contact information for inquiries regarding the system.

(12) Selected area/management point information indicator

Displays the name, icon, and filter sign of the selected area or management point.

(13) Room Temp/Operation Mode/Changeover Option indicator

Displays the room temperature and settings of the selected management point. Not displayed for areas.

NOTE

- When the selected management point is in error, it displays the error code.
- Since the built-in sensor of the air conditioner is used, the temperature displayed may differ from the actual room temperature.

(14) Details button

Displays the Detailed Setup screen for the selected area or indoor unit.

(15) On/Off button

Starts/Stops the selected area or management point.

(16) Cool Setpoint spin box

Sets up the cooling temperature for indoor units in the selected area, or the selected indoor unit.

(17) Heat Setpoint spin box

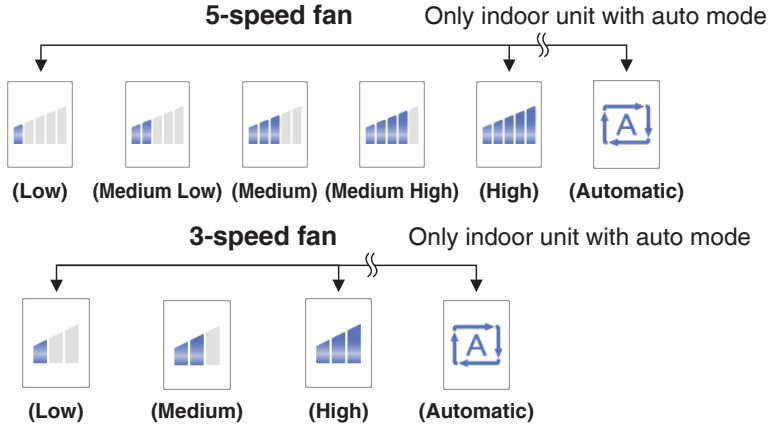
Sets up the heating temperature for indoor units in the selected area, or the selected indoor unit.

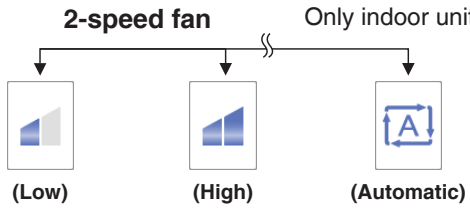
NOTE

In areas containing Hydrobox management points and Indoor management points, if the Heat Setpoint is set up, the Hydrobox Setpoint is also set up.

(18) Fan Speed button

Sets up the fan speed for the indoor unit of the selected area, or the selected indoor unit.





(19) Setting button

Displays the Detailed Setup screen for the selected area or management point.

Detailed Setup Screen

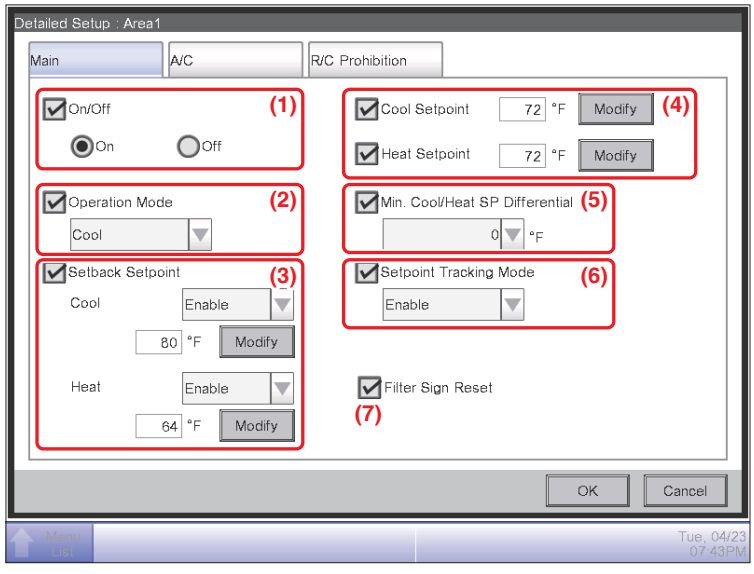
The Detailed Setup screen appears when you touch the **Setting** button **(19)** (see "4-2 Standard View (Icon) Screen" and "4-3 Standard View (List) Screen") on the Standard View screen. Necessary tab is displayed in accordance with the selected management points/areas. Set up the Main, A/C, R/C Prohibition, Ventilator, and Dio, Ao, Mo tabs as required. To change the settings on each tab, select the relevant check boxes. To commit the settings, touch the OK button.

For items for which manual setup is prohibited, you can only reset the filter sign.

- **Main Tab**

  Sets up items common to the indoor unit, Ventilator, Dio, and area.

  Change settings by selecting the relevant check boxes.



(1) On/Off

Starts/Stops the selected area or management point.

On: Start

Off: Stop

(2) Operation Mode

Switches the operation mode.

Set up the desired operation mode by selecting from Fan, Cool, Heat, Dependent, and Dry.

NOTE

- Dependent means either Cool or Heat. This is because the operation mode follows the Cool or Heat operation mode set up in the air conditioner with Changeover option.
- To select the Dry operation mode, you need to complete the initial setup. Some air conditioner models do not provide the Dry function.
- Setting up “Dry” in an indoor unit with Changeover option does not change the operation mode of indoor units without Changeover option that belong to the same Outdoor Unit group and are operating in Cool or Dry mode.

(3) Setback Setpoint setting

Sets up the temperatures at which the iTM starts setback operation.

Cool: Set up the temperatures at which to start setback operation during absence, when the operation mode is set to Cool.

Select Enable or Disable in the drop down menu to enable the setpoint and enter the setback setpoint in the text box.

Heat: Set up the temperatures at which to start setback operation during absence, when the operation mode is set to Heat.

Select Enable or Disable in the drop down menu to enable the setpoint and enter the setback setpoint in the text box.

For details, see “5-6 Setting up the Setback”.

(4) Setpoint setting

Cool Setpoint: Set up the cooling temperature.

Heat Setpoint: Set up the heating temperature.

*If the target is a dedicated cooling or heating unit or Hydrobox, this is labelled as Setpoint, allowing the following operations.

Indoor: You can set up only the corresponding setpoint.

Hydrobox: You can set up the setpoint.

NOTE

In areas containing Hydrobox management points and Indoor management points, if the Heat Setpoint is set up, the Hydrobox Setpoint is also set up.

(5) Min. Cool/Heat SP Differential setting

Min. Cool/Heat SP Differential refers to the setting value that makes the temperature difference between the cooling and heating setpoints into the constant value or more.

Select the check box and enter the differential value in the drop down menu.

When displayed in Fahrenheit: Select from 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7.

The display unit for the temperature varies depending on the System Settings.

For details, see “Appendix 9. Min. Cool/Heat SP Differential”.

(6) Setpoint Tracking Mode setting

Setpoint Tracking Mode refers to the control mode in which the iTM fixes the temperature difference between the cooling and heating setpoints to the Min. Cool/Heat SP Differential value. Selecting Enable allows the iTM to adjust the other setpoint value automatically when you change one of the setpoints so that the temperature difference between the cooling and heating setpoints equals the Min. Cool/Heat SP Differential value.

Select the Setpoint Tracking Mode check box and then select Enable or Disable in the drop down menu.

For details, see “Appendix 10. Setpoint Tracking Mode”.

(7) Filter Sign Reset

Resets the filter sign for the indoor unit and Ventilator.

This check box is displayed only when the filter sign is displayed.

NOTE

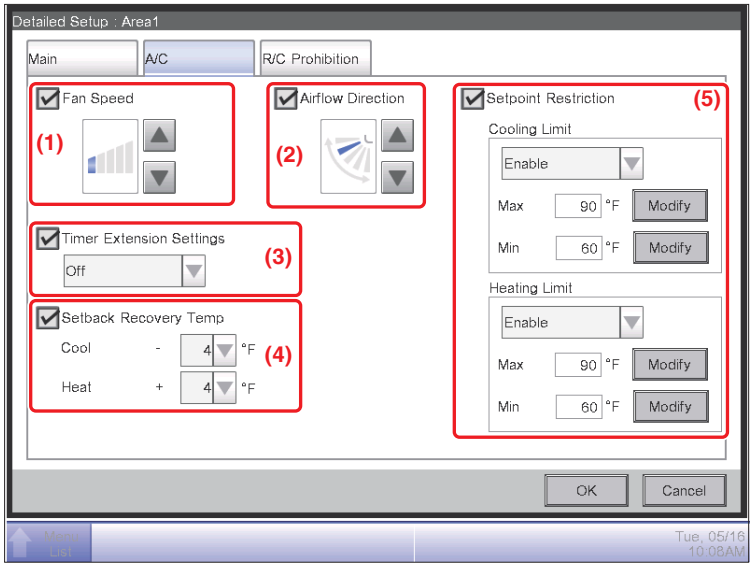
The setting areas **(3)**, **(5)**, **(6)** are not available on iTM in either one of the following cases:

- The BACnet or Lon Interface is connected, and the DIII-NET Engineering setting is set to “Automatic”.
- The iTM Main/Sub controller Settings is set to “Sub”.

• **A/C Tab**

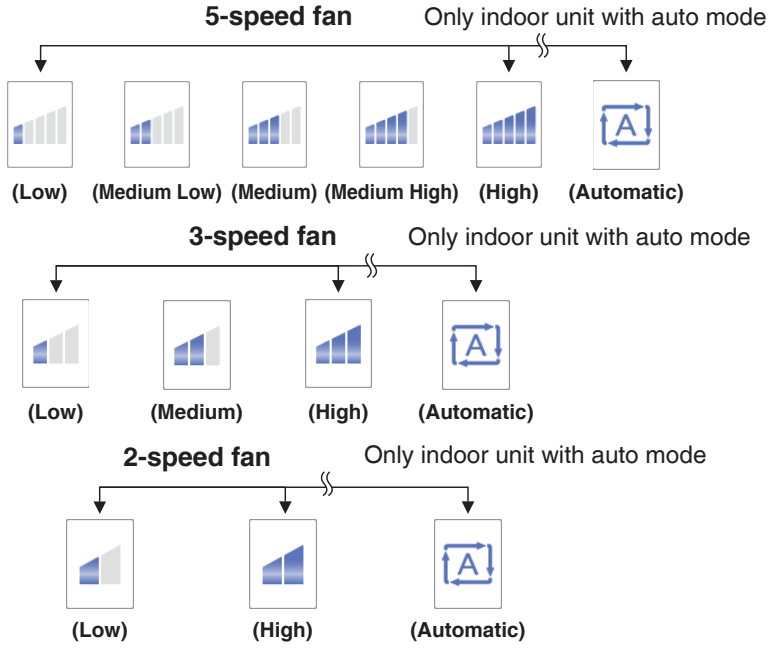
Sets up the indoor unit.

Change settings by selecting the relevant check boxes. The range of values and items you can set up will depend on the selected equipment.



(1) Fan Speed

Sets up the fan speed.



(2) Airflow Direction

Sets up the fan direction.

<Airflow direction 0> <Airflow direction 1> <Airflow direction 2> <Airflow direction 3> <Airflow direction 4> <Swing>

(3) Timer Extension Settings

Enables/disables the Timer Extension function.

(4) Setback Recovery Temp setting

Sets up the setback recovery temperature for the indoor unit.

Cool: Set up the setback recovery temperature (for cooling).

Heat: Set up the setback recovery temperature (for heating).

(5) Setpoint Restriction

Use this setting to limit the setpoint range that can be achieved.

Cooling Limit: Sets up the setpoint range for the indoor unit in cooling mode. Enable or disable, and enter the maximum and minimum temperatures.
If Cooling Limit is disabled, maximum and minimum temperatures will not display.

Heating Limit: Sets up the setpoint range for the indoor unit in heating mode. Enable or disable, and enter the maximum and minimum temperatures.
If Heating Limit is disabled, maximum and minimum temperatures will not display.

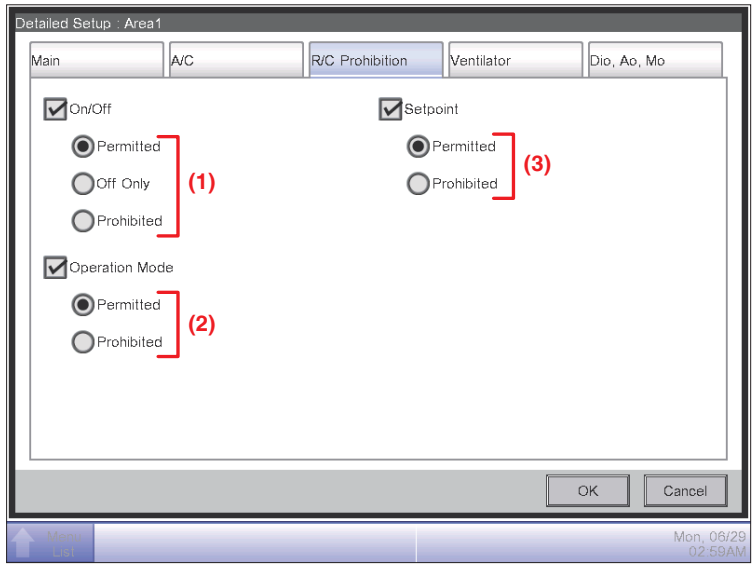
NOTE

- The Setpoint Restriction does not apply to the following items;
  Hydrobox: leaving water setpoint and storage setpoint.
- The setting areas **(4)**, **(5)** are not available on iTM in either one of the following cases:
  * The BACnet or Lon Interface is connected, and the DIII-NET Engineering setting is set to "Automatic".
  * The iTM Main/Sub controller Settings is set to "Sub".

• **R/C Prohibition Tab**

Enables/disables remote controller of the indoor unit, Ventilator, and area.

Change settings by selecting the relevant check boxes.



(1) On/Off

Sets up whether On/Off the management point from the remote controller will be enabled or disabled.

Permitted: Enabled.

Off Only: Only stopping is enabled.

Prohibited: Disabled.

NOTE

In the case of the system with Hydrobox, choosing “Stop Only” or “Prohibited” makes the On/Off (Reheat) to operate as “Permitted”.

(2) Operation Mode

Sets up whether changing the operation mode from the remote controller will be enabled or disabled.

Permitted: Enabled.

Prohibited: Disabled.

(3) Setpoint

Sets up whether changing the management points' setpoint from the remote controller will be enabled or disabled.

Permitted: Enabled.

Prohibited: Disabled.

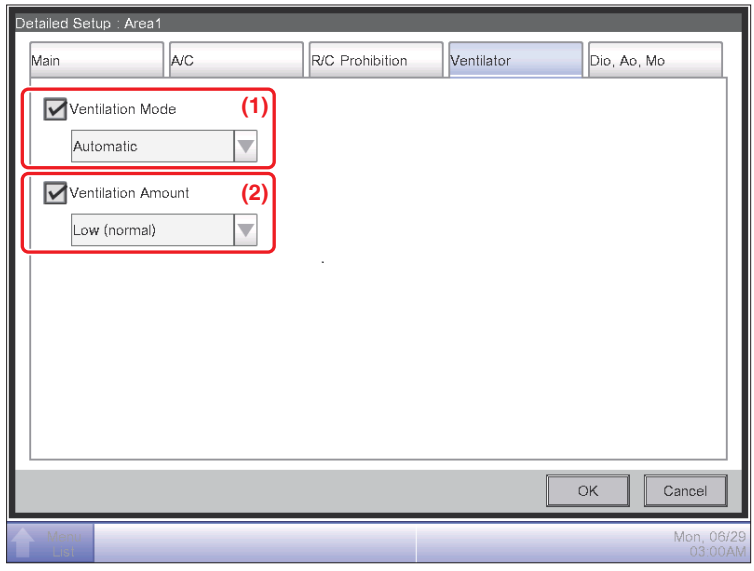
NOTE

In the case of the system with Hydrobox, the storage water setpoint can be changed even when "Prohibited" is selected.

- **Ventilator Tab**

Sets up the Ventilator.

Change settings by selecting the relevant check boxes.



(1) Ventilation Mode

Select and set up a ventilation mode from Automatic, ERVentilation, and Bypass.

NOTE

This setting may not be available depending on the model.

(2) Ventilation Amount

Select and set up a ventilation amount from Auto (normal), Low (normal), High (normal), Auto (fresh up), Low (fresh up), and High (fresh up).

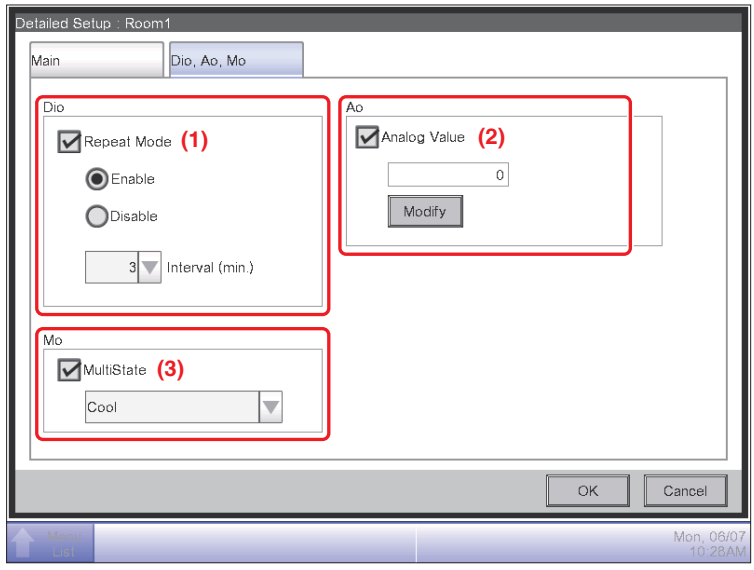
NOTE

This setting may not be available depending on the model.

• **Dio, Ao, Mo Tab**

Sets up the Dio, Ao and Mo.

Change settings by selecting the relevant check boxes.



(1) Dio

Enable/disable Repeat Mode for Dio, and select and set up a repetition interval in the 1 to 10-minute range, in increments of 1 minute.

When the Repeat Mode is enabled, a start/stop attempt will be repeated again at the specified repetition interval.

(2) Ao

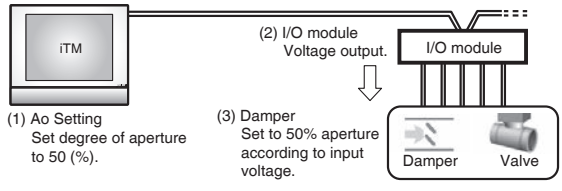
Ao refers to analog signal output.

This function enables the signal output equipment (I/O module) connected to the iTM to output a current/voltage corresponding to the adjustment value from external equipment.

(It is used for the adjustment of building equipment, such as degree of aperture of a damper/valve.)

The range, incremental width, and unit of the analog values are set on the screen during trial. (The unit setting may not be available.)

Ao control image (Example: Changing the degree of damper aperture)
(1) On the iTM, set the degree of aperture (analog value).
(2) A voltage corresponding to the analog value is output from the I/O module.
(3) The damper aperture is set according to the input voltage.



(3) Mo

Select and set a MultiState value for Mo.

The MultiState value set on the screen is set up during the trial.

NOTE

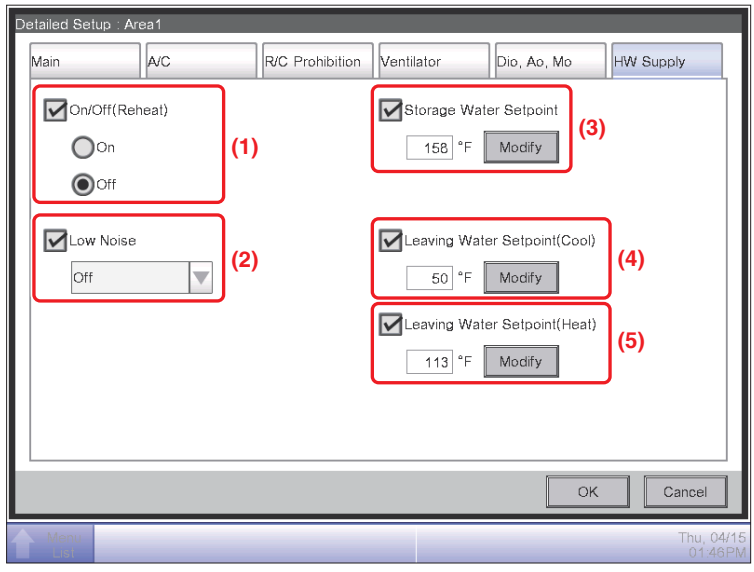
You cannot set MultiState in the area.

- **HW Supply Tab**

Sets up the hot water supply.

Change settings by selecting the relevant check boxes.

The range of values that can be set up varies depending on the selected equipment.



(1) On/Off (Reheat)

Sets up whether starting/stopping.

Start : Reheat start

Stop : Reheat stop

(2) Low Noise

Enables or disables the Low Noise function.

(3) Storage Water Setpoint

Sets up the storage water setpoint.

NOTE

When displayed in Fahrenheit, Some temperatures cannot be set.

Setting Setpoint	Actual Setpoint	Setting Setpoint	Actual Setpoint	Setting Setpoint	Actual Setpoint	Setting Setpoint	Actual Setpoint
113°F	113°F	127°F	127°F	141°F	142°F	155°F	154°F
114°F	115°F	128°F	127°F	142°F	142°F	156°F	156°F
115°F	115°F	129°F	129°F	143°F	144°F	157°F	156°F
116°F	117°F	130°F	129°F	144°F	144°F	158°F	158°F
117°F	117°F	131°F	131°F	145°F	145°F	159°F	160°F
118°F	118°F	132°F	133°F	146°F	145°F	160°F	160°F
119°F	118°F	133°F	133°F	147°F	147°F	161°F	162°F
120°F	120°F	134°F	135°F	148°F	147°F	162°F	162°F
121°F	120°F	135°F	135°F	149°F	149°F	163°F	163°F
122°F	122°F	136°F	136°F	150°F	151°F	164°F	163°F
123°F	124°F	137°F	136°F	151°F	151°F	165°F	165°F
124°F	124°F	138°F	138°F	152°F	153°F	166°F	165°F
125°F	126°F	139°F	138°F	153°F	153°F	167°F	167°F
126°F	126°F	140°F	140°F	154°F	154°F		

(4) Leaving Water Setpoint (Cool)

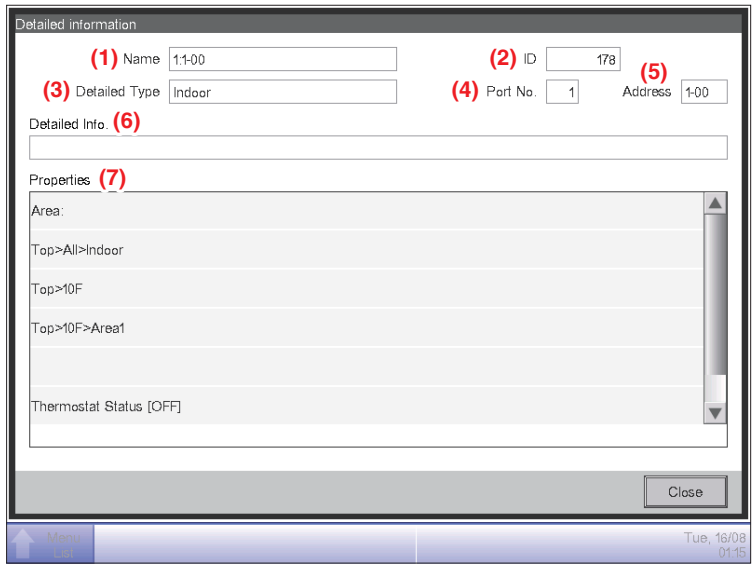
Sets up the leaving water setpoint in cooling.

(5) Leaving Water Setpoint (Heat)

Sets up the leaving water setpoint in heating.

Detailed Information Screen

The Detailed Information screen appears when you touch the **Details** button **(14)** (see "4-2 Standard View (Icon) Screen" and "4-3 Standard View (List) Screen") on the Standard View screen.



(1) Name field

Displays the name of the area or management point.

(2) ID field

Displays the ID of the area or management point.

(3) Detailed Type field

Displays the type of the area or management point.

(4) Port No. field

Displays the port number to which the management point is connected.

NOTE

Not displayed for areas.

(5) Address field

Displays the address of the management point.

NOTE

Not displayed for areas.

(6) Detailed Info. field

Displays detailed information of the area or management point.

(7) Properties field

Displays information such as attributes, status, and setting details of the area or management point.

2.10.8 Electric Wiring

2 Electric Wiring

This chapter describes the procedure for connecting the intelligent Touch Manager with DAIKIN air conditioning devices and other equipment.

In addition to air conditioners, the intelligent Touch Manager can monitor and control a wide range of equipment. However, the required connection procedures vary depending on the equipment to be connected.
Do not connect more than two wires to the same terminal.

Required procedures
- 2.2 Connecting DIII-NET-compatible air conditioning equipment
- 2.7 Connecting power supply

Equipment-specific procedures
- 2.3 Connecting a LAN cable
- 2.4 Connecting I/O module
- 2.5 Connecting an emergency stop input device or power meter
- 2.6 Connecting iTM plus adaptors

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not turn on the power supply before all wire connections are completed. When there is an earth leakage breaker or a local switch installed on the circuit, make sure that the circuit is securely interrupted. Otherwise, an electric shock may result.**
- **After the wiring is completed, double-check that all wires are connected correctly before turning on the power supply.**
- **After completing connections, be sure to attach the power supply terminal cover on the rear face.**
- **All field supplied parts and materials, electric works must conform to local codes.**
- **All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician.**

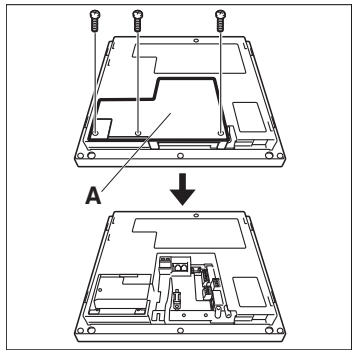
2.1 Removing the rear cover

When routing the cables of the intelligent Touch Manager, it is necessary to remove the terminal cover and power supply terminal cover.

2.1.1 Removing terminal cover from rear face

Before you start any of these connection procedures, remove the terminal cover from the rear face. To do so, remove three screws using a Phillips screwdriver.

<Removing terminal cover>

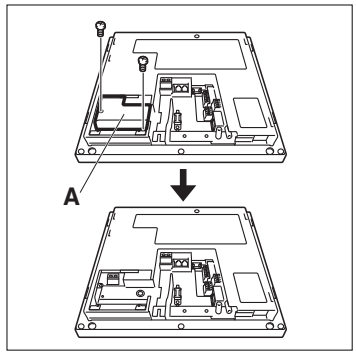


A Terminal cover

2.1.2 Removing the power supply terminal cover

Remove the power supply terminal cover.
You can remove the power supply terminal cover by removing the two screws using a Phillips screwdriver.

<Removing the power supply terminal cover>



A Power supply terminal cover

2.2 Connecting DIII-NET-compatible air conditioning equipment

DIII-NET is the DAIKIN's original communication method used between air conditioners. Using DIII-NET, you can centrally control multiple DAIKIN DIII-NET-compatible air conditioning devices by connecting them to your intelligent Touch Manager.

⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to perform the operation during power-off conditions. Not doing so may cause an electric shock.**
- **The maximum length of adhered wiring of high current electrical line of power wires and weak current line of communication wires must be kept to 65 ft. or less.**

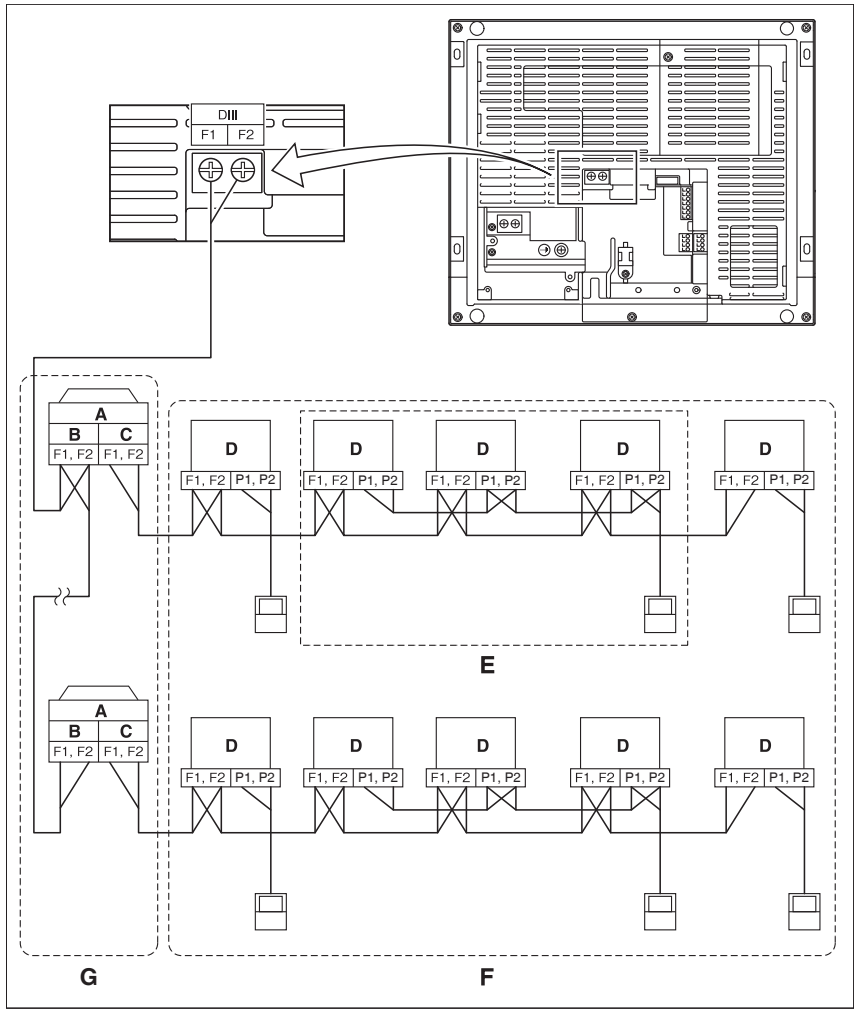
2.2.1 Terminal location and schematic connection diagram

To connect the DIII-NET communication line, use F1 and F2 terminals that are located on the rear face and indicated with "DIII" mark. These 2 terminals have no polarity. An example of connecting more than two air conditioning devices is shown in the following conceptual connection diagram.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the wires you are connecting to the F1 and F2 terminals are not power wires. Inadvertently connecting power wires to these terminals results in a failure of the air conditioner or intelligent Touch Manager.

<Conceptual connection diagram with air conditioning equipment>



A Outdoor unit

B OUT - OUT communication (terminal)

C IN - OUT communication (terminal)

D Indoor unit

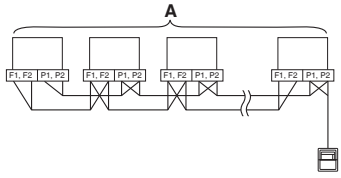
E A maximum of 16 indoor units can be connected per remote controller group.

F A maximum of 64 remote controller groups (128 indoor units) can be connected. When the power proportional distributions is applied, the maximum number of indoor units is 64.

G A maximum of 7 outdoor units can be connected to 1 DIII-NET (outdoor multi system counts as 1 unit.).

NOTE

- What's a remote controller group?
  A single remote controller can simultaneously control a maximum of 16 indoor units. This capability is referred to as group control. A remote controller group is a group of indoor units controlled under the same remote controller.
  [Schematic diagram of remote controller group]



A Max.16 Indoor units

2.2.2 Wiring specifications

- Cable type: 2-core vinyl-insulated vinyl-sheathed non-shielded cable/vinyl cabtyre non-shielded cable
- Core thickness: AWG 18-16
- Terminal treatment: Use a round crimp-type terminal (M3.5) with insulating sleeve

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores.**
- **The maximum wiring length is 3280 ft. and total wiring length is 6561 ft. or less.**

2.2.3 Precautions for using multiple centralized controllers

The "centralized controller" refers to the equipment (e.g. the intelligent Touch Manager) that controls multiple air conditioners. Besides the intelligent Touch Manager, the DAIKIN's product portfolio includes a wide range of centralized controllers suitable for different applications or building sizes, which can be used in combination to construct an optimal air conditioning control system.

If multiple centralized controllers are connected on the DIII-NET network, you must set MASTER and SLAVE relationship for those controllers.

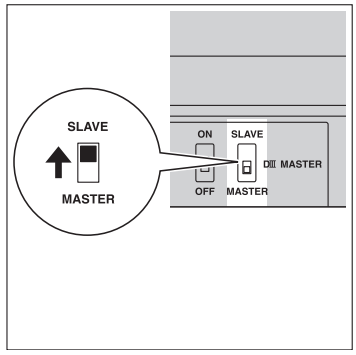
Assign only one of those controllers to MASTER, and other controllers to SLAVE.

The intelligent Touch Manager is set to MASTER by default. Change the setting to SLAVE in any of the following cases:

- Where Interface for use in BACnet is installed in parallel.
- Where Interface for use in LONWORKS is installed in parallel.
- If there is another intelligent Touch Manager or iTM plus adaptor which is assigned to MASTER.

To change the setting of the intelligent Touch Manager to SLAVE, turn the DIII MASTER switch located under the front slide cover. Placing the DIII MASTER switch in the upper position (labeled as “SLAVE”) changes it to a SLAVE.

<DIII MASTER>



When installing multiple centralized controllers, set only the highest-priority controller to MASTER and all other controllers to SLAVE according to the following order of priority.

High
Priority
Low

(1) Interface for use in BACnet
(2) Interface for use in LONWORKS
(3) **intelligent Touch Manager (Main),** iTM plus adaptor (Main)
(4) Central Remote Controller (Main)
(5) **intelligent Touch Manager (Sub),** iTM plus adaptor (Sub)
(6) Central Remote Controller (Sub)
(7) ON/OFF Controller (Main)
(8) ON/OFF Controller (Sub)

Centralized controllers that cannot be connected to the same network as the intelligent Touch Manager.

- intelligent Processing Unit
- intelligent Touch Controller
- DIII-NET Plus Adapter
- Residential Central Remote Controller
- Schedule Timer
- Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (1) (KRP2)

2.3 Connecting a LAN cable

By connecting the intelligent Touch Manager with a PC via Ethernet, you can remotely perform operations such as operation setup and maintenance of air conditioning system.

⚠ WARNING

Do not clamp the LAN cable with high current cables.

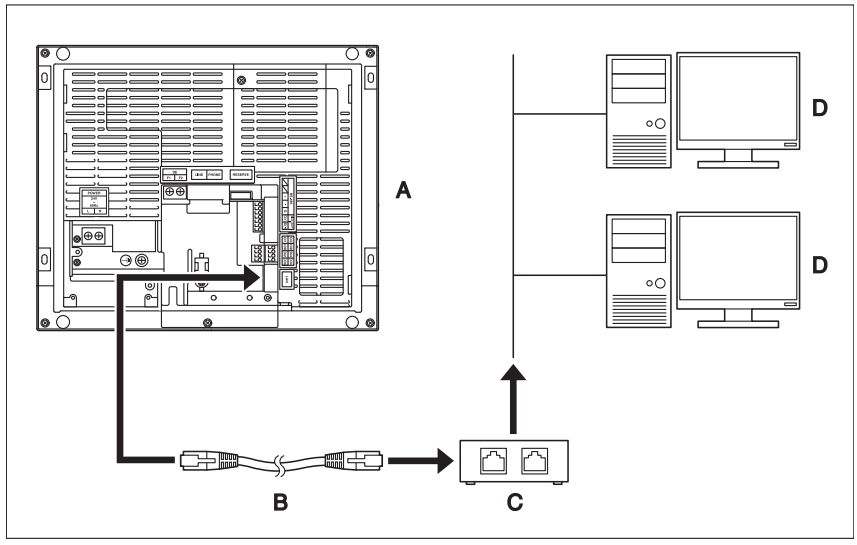
NOTE

For how to connect the intelligent Touch Manager to a PC network, contact your network administrator.
If connecting to the Internet, security must be ensured by the customer.

2.3.1 Terminal location and schematic connection diagram

Using a LAN cable, connect the LAN port to the network hub.

<LAN connection schematic diagram>



A Rear face of intelligent Touch Manager
B LAN cable
C Hub
D PC

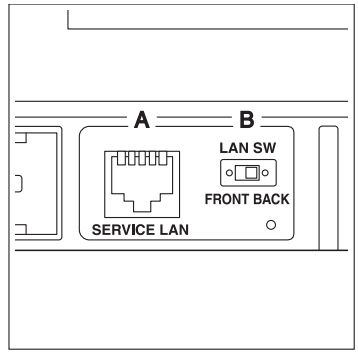
2.3.2 Wiring specifications

- Applicable cable standard: 100Base-TX or 10Base-T
- Connector standard: RJ-45

NOTE

- When you connect the intelligent Touch Manager to the LAN temporarily during installation or maintenance, use the SERVICE LAN port located on the front face.
  The SERVICE LAN port is enabled by changing the position of the LAN SW switch beside the SERVICE LAN to the FRONT position.
- You cannot close the front switch cover when the switch set to “FRONT”. To close the front switch cover, select “BACK”.

<SERVICE LAN socket and LAN SW switch>



A SERVICE LAN
B LAN SW

2.4 Connecting I/O module

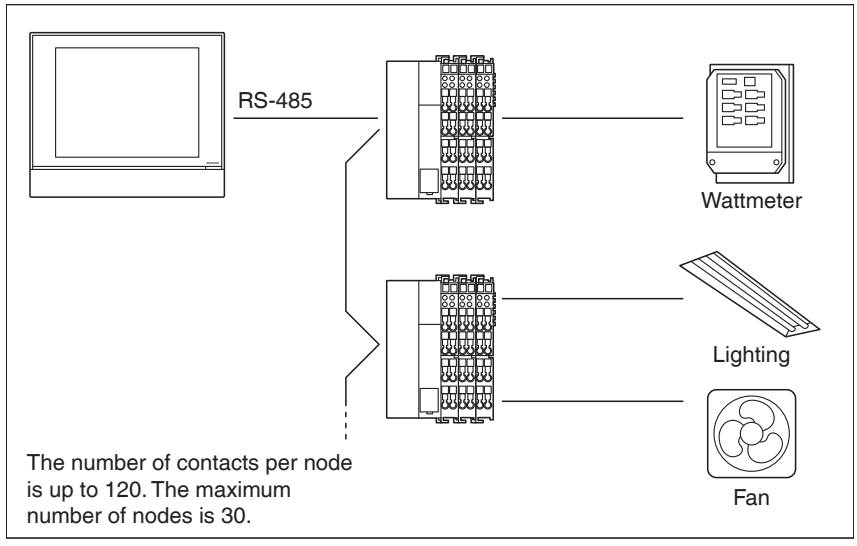
In combination with the I/O module, the intelligent Touch Manager can monitor and control a maximum of 960 contacts of non-DAIKIN peripheral devices such as lighting equipment and security systems. Connect the intelligent Touch Manager to the termination of the RS-485 wiring.

⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to perform the operation during power-off conditions. Not doing so may cause an electric shock.**
- **Do not clamp the cables with high-current lines such as a power cable.**

2.4.1 Terminal location and schematic connection diagram

<Schematic drawing of I/O module connection>



Connect to the RS-485 terminals located on the rear face. As the terminals have polarity, be sure to connect the positive core wire to the + (positive) terminal and the negative core wire to the – (negative) terminal, respectively.

2.4.2 Wiring specifications

- Cable type: CPEV or FCPEV cable (shielded type also acceptable)
- Cable length: 1640 ft. or less
- Core thickness: AWG 22-20

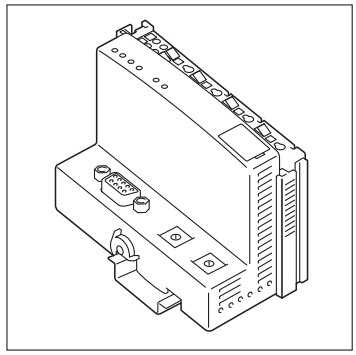
⚠ CAUTION

- **When using a shielded cable, be sure to connect the cable to the G (ground) terminal.**
- **Do not connect a shielded cable and a non-shielded cable.**

2.4.3 Address setup

The bus coupler located at the left end of nodes has rotary switches for setting the addresses.
Set a unique address for each node.
For details, refer to the “Commissioning Manual Supplementary Volume (External Management Points (EM11A026))”.

<Bus coupler>



2.5 Connecting an emergency stop input device or power meter

The intelligent Touch Manager can perform operations such as an emergency stop of air conditioners according to the external signal input device, and an electricity usage calculation for each air conditioner (for power proportional distribution) according to the pulse inputs from a power meter.

⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to perform the operation during power-off conditions. Not doing so may cause an electric shock.**
- **Do not clamp high-current cables together with low-current cables.**

2.5.1 Terminal location and schematic connection diagram

Connect the contact input signal wire or pulse signal wire to Di1, Di2, Di3, Di4, or COM terminal on the orange connector on the rear face. Each of these terminals has different function.

[Di1] Emergency stop input

[Di2] [Di3] [Di4] Pulse input, contact signal input

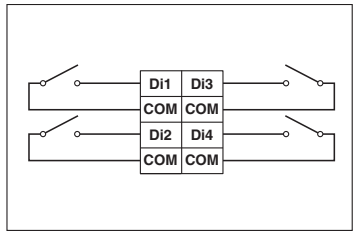
[COM] Common

However, the function settings for these terminals can be changed later. For how to change the function settings, refer to the “Commissioning Manual (EM11A022)”.

NOTE

The COM terminals are all connected internally. So, you can use either of them. However, you can connect up to two wires simultaneously to each COM terminal. When using an open collector type output, connect the COM terminal to the negative side.

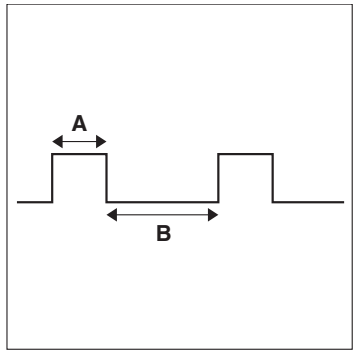
<Schematic drawing of Di connection>



2.5.2 Wiring specifications

- Cable type: CPEV cable
- Core thickness: AWG 22-18
- Cable length: 656 ft. or less

<Pulse width>



A Pulse width: 20 to 400 ms

B Pulse interval: 100 ms or more

⚠ CAUTION

- **The contact connected to the contact input terminal must be capable of handling 10 mA at 16 VDC.**
- **If an instantaneous contact is used for triggering an emergency stop, use one that has an energization time of 200 ms or more.**

NOTE

Once the emergency stop input signal is turned on, all air conditioners stop and do not restart until the emergency stop input is cleared. When the manual reset is specified for the resetting method, you need to clear the emergency stop using the intelligent Touch Manager.

2.6 Connecting iTM plus adaptors

If you have many air conditioners, use iTM plus adaptors to connect them. You can connect up to 64 groups to 1 DIII-NET port. It is a fact that the number of indoor groups you can control using a single intelligent Touch Manager is limited to 64. By using an iTM plus adaptor, you can connect an additional 64 indoor unit groups.
Using all 8 DIII- NET ports, you can connect and control a total of 512 groups of indoor units at maximum.
If 7 outdoor units (maximum possible number of outdoor units per 1 DIII-NET port) are connected, and if all 8 DIII-NET ports are used, a maximum of 56 outdoor units can be connected and controlled in total (outdoor multi system counts as 1 unit.).

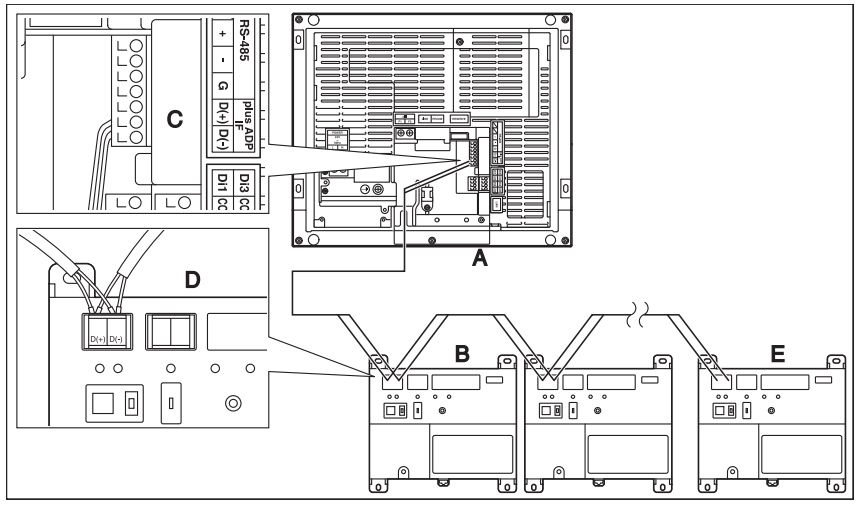
⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to perform the operation during power-off conditions. Not doing so may cause an electric shock.**
- **Do not clamp high-current cables together with low-current cables.**

2.6.1 Terminal location and schematic connection diagram

Connect the iTM plus adaptor to the plus ADP IF terminal located on the rear face. Connect the intelligent Touch Manager to the plus ADP IF terminal. As the terminals have polarity, be sure to connect the positive wire to the "+" terminal and the negative wire to the "–" terminal without fail. Connect the intelligent Touch Manager to the termination of the RS-485 wiring.

<Terminal location and schematic connection diagram>



A intelligent Touch Manager

B iTM plus adaptor

C plus ADP IF (intelligent Touch Manager)

D plus ADP IF (iTM plus adaptor)

E iTM plus adaptor on which termination resistor must be enabled
(For details, refer to the "iTM plus adaptor installation manual".)

2.6.2 Wiring specifications

- Cable type: CPEV or FCPEV cable
- Core thickness: AWG 22-18
- Cable length: The overall cable length between the intelligent Touch Manager and the terminal iTM plus adaptor is 164 ft. or less.
- Wiring connection type: Daisy chain

NOTE

Each air conditioner controlled via an iTM plus adaptor is also assigned a DIII address between "1-00" to "4-15". From the intelligent Touch Manager, it is recognized as "2:1-00", "3:1-02", or the like, with the DIII-NET port number prefixed.

2.11 Daikin Zoning Kit

DZK COMPATIBILITY CHART

IDU Models	DZK030E4-4	DZK030E5-4	DZK048E4-4	DZK048E6-4	DZKS015E3-4	DZKS015E4-4	DZKS030E4-4	DZKS030E5-4	DZKS048E4-4	DZKS048E6-4
FXMQ07PBVJU										
FXMQ09PBVJU										
FXMQ12PBVJU										
FXMQ15PBVJU	X	X								
FXMQ18PBVJU	X	X								
FXMQ24PBVJU	X	X								
FXMQ30PBVJU			X	X						
FXMQ36PBVJU			X	X						
FXMQ48PBVJU			X	X						
FXMQ54PBVJU			X	X						
FXMQ48MFVJU										
FXMQ15TBVJU							X	X		
FXMQ18TBVJU							X	X		
FXMQ24TBVJU							X	X		
FXMQ30TBVJU									X	X
FXMQ36TBVJU									X	X
FXMQ48TBVJU									X	X
FXMQ54TBVJU										
FXSQ05TAVJU										
FXSQ05TBVJU										
FXSQ07TAVJU										
FXSQ07TBVJU										
FXSQ09TAVJU										
FXSQ09TBVJU										
FXSQ12TAVJU										
FXSQ12TBVJU										
FXSQ15TAVJU					X	X				
FXSQ15TBVJU					X	X				
FXSQ18TAVJU							X	X		
FXSQ18TBVJU							X	X		
FXSQ24TAVJU							X	X		
FXSQ24TBVJU							X	X		
FXSQ30TAVJU							X	X		
FXSQ30TBVJU							X	X		
FXSQ36TAVJU									X	X
FXSQ36TBVJU									X	X
FXSQ48TAVJU									X	X
FXSQ48TBVJU									X	X
FXSQ54TAVJU										
FXSQ54TBVJU										

3. Adaptor

3.1 KRCS01-5B Remote Sensor

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

DAIKIN Air Conditioners — **Remote Sensor** — **Installation Manual**

KRCS01-5B

Be sure to read this installation manual before conducting the installation of this product. Installation must be conducted according to this manual.

3P657596-1

IMPORTANT **Caution** **Local setting for case of Skyair**

- Case of installing to Skyair, make sure the set to local settings after mounted remote sensor.
- SECOND CODE No. change must be conducted according to following table, from “02” to “01”.

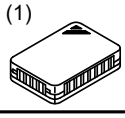
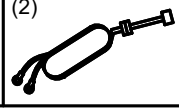
		Default	Changed
Mode No.	FIRST CODE No.	SECOND CODE No.	SECOND CODE No.
15 (25)	10	02	01

Setting detail be refer to 3 Local setting.

- Make sure the no errors be sure to operation test after local setting.

Notes) Comfortable eco-dry control function is not work in case of installing to comfortable eco-dry control function by humidity detection supported models.

Accessories description Check it the following accessories are attached to this product.

Name	Sensor box	Extension cable (2-core, 12m)	Clamp	Mounting screw (M4×16)	Other
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape	(1) 	(2) 	(3) 	(4) 	・Installation manual

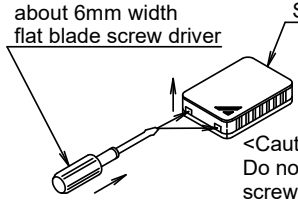
1 Mounting the Sensor box

(1) Selection of mounting location.
Sensor box (1) have thermistor for temperature detection built-in.
Select the mounting location taking the following cautions into account.

1. Where the average temperature of an air conditioned room can be detected.
2. Where it is not exposed to the direct sunlight.
3. Where it is not influenced by other heat sources.
4. Where it is not exposed to the direct discharge air from the air conditioner.
5. Where it is not exposed to the outdoor air infiltrated into the room by opening the door.

(2) Mounting

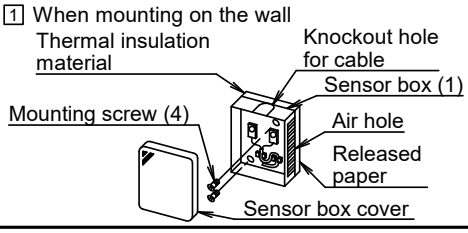
- Remove the cover of the sensor box (1).

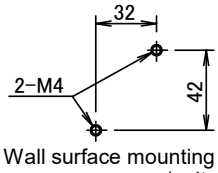


Insert a flat blade screw driver into the sensor box (1) concave part (2 locations). Remove the cover pushing up the hook to the cover of the sensor box (1).

<Cautions>
Do not push the nail powerfully with a narrow flat blade screw driver, because you may break off the hook.

1 When mounting on the wall





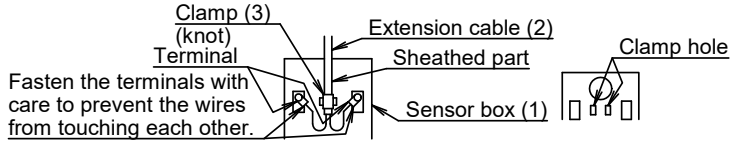
Wall surface mounting holes
(unit : mm)

Figure 1

3P657596-1

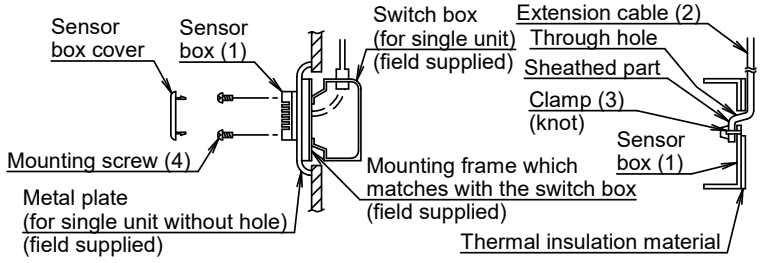
- Break open the knockout hole in the sensor box (1) with a nipper or a similar tool. Pass the extension cable (2) through the hole and fasten the wires to the terminals with screws.
- To avoid tensile force on the terminals, pass the attached clamp (3) through the holes shown in the below right figure and tighten the extension cable (2) with the attached clamp (3) at the sheathed part.
  (The knot must come to the box inside.)

Please cut excess clamp for base after fixing.



- Screw the sensor box (1) to the wall surface with mounting screw (4) (M4×16, 2 places).
  Wall surface mounting holes dimension refer to (Figure 1).
  If the sensor box cannot be screwed to wall surface, tear off the released paper and mount it on the wall surface.

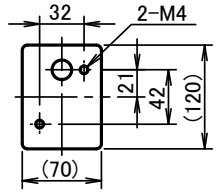
2 For embedded wiring



- Pass the extension cable (2) through the sensor box (1) cable hole and carry out the wiring.
- Pass the attached clamp (3) through the clamp holes and tighten the extension cable (2) at the sheathed part as shown in the upper right figure.

Please cut excess clamp for base after fixing.

- Tap M4 screw holes in the metal plate (field supplied) as shown in the right drawing and mount the switch box on the metal plate. Refer to (Figure 2).

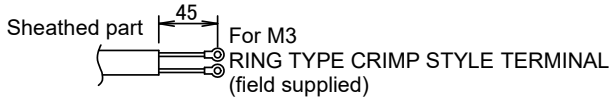


Holes to be tapped in the metal plate on site (unit: mm)

(Figure 2)

<Cautions>

- When wiring the extension cable (2), the air holes of sensor box (1) will not be blocked.
- When the extension cable is longer than necessary, cut it to the appropriate length, peel the insulation, attach the ring type crimp style terminal for M3 (field supplied) and carry out the wiring. The length of insulation to be peeled off is as shown below.
  (Work carefully so that the connector side may not be cut.)



2 Wiring method

Connect the extension cable (2) connector side to the indoor unit PCB (printed circuit board) For connection to the indoor unit, follow the procedure shown below.

⚠Caution

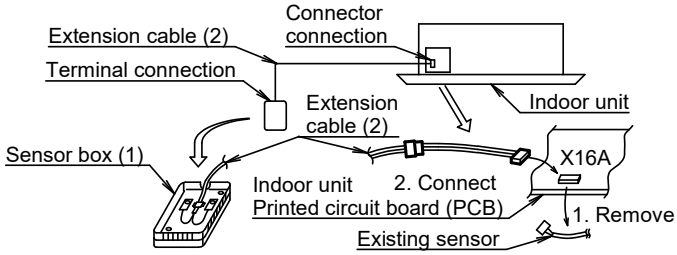
1. Make sure to turn off the power supply before starting the wiring work and do not turn on until all the work is completed.
   Read also the installation manual and the wiring diagram of the indoor unit when carrying out the work.
2. When wiring the extension cable (2), do not pass where the extension cable (2) may be affected by the power line or noise.

3P657596-1

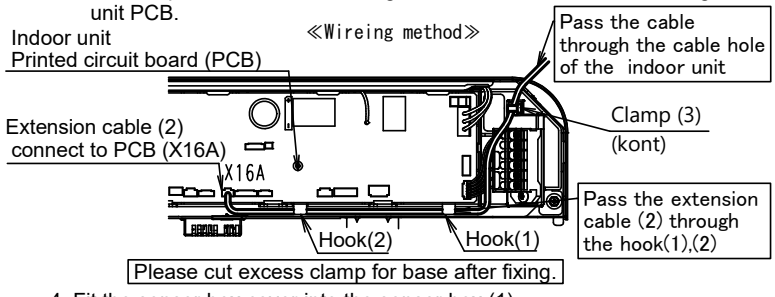
3. Make sure to securely connect the connectors.
   Defective connection may result in incorrect detection of room temperature or malfunction.
4. Do not splice wires.
5. Lay and clamp the extension cable (2) inside the indoor unit switch box just like the low voltage line (cord for remote controller).
   And do not pass where the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box may be affected by the power line (cord for the indoor unit and the other electric line).

<Procedure>

1. When wiring to the indoor unit PCB, remove the existing sensor from PCB (X16A).
2. Extension cable (2) connect to PCB (X16A).



3. Lay and clamp the extension cable (2) inside the indoor unit switch box just like the low voltage wire (remote controller wiring).
   When doing this work, keep a certain distance between the high voltage wiring and the low voltage wiring to avoid error of sensor.
   Provide protection of the existing cable for sensor without touching indoor unit PCB.



4. Fit the sensor box cover into the sensor box (1).

3 Local setting

- Make sure the completing all work of indoor and outdoor unit.
- Make sure the closing switch box cover of indoor unit, casing for outdoor unit and cover for piping.

⚠Set the local setting by remote controller after turn on.

- Local setting set by changing three of “Mode No.”, “FIRST CODE No.”, “SECOND CODE No.”.
- Setting procedure and operating method refer to installing manual attach to remote controller.
  Notes) “Mode No.” setting be done to group together.
  Case of each indoor units setting or setting confirmation, set to number in ( ) of “Mode No.”.
- SECOND CODE No. change must be conducted according to following table, from “02” to “01”.

	Default		Changed
Mode No.(Notes)	FIRST CODE No.	SECOND CODE No.	SECOND CODE No.
15 (25)	10	02	01

- After changed to settings, Turn off and turn on again.

4 Operation test after mounting the sensor

After the sensor is installed and the wiring is completed, conduct cooling and heating operation in order to make sure of detecting temperature accurately (not to be uncooled or unheated).

3P657596-1

3.2 KRCS01-6B Remote Sensor

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

DAIKIN Air Conditioners — **Remote Sensor** — **Installation Manual**

KRCS01-6B

Be sure to read this installation manual before conducting the installation of this product. Installation must be conducted according to this manual.

3P528641-1C

IMPORTANT **Caution** **Local setting for case of Skyair**

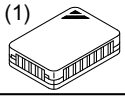
- Case of installing to Skyair, make sure the set to local settings after mounted remote sensor.
  Depending on the model, it may not be necessary to change the settings.

		Default		Changed
Mode No.	FIRST CODE No.	SECOND CODE No.		SECOND CODE No.
15 (25)	10	02	▶	01
15 (25)	10	01	▶	no need
15 (25)	10	--	▶	no need

Setting detail be refer to 3 Local setting .

- Make sure the no errors be sure to operation test after local setting.
  Notes) If you install remote sensor on model that has comfortable eco-dry control function or dehumidification cooling function by humidity detection, these functions will not work.

Accessories description Check it the following accessories are attached to this product.

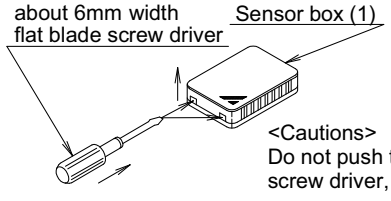
Name	Sensor box	Extension cable (2-core, 12m)	Clamp	Mounting screw (M4×16)	Other
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape	(1) 	(2) 	(3) 	(4) 	・Installation manual

1 Mounting the Sensor box

(1) Selection of mounting location.
Sensor box (1) have thermistor for temperature detection built-in.
Select the mounting location taking the following cautions into account.

1. Where the average temperature of an air conditioned room can be detected.
2. Where it is not exposed to the direct sunlight.
3. Where it is not influenced by other heat sources.
4. Where it is not exposed to the direct discharge air from the air conditioner.
5. Where it is not exposed to the outdoor air infiltrated into the room by opening the door.

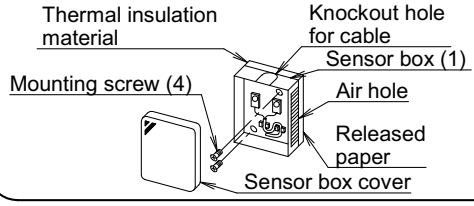
(2) Mounting
- Remove the cover of the sensor box (1).

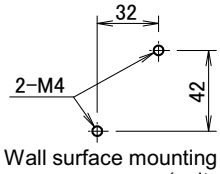


Insert a flat blade screw driver into the sensor box (1) concave part (2 locations). Remove the cover pushing up the hook to the cover of the sensor box (1).

<Cautions>
Do not push the nail powerfully with a narrow flat blade screw driver, because you may break off the hook.

1 When mounting on the wall





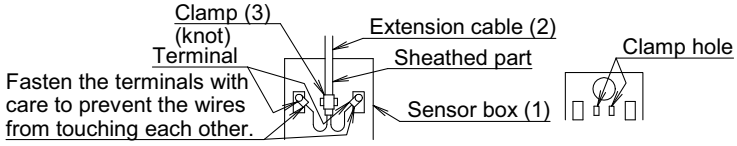
Wall surface mounting holes
(unit : mm)

Figure 1

3P528641-1C

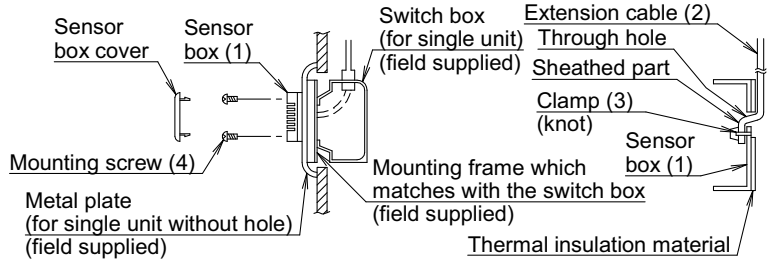
- Break open the knockout hole in the sensor box (1) with a nipper or a similar tool. Pass the extension cable (2) through the hole and fasten the wires to the terminals with screws.
- To avoid tensile force on the terminals, pass the attached clamp (3) through the holes shown in the below right figure and tighten the extension cable (2) with the attached clamp (3) at the sheathed part.
  (The knot must come to the box inside.)

Please cut excess clamp for base after fixing.



- Screw the sensor box (1) to the wall surface with mounting screw (4) (M4×16, 2 places).
  Wall surface mounting holes dimension refer to (Figure 1).
  If the sensor box cannot be screwed to wall surface, tear off the released paper and mount it on the wall surface.

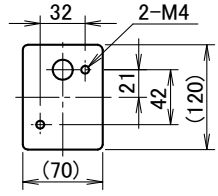
2 For embedded wiring



- Pass the extension cable (2) through the sensor box (1) cable hole and carry out the wiring.
- Pass the attached clamp (3) through the clamp holes and tighten the extension cable (2) at the sheathed part as shown in the upper right figure.

Please cut excess clamp for base after fixing.

- Tap M4 screw holes in the metal plate (field supplied) as shown in the right drawing and mount the switch box on the metal plate. Refer to (Figure 2).

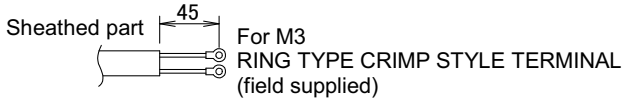


Holes to be tapped in the metal plate on site (unit: mm)

(Figure 2)

<Cautions>

- When wiring the extension cable (2), the air holes of sensor box (1) will not be blocked.
- When the extension cable is longer than necessary, cut it to the appropriate length, peel the insulation, attach the ring type crimp style terminal for M3 (field supplied) and carry out the wiring. The length of insulation to be peeled off is as shown below.
  (Work carefully so that the connector side may not be cut.)



2 Wiring method

Connect the extension cable (2) connector side to the indoor unit PCB (printed circuit board) For connection to the indoor unit, follow the procedure shown below.

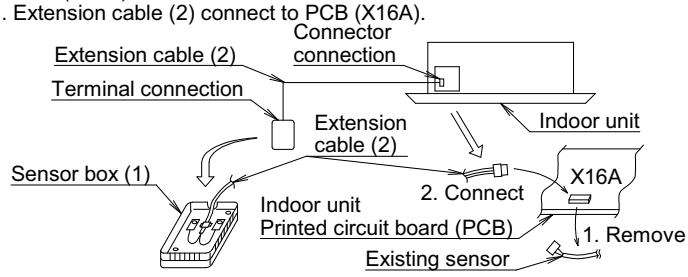
⚠Caution

1. Make sure to turn off the power supply before starting the wiring work and do not turn on until all the work is completed.
   Read also the installation manual and the wiring diagram of the indoor unit when carrying out the work.

2. When wiring the extension cable (2), do not pass where the extension cable (2) may be affected by the power line or noise.
3. Make sure to securely connect the connectors.
   Defective connection may result in incorrect detection of room temperature or malfunction.
4. Do not splice wires.
5. Lay and clamp the extension cable (2) inside the indoor unit switch box just like the low voltage line (cord for remote controller).
   And do not pass where the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box may be affected by the power line (cord for the indoor unit and the other electric line).

<Procedure>

1. When wiring to the indoor unit PCB, remove the existing sensor from PCB (X16A).
2. Extension cable (2) connect to PCB (X16A).



3. Lay and clamp the extension cable (2) inside the indoor unit switch box just like the low voltage wire (remote controller wiring).
   When doing this work, keep a certain distance between the high voltage wiring and the low voltage wiring to avoid error of sensor.
   Provide protection of the existing cable for sensor without touching indoor unit PCB.
4. Fit the sensor box cover into the sensor box (1).

3 Local setting

- Case of installing to Skyair, make sure the set to local settings after mounted remote sensor.
  Depending on the model, it may not be necessary to change the settings.
- Make sure the completing all work of indoor and outdoor unit.
- Make sure the closing switch box cover of indoor unit, casing for outdoor unit and cover for piping.

⚠Set the local setting by remote controller after turn on.

- Local setting set by changing three of “Mode No.”, “FIRST CODE No.”, “SECOND CODE No.”.
- Setting procedure and operating method refer to installing manual attach to remote controller.

Notes) “Mode No.” setting be done to group together.
Case of each indoor units setting or setting confirmation, set to number in ( ) of “Mode No.”.

		Default		Changed
Mode No.(Notes)	FIRST CODE No.	SECOND CODE No.		SECOND CODE No.
15 (25)	10	02	▶	01
15 (25)	10	01	▶	no need
15 (25)	10	--	▶	no need

- After changed to settings, Turn off and turn on again.

4 Operation test after mounting the sensor

After the sensor is installed and the wiring is completed, conduct cooling and heating operation in order to make sure of detecting temperature accurately (not to be uncooled or unheated).

3P528641-1C

3P528641-1C

3.3 KRCS01-1B / KRCS01-4B / KRCS01-2UA Remote Sensor

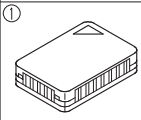
Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Notes

- Please check applicable kit model name by catalog etc..
- When installed on Skyair Round-flow type models, the dehumidification by detection of humidity does not operate.

Accessories

Check the following accessories.

Name	Remote sensor (sensor box)	Extension cable (2-core, 12m)	Clamp	Installation manual (this drawing)	Mounting screw (M4X16)
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 
Quantity	X 1	X 1	X 2	X 1	X 2

1 Mounting

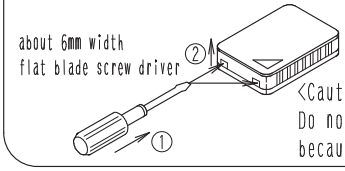
1)Selection of mounting location.

The thermistor for temperature detection is incorporated into the remote sensor. Select the mounting location taking the following cautions into account.

① Where the average temperature of an air conditioned room can be detected.
② Where it is not exposed to the direct sunlight.
③ Where it is not influenced by other heat sources.
④ Where it is not exposed to the direct discharge air from the air conditioner.
⑤ Where it is not exposed to the outdoor air infiltrated into the room by opening the door.

2)Mounting

- Remove the cover of the sensor box.

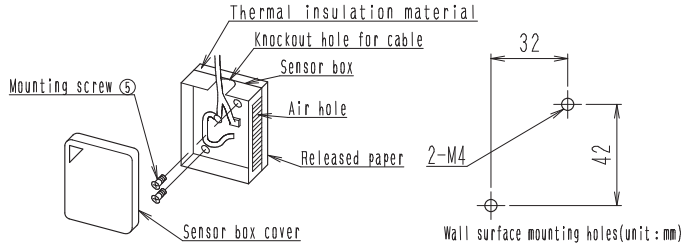


① Insert a flat blade screw driver into the sensor box concave part (2 locations).
② Remove the cover pushig up the nail to the cover of the sensor box.

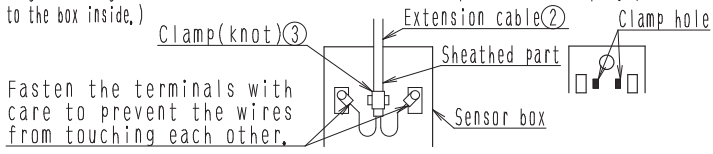
<Cautions>
Do not push the nail powerfully with a narrow flat blade screw driver, because you may break off the nail.

C: 3K019189D

(a)When mounting on the wall

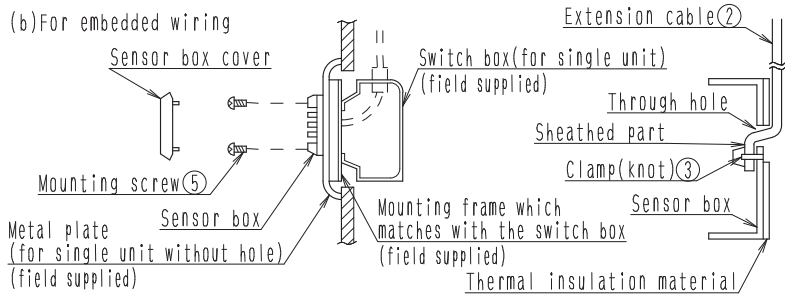


- Break open the knockout hole in the sensor box with a nipper or a similar tool. Pass the extension wires through the hole and fasten the wires to the terminals with screws.
- To avoid tensile force on the terminals, pass the attached clamp through the holes shown in the below right figure and tighten the extension cable with the attached clamp at the sheathed part. (The knot must come to the box inside.)

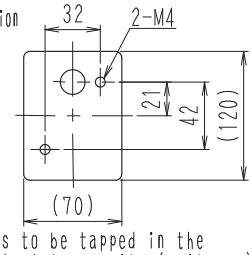


- Screw the sensor box securely to the wall surface with screws M4X16(2 places).
  If the sensor box cannot be screwed to wall surface, tear off the released paper and mount it on the wall surface.

(b)For embedded wiring

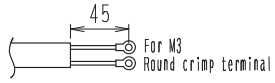


- Pass the extension cable through the switch box cable hole and carry out the wiring.
- Pass the attached clamp though the clamp holes and tighten the extension cable at the sheathed part as shown in the upper right figure.
- Tap M4 screw holes in the metal plate (field supplied) as shown in the right drawing and mount the switch box on the metal plate.



<Cautions>

- When wiring the extension cable, the air holes will not be blocked.
- When the extension cable is longer than necessary, cut it to the appropriate length, peel the insulation, attach the round crimp terminal for M3 (field supplied) and carry out the wiring. The length of insulation to be peeled off is as shown.
  (Work carefully so that the connector side may not be cut.)



C: 3K019189D

② Wiring method

Connect the extension cable connector side to the indoor unit PCB (printed circuit board)
For connection to the indoor unit, follow the procedure shown below.

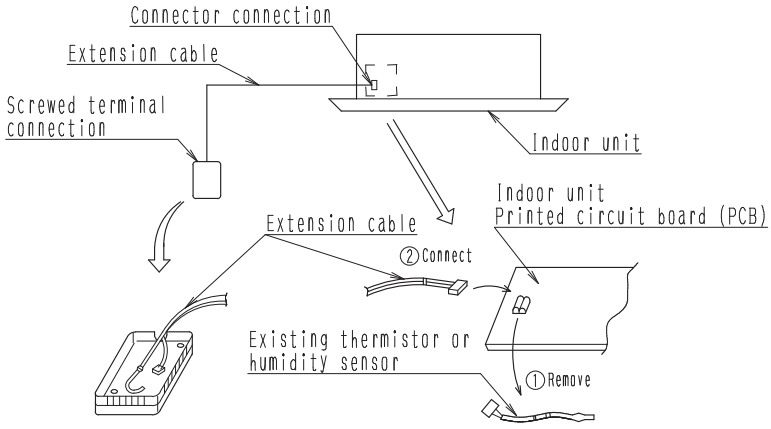
⚠ Caution

1) Make sure to turn off the power supply before starting the wiring work and do not turn on until all the work is completed.
   Read also the installation manual and the wiring diagram of the indoor unit when carrying out the work.
2) When wiring the extension cable, do not pass where the extension cable may be affected by the power line or noise.
3) Make sure to securely connect the connectors.
   Defective connection may result in incorrect detection of room temperature or malfunction.
4) Do not splice wires.
5) Since the connector marking of the thermistor for detection of inlet air temperature differ depending on the indoor unit type, make sure to check the indoor unit wiring diagram and follow it correctly.
6) Lay and clamp the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box just like the low voltage line(cord for remote controller).
   And do not pass where the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box may be affected by the power line(cord for the indoor unit and the other electric line).

<Procedure>

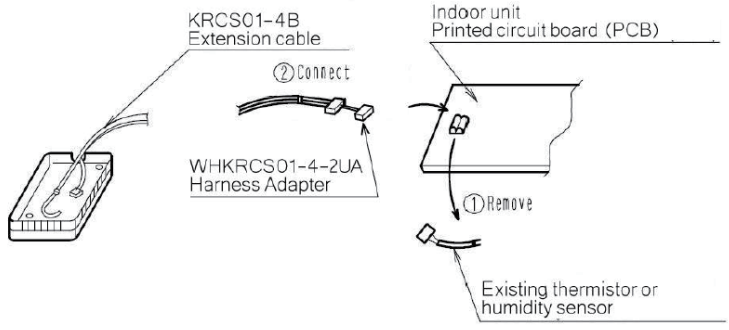
1) When wiring to the indoor unit PCB, remove the existing thermistor (for detection of inlet air temperature) and then connect the extension cable.
When doing this work, make sure to check the symbol of connecting address on the PCB whether it is correct or not referring to the wiring diagram.

<For KRCS01-1B/4B>



<For KRCS01-2UA>

KRCS01-2UA includes Wiring Harness Adaptor WHKRCS01-4-2A that connects Extension Cable KRCS01-4B to the X4A connector on the FXTQ_TA PCB:



Part #	Description
KRCS01-2UA	**New Remote Sensor Kit**
KRCS01-4B	Existing Remote Sensor
WHKRCS01-4-2U4A	New Wiring Harness Adaptor

2) Lay and clamp the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box just like the existing thermistor.
When doing this work, keep a certain distance between the high voltage wiring and the low voltage wiring to avoid error of sensor.
Provide protection of the existing cable for thermistor without affecting other components.

3) Fit the sensor box cover into the sensor box.

③ Operation test after mounting the sensor

Conduct cooling and heating operation test after the sensor is mounted and the wiring is completed.

3.4 KRCSH2018-01 Button Sensor Kit

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

MODEL COMPATIBILITY:
Compatible with the following indoor unit models:

VRV and ***VRV*** Life	CXTQ, FXAQ, FXDQ, FXHQ, FXLQ, FXNQ, FXEQ, FXFQ, FXMQ, FXTQ, FXSQ, FXUQ, FXZQ
SkyAir	FAQ, FBQ, FCQ, FHQ, FTQ
Multi-zone and Single-Zone	FDMQ, FFQ

SPECIFICATIONS:

Model	KRCSH2018-01
Description	Button Sensor
Weight	0.31 oz (sensor only)
Wiring Length	40 ft
Thermistor	Rt = 20k ohms +/-1% @ 77°or 25°C B 25/50 = 3900 K +/-1% Dissipation Constant ~ 2.5 mW/°C
Self-Heat Compensator	Internal Series Resistor = 140 ohms +/- 1%
Housing	Gray ABS/PC UL94 V-0
Cover	Aluminum (Paintable) Tumble Finish
Spring Fingers	Stainless Steel
Operating Temperature	34 to 125°F (1.1 to 51.6°C)
Storage Temperature	-40 to 140°F (-40 to 60°C)
Humidity	0 to 95% RH non-condensing
Mounting Hole	3/4" Diameter
Compliance	RoHS & REACH Compliant

PRODUCT IMAGE:

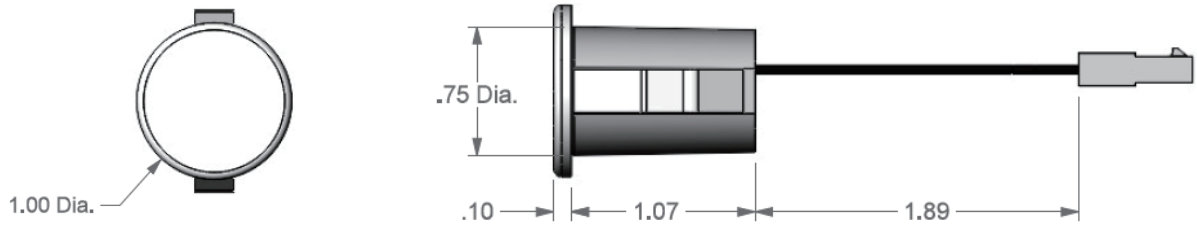
FEATURES:

- Extend the sensing location by replacing the return air thermistor in the indoor unit
- Compact and concealable design
- Paintable surface to match wall color (Note: when painting the surface of the sensor, be sure to avoid thick/multiples coats to maintain the accuracy of the sensor)
- Sensor, plenum rated cable and wiring harness adaptors are included in the kit

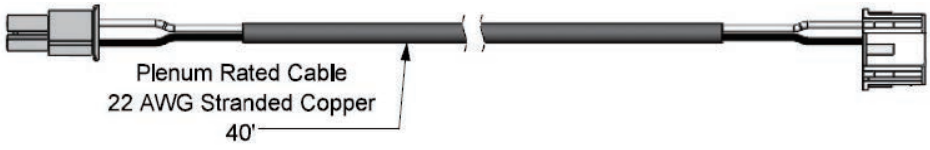
Items	Button sensor	4-pin plenum rated wiring cable	2-pin harness adaptor	3-pin harness adaptor
Quantity	1	1	1	1
Image				

DIMENSIONS:

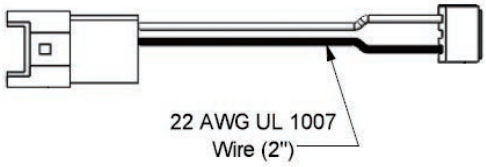
- Button Sensor



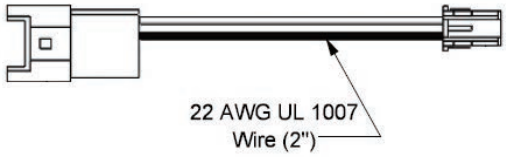
- 4-pin Plenum Rated Cable



- 3-pin harness adaptor (included)

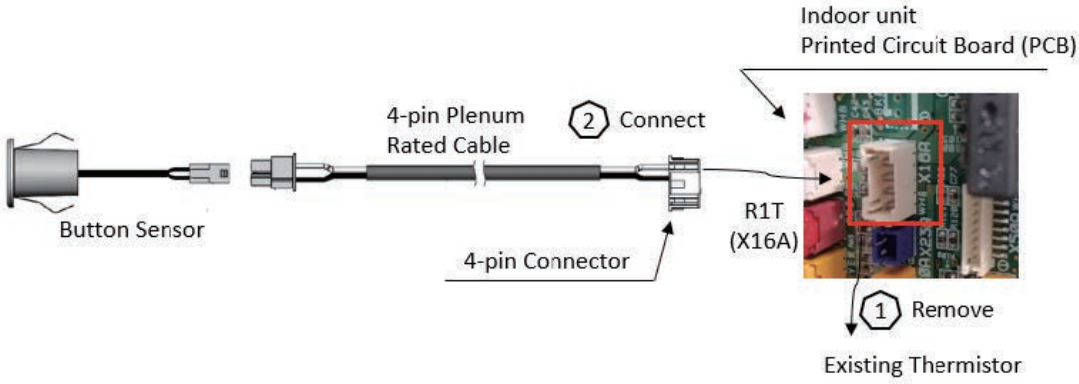


- 2-pin harness adaptor (included)

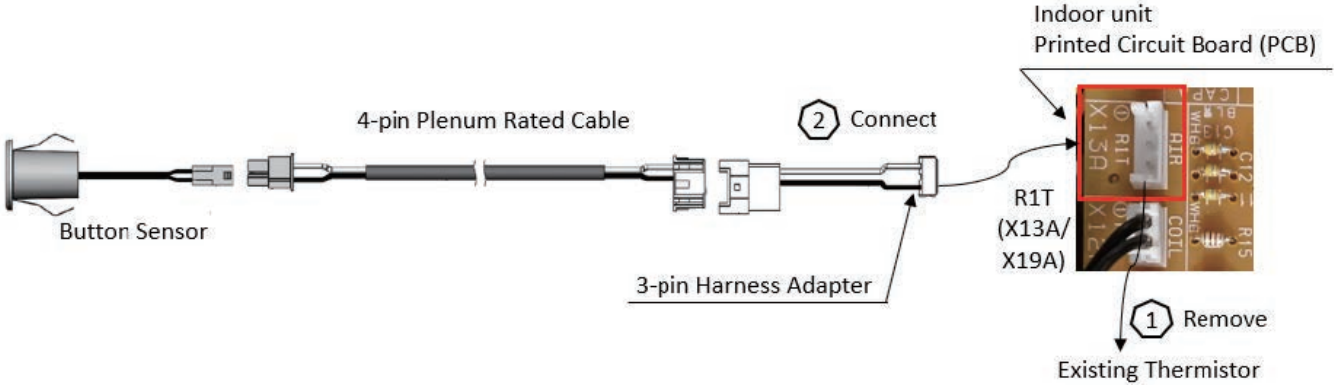


WIRING DIAGRAM:

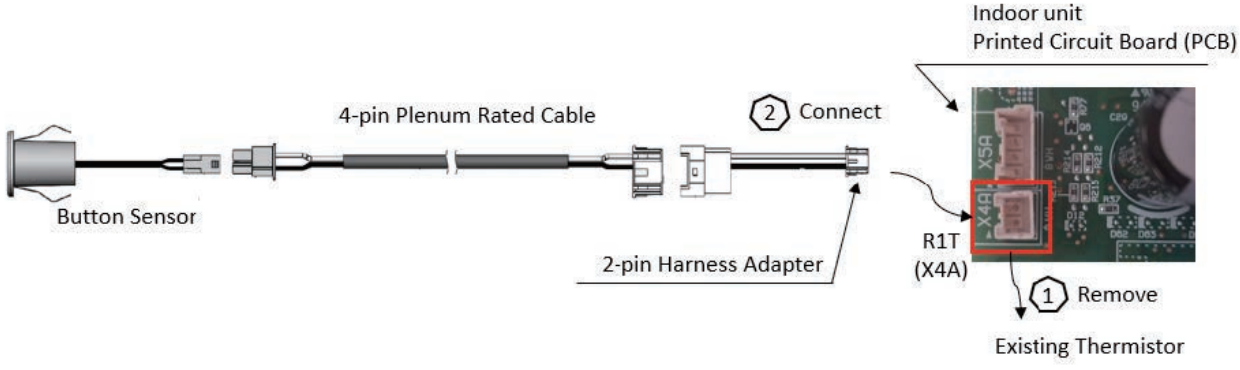
- For indoor units that use the 4-pin connector (FXEQ_PVJU, FXFQ_TVJU, FXMQ_PB, FXSQ_TAVJU, FXUQ_PVJU, FXZQ_TAVJU, FCQ_TAVJU, FBQ_PVJU, FFQ, FDMQ), use only the 4-pin Plenum rated cable to connect between the button sensor and the indoor unit PCB. The 2-pin harness adaptor and the 3-pin harness adaptor are not needed for these indoor units.



- For indoor units that use the 3-pin connector (FXAQ_PVJU, FAQ_TAVJU, FXDQ_MVJU, FXHQ_MVJU, FXLQ_MVJU9, FXNQ_MVJU9, FXMQ_M, FHQ_PVJU), use the 4-pin Plenum rated cable and the 3-pin harness adaptor to connect between the button sensor and the indoor unit PCB. The 2-pin harness adaptor is not needed for these indoor units.



- For indoor units that use the 2-pin connector (FXTQ_TAVJU, CXTQ, FTQ_TAVJUD), use the 4-pin Plenum rated cable and the 2-pin harness adaptor to connect between the button sensor and the indoor unit PCB. The 3-pin harness adaptor is not needed for these indoor units.



3.5 KRP1H98A Installation Box for Adaptor PCB

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

DAIKIN AIR CONDITIONER Installation box for adapter PCB. Installation manual

KRP1H98A

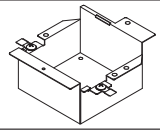
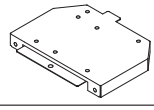
READ THESE INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLATION.
KEEP THIS MANUAL IN A HANDY PLACE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE. 2P447067-1

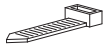
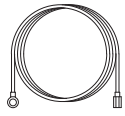
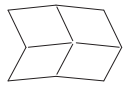
Caution

- This box is mountable on the ceiling mounted cassette type (round-flow type) unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this box on the unit listed in the table shown bottom.
- When mounting the box, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adapter PCB (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KRP1H98A	SPLIT	FCQ-TAVJU (When using standard deco panel)
	VRV	FXFQ-TVJU (When using standard deco panel)

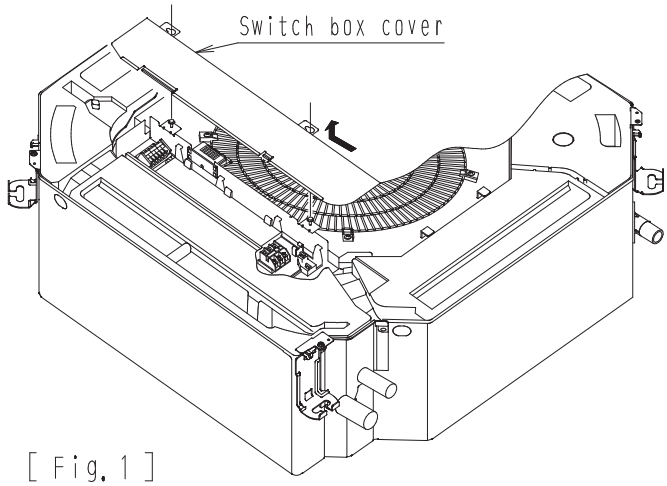
Accessories Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

Name	Adapter box	Adapter box cover	Screw(1)	Screw(2)
Quantity	1PC.	1PC.	2PCS.	1PC.
Shape			 M4×12	 M4×8

Name	Clamp	Earth wire	Screw for earth wire	Installation manual
Quantity	8PCS.	1PC.	1PC.	1PC.
Shape				

1 Mounting the adapter box

《Preparation before wiring》
Remove the switch box cover. (Fig. 1)



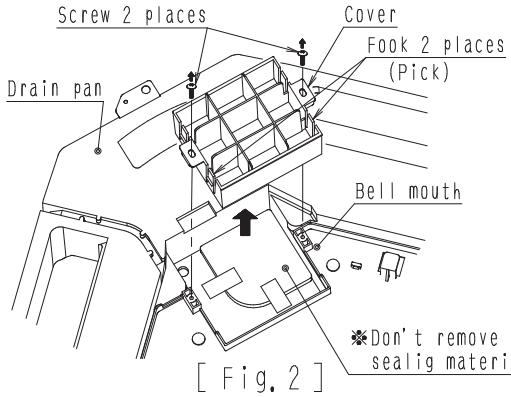
[Fig. 1]

※ The figure mentions FCQ~TAVJU as a representative.

C: 2P447067-1

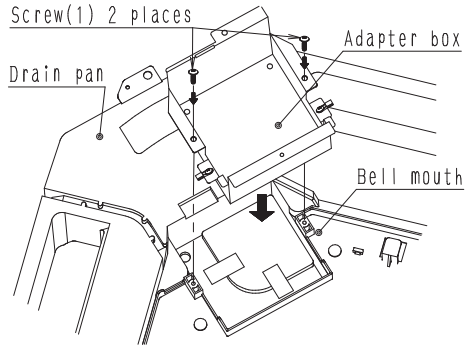
《Mounting the adapter box》

①Remove the cover, when the cover is attached. (Fig. 2)



[Fig. 2]

②Fix the box with the attached fixing screws (1) at two places. (Fig. 3)



[Fig. 3]

※ The figure mentions FCQ~TAVJU as a representative.

② Mounting the adapter PCB

《How to mount the adapter PCB》

①Connect the wiring to the adapter PCB.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the PCB first.)

● See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for where to connect the wiring.

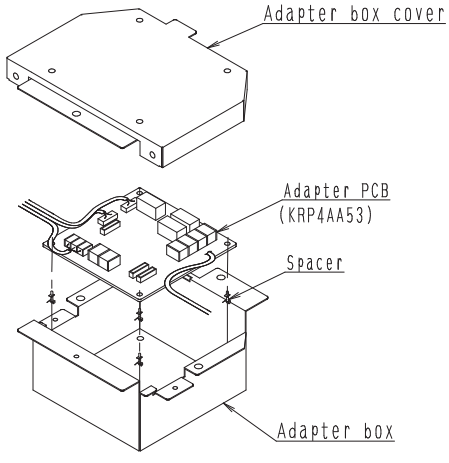
②Mount the adapter PCB on the adapter box and the adapter box cover.

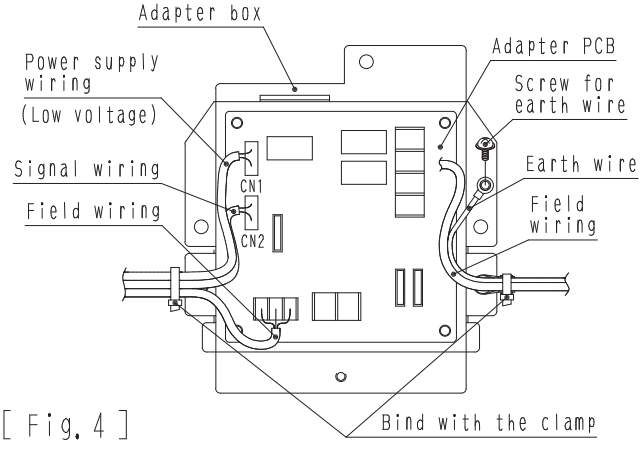
Adapter PCB	Place where to mount
KRP4A(A)53 KRP2A52・KRP2A62	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box. (Fig. 4)
EKRP1C11・KRP1C63	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 5)
KRP1BA57	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 6)

● For the mounting position of the adapter PCB, see the instruction attached to the adapter PCB.

③Fix the earth wire with the attached fixing screw for earth wire. (Fig. 4)

④Bind the wiring from the adapter PCB with the attached clamp. (Fig. 4~6)

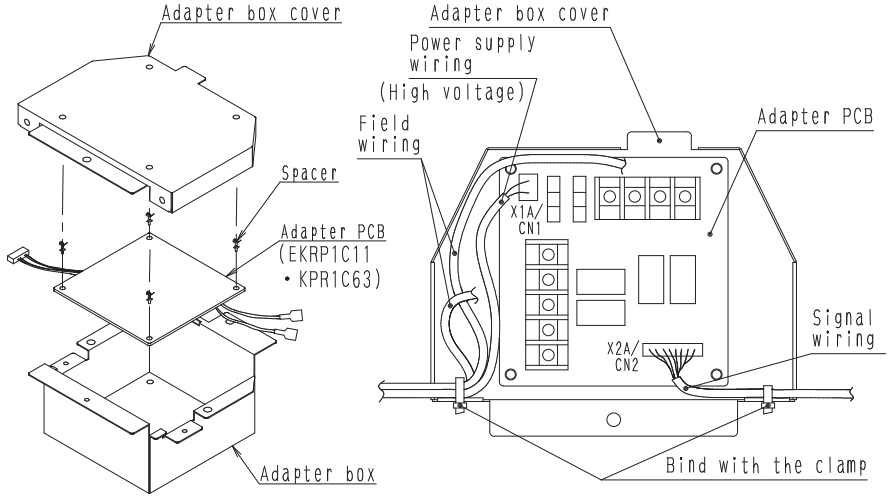




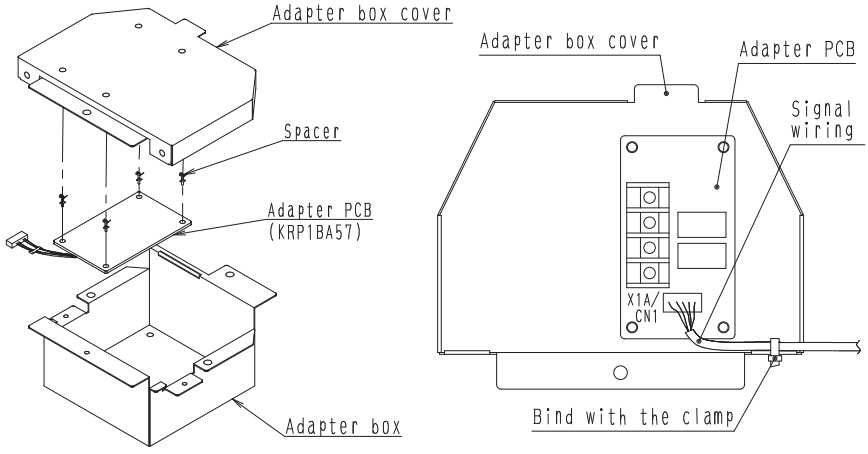
[Fig. 4]

Continues on back side

C: 2P447067-1



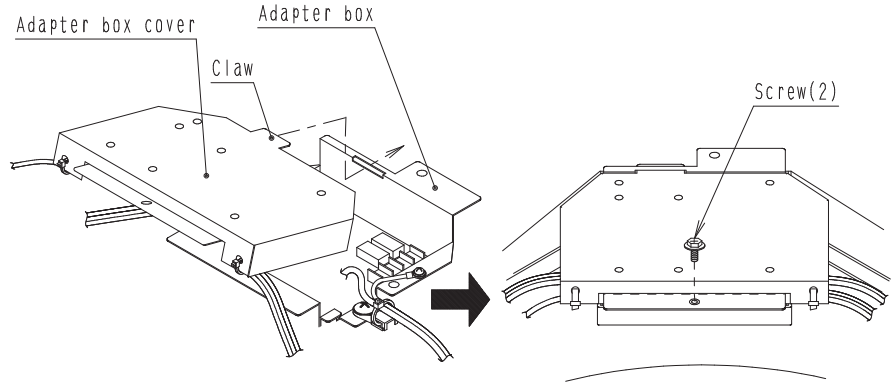
[Fig. 5]



[Fig. 6]

⑤ After putting the claw of the cover into the hole of the box, fix them with the attached screw (2). (Fig. 7)

● Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.



[Fig. 7]

C: 2P447068-1

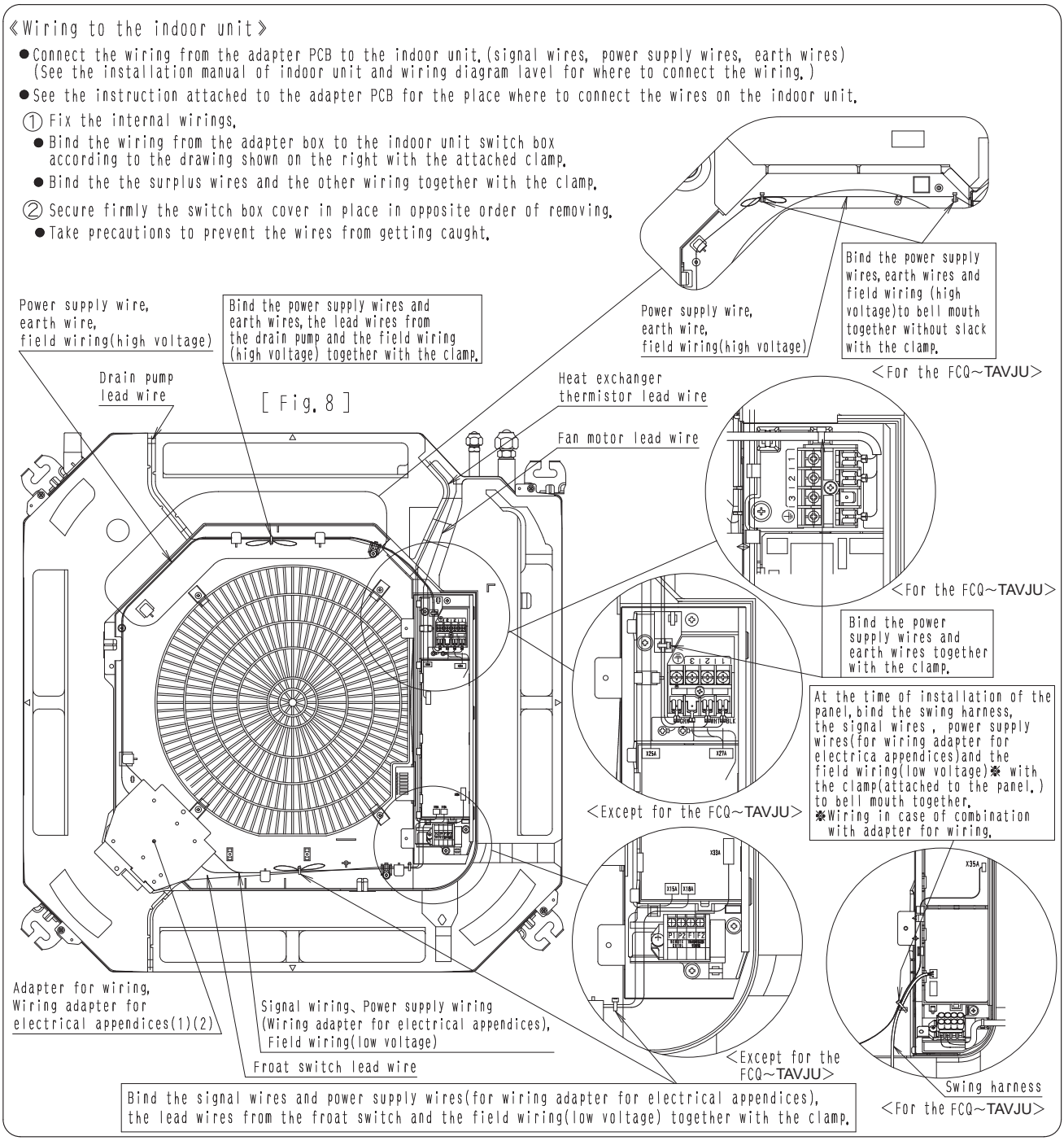
❸ How to handle the wiring

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

- Connect the wiring from the adapter PCB to the indoor unit. (signal wires, power supply wires, earth wires)
  (See the installation manual of indoor unit and wiring diagram lavel for where to connect the wiring.)
- See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.

① Fix the internal wirings.
- Bind the wiring from the adapter box to the indoor unit switch box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp.
- Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

② Secure firmly the switch box cover in place in opposite order of removing.
- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.



C: 2P447068-1

3.6 BKS26A Installation Box for Adaptor Print Circuit Board

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

OPTIONAL ADAPTOR FOR OUTDOOR UNIT MOUNTING PLATE KIT FOR VRV

READ THE INSTRUCTIONS PROVIDED HEREIN CAREFULLY IN ADVANCE AND INSTALL THIS KIT CORRECTLY.

BKS26A 1P508774-1A

PLEASE READ THESE "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLING

- The following two conventions are used to indicate and classify precautions in this manual. Always heed the important safety information provided with them.

⚠ WARNING	Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.
⚠ CAUTION	Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

- Make sure that the unit operates properly after completing the installation, and explain to the customer how to operate the unit and keep it maintained. Also, advise the customer that they should keep this installation manual along with other manual for future reference.
- At the time of the installation, read the installation manual of the unit along with the electric diagram.

⚠ WARNING

Ask your dealer or qualified personnel to carry out installation work.
Do not attempt to install the air conditioner yourself. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Install the kit in accordance with the instructions in this installation manual.
Improper installation may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to use only the specified accessories and parts for the installation work.
Failure to use the specified parts may cause the kit to fail or result in electric shocks or fire.

Make certain that all electrical work is carried out by qualified personnel according to the local laws and regulations and this installation manual, using a separate circuit.
Insufficient capacity of the power supply circuit or improper electrical construction may lead to electric shocks or fire.

Turn off the unit before touching electrical parts.
An electric shock may be received if charged parts come in contact with humans.

Be sure to use the specified wires and fix them securely so that no external force resulting from the wires will be imposed on any terminal connections.
Improper connections or securing of wires may result in abnormal heat build-up or fire.

Position the wires so that the cover will not rise when wiring the power supply.
Make sure that the cover is attached securely. If the cover is attached improperly, electric shocks or fire may result.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install this kit in the following locations:

1. Where there is a high concentration of mineral oil spray or vapour for example a kitchen.
2. Where corrosive gas, such as sulfurous acid gas, is produced, acid or alkaline steam gathers, or the air contains a high salt content, such as places by the sea. Parts may be corroded and fall off.
3. Near machinery emitting electromagnetic waves or in places with great voltage fluctuations, such as factories.
4. Where flammable gas may leak, in places with carbon fiber or ignitable dust suspensions in the air or with volatile flammables such as paint thinner or gasoline, or in vehicles or vessels. Fire may result if gas leakage occurs and stays around the kit.
5. Where small animals intrude, fallen leaves gather, or weeds grow. Small animals making contact with electrical parts can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire.

Caution

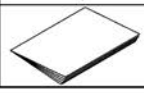
- This product is mountable on VRV outdoor unit. Confirm the model name of the outdoor unit in the table on the right (List of combination) before mounting this product.
- When mounting, see also the installation manuals of a main unit of an outdoor unit and Optional adaptor for outdoor unit.

Kit name	Model name of the outdoor unit
BKS26A	RXQ14 ~ 20A RXYQ14 ~ 20A RXUQ10 ~ 20A

Accessories

- Check if the following accessories are included in the unit.

<Attention>
Do not throw away the accessories until the installation work is completed.

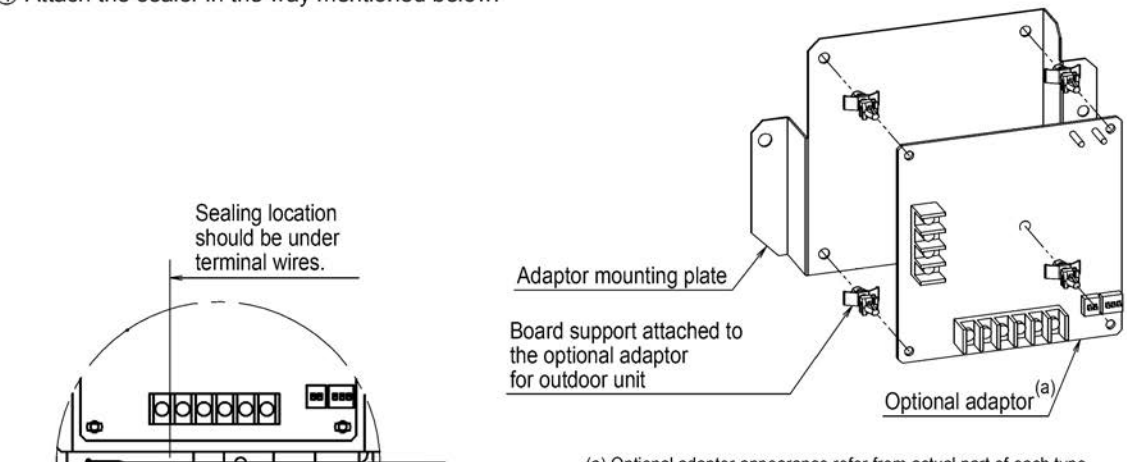
Name	Adaptor mounting plate	Screw for mounting	Installation manual	Sealing
No.of pcs	1	2	1	1
Shape		 M4×8		

1P508774-1A

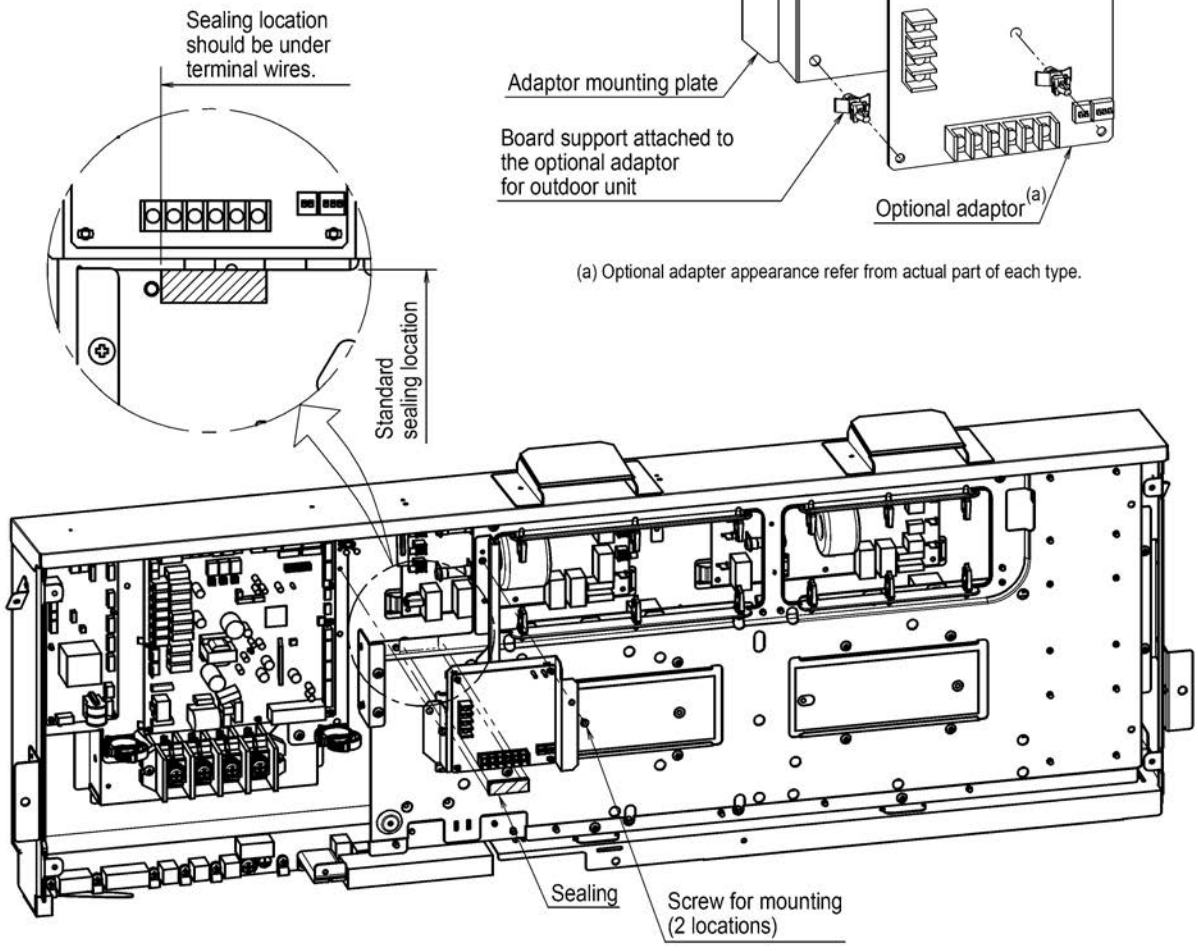
❶ Installation

① Remove the front panels (Middle), (Upper) of unit and a cover of the control box.
② Mount the optional adaptor for outdoor unit to the adaptor mounting plate in the way mentioned in the fig. below.
- Use the PCB support attached to the adaptor.
- Pay attention to the mounting direction of the adaptor.
(Refer to the arrow in the fig.)

③ Mount the adaptor mounting plate to the control box in the way mentioned in the fig. below.
④ Attach the sealer in the way mentioned below.



(a) Optional adapter appearance refer from actual part of each type.



<Attention>
Mount with care in order not to take the wire in.

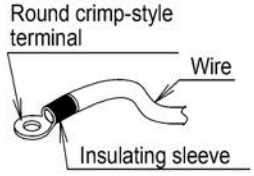
1P508774-1A

❷ Electric wiring

<Attention>

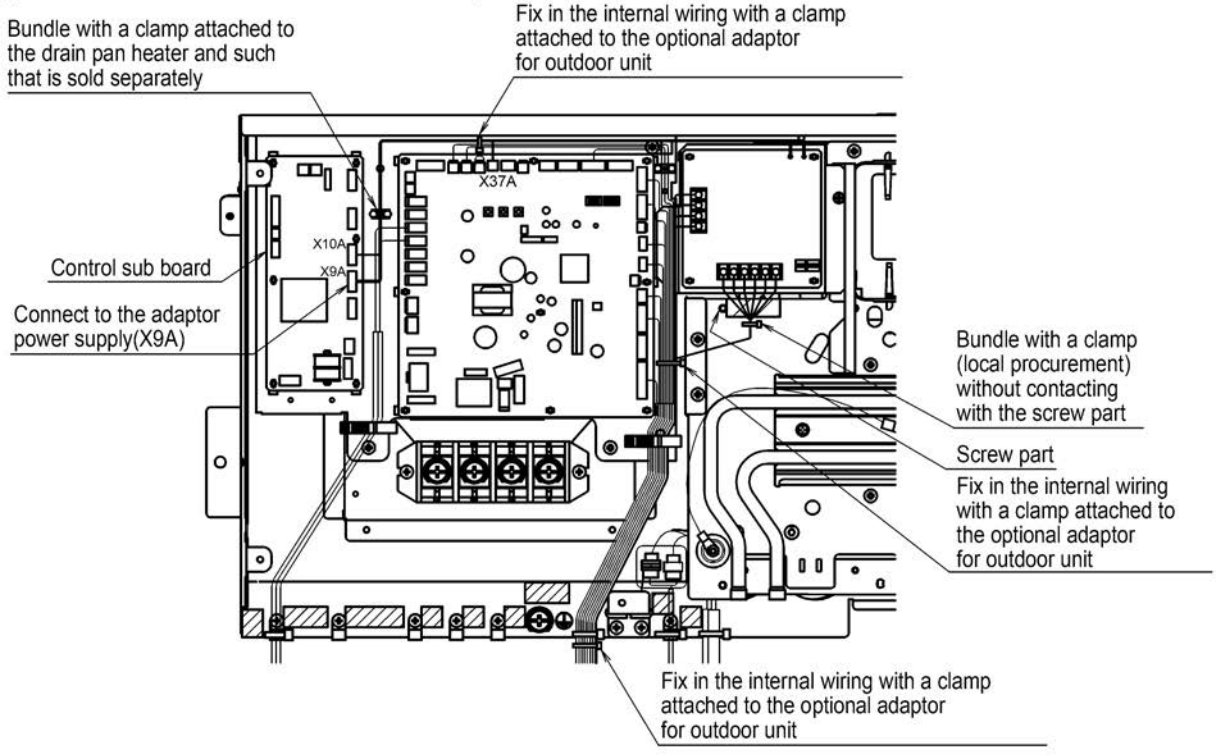
- Be sure to use a round crimp-style terminal to connect to a terminal block. Attach insulating sleeve and the like to insulate the crimping part.
- Wiring must be carried out with predetermined wire and connect and fix securely so that the external force does not apply to the terminal.
- Use an appropriate screwdriver to tighten terminal screws.
  The screw head may be damaged or the terminal screws may not be tightened properly if a screwdriver is too small.
- Do not tighten the terminal screws excessively or the screws may be damaged.
  Refer to the table below for the required tightening torque values of the terminal screws.

Optional adaptor	Tightening torque(N•m)
The external control adaptor (DTA104A~)	0.6 ~ 1.0
DⅢ-NET expander adaptor (DTA109A~)	
DⅢ-NET/Modbus Communication adaptor (DTA116A~)	



① Connect the wire to the connector and the terminal block.
For selecting and connecting wire, see the installation manuals attached to the adaptor and the wiring diagram attached in the back of the Control box cover.
② Fix the wire with clamps attached to the adaptor in the way mentioned below.
• Fix the wire without contacting with the electric components other than the connecting part.
③ Put back the cover of the control box, panels (middle and upper).

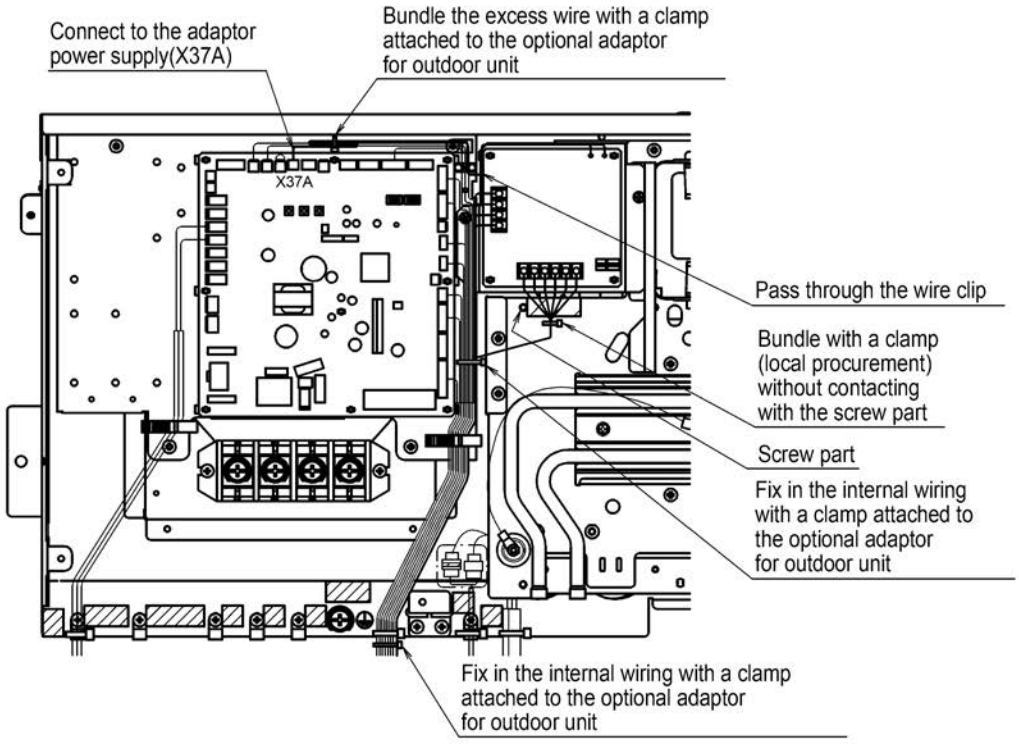
[With the control sub board]



※ Only DⅢ-NET/Modbus Communication adaptor (DTA116A~) is not apply.

1P508774-1A

[Without the control sub board]



1P508774-1A

3.7 KRP1BB101 Installation Box for Adaptor PCB

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Daikin Air Conditioner — Installation Box for Adaptor PCB — Installation Manual

KRP1BB101

Read this installation manual carefully before installing this product and be sure to install it correctly.

Read these Safety Precautions carefully before performing installation work.

- The precautions shown here are classified into the following two types. Observe all of the following, as each contains important information regarding safety.

⚠Warning	Improper handling has a high probability of serious injury or death.
⚠Caution	Improper handling has a possibility of injury or property damage. There may be serious consequences depending on the situation.

- After completing the installation work, perform test operation to check that there are no abnormalities. Additionally, keep this manual in a handy place for future reference.

⚠Warning

Installation should be performed by a dealer or specialist.
Failure to do so may result in water leaks, electric shock, fire, etc.

Follow this instruction manual to ensure installation work is performed correctly.
Failure to do so may result in water leaks, electric shock, fire, etc.

Make sure to always use accessories and parts of the proper specifications when performing installation work. Failure to do so may result in water leaks, electric shock, fire, etc.

Make certain that all electrical work is carried out by qualified personnel according to the applicable legislation (note 1) and this installation manual, using a separate circuit.
In addition, even if the wiring is short, make sure to use a wiring that has sufficient length and never connect additional wiring to make the length sufficient.
Insufficient capacity of the power supply circuit or improper electrical construction may lead to electric shocks or a fire.
(note 1) Applicable legislation means "All international, national and local directives, laws, regulations and/or codes which are relevant and applicable for a certain product or domain".

Make sure that the power is disconnected before touching electrical components.
There is a danger of electric shock when touching the live part.

Wiring should be securely connected using the designated wiring and securely fixed so that no external force is applied to the terminal connection. Failure to do so may result in the generation of heat, fire, etc.

Wiring should be set so that structural items such as the control box lid is not lifted, and the lid should be securely installed. Failure to do so may result in the terminal generating heat, electric shock, fire, etc.

⚠Caution

Do not install in the following locations.
1. Locations where mineral oils can enter the system, or locations where there is a large amount of oil spatter or steam, such as kitchens.
   Plastic parts deteriorate, which may result in parts falling or water leaks.
2. Locations where corrosive gases such as sulfurous gases are generated.
   Copper piping and brazed parts corrode, which may result in refrigerant leaks.
3. Locations containing machinery that generates electromagnetic waves.
   Malfunctions in the control system may occur, making normal operation impossible.
4. Locations where there may be flammable gas, locations with carbon fiber or other flammable dust floating, or locations where volatile materials such as thinners or gasoline are handled.
   If there is a gas leak and it accumulates around the unit, it may result in ignition.

Seal both the low current wiring through hole and high current wiring through hole with putty or thermal insulation material (field supply). Entry of small animals such as insects may cause current leakage or malfunction.

Notes

- For this product, one item is required for each adaptor.
- Refer to the installation manuals attached to the indoor unit and adaptor.

Product name	Indoor unit
KRP1BB101	FFQ, FXZQ type FXD, FXDQ type FTQ, FXTQ type

Accessories

Check the following accessories are included in this product.

Name	Installation box	Lid of installation box	Clamp	Cord sticker
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	3 pcs.	3 pcs.
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④ 

Name	Screw	Screw	Spacer	Blind bush	Installation manual
Quantity	2 pcs.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape	⑤  M4x16	⑥  M4x12	⑦ 	⑧ 	⑨ 

Applicable adapter

Adaptor	Kit name		
	In case of FFQ, FXZQ type	In case of FXD, FXDQ type	In case of FXTQ, FTQ type
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1B(A)57	KRP1B56	KRP1C75
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(1)	KRP2A52, KRP2A62	KRP2A53	————
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(2)	KRP4A(A)53	KRP4A54, KRP4A74	KRP4A74
External control adaptor for outdoor units	DTA104A52, DTA104A62	DTA104A53	DTA104A53

Processing method for the wiring through hole

- After connecting the wiring, in order to prevent the entry of small animals such as insects, block both the low current wiring through hole and high current wiring through hole with putty or thermal insulation material (field supply) so that there are no gaps. (Refer to Figure 1)
  (If small animals such as insects enter the equipment, they may cause a short circuit in the control box.)

- In the case of an adapter PCB which does not connect to high current wiring, remove the cable bush which is installed on the installation box ①, and install the blind bush ⑧. (Refer to Figure 2)

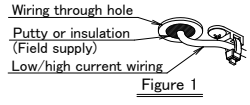


Figure 1

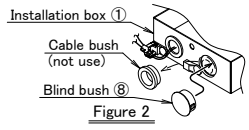


Figure 2

<In case of FFQ, FXZQ type>

❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

1. Attach the adapter
   Attach the adaptor in the installation box ① by the PCB supports.
   (PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)
   (1) Detach the aluminum tape of the installation box ① to insert the PCB supports. (Refer to Figure 1)
   Adaptor
   KRP1B(A)57 ---------- Detach the aluminum tapes A.
   KRP2A52, KRP2A62, KRP4A(A)53, DTA104A52, DTA104A62 --- Detach the aluminum tapes B.
   (2) Install the adapter PCB on the installation box ① using the PCB supports (4 pcs.). (Refer to Figure 2)
   (3) Carry out wiring to the adapter PCB before installing on the installation box ①.
   (4) Pass the high current wiring through the wiring through hole (high current), and pass the low current wiring through the wiring through hole (low current).
   (5) Separate the high current wiring and the low current wiring with a distance of 50 mm or more, then place them.
2. Attach the lid of installation box
   (1) Insert spacers ⑦ (2 pcs.) into the holes in the thermal insulation material affixed to the lid of installation box ②. (Refer to Figure 3).
   (2) Using screws ⑤ (2 pcs.), install the lid of installation box ② with inserted spacers ⑦ on the indoor unit. (Refer to Figure 4).
   (3) If installing 2 adapter PCBs, install the second PCB. (Refer to Figure 4)

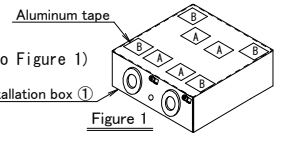


Figure 1

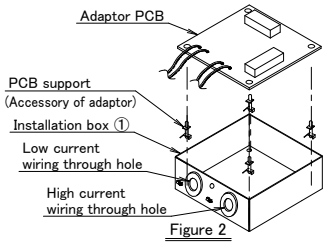


Figure 2

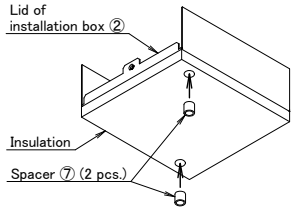


Figure 3

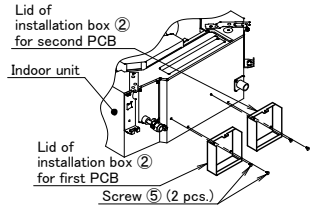


Figure 4

1P567551-1

3. Attach the installation box
Attach the installation box ① into the lid of installation box ② with the screws ⑥. (Refer to Figure 5)

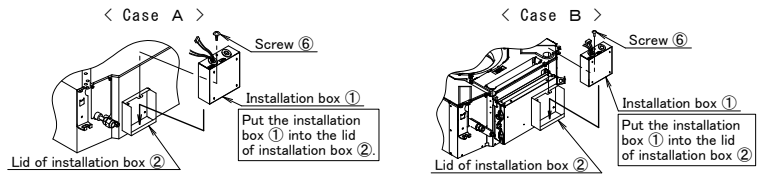
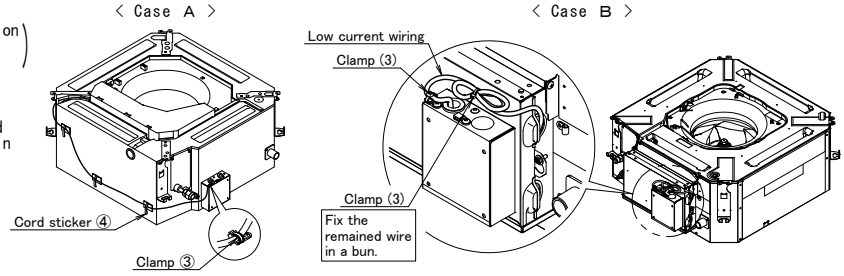


Figure 5

❷ Method of wiring processing

1. Connect wires with the control box. (Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)
2. After connecting wires with the control box, clamp wires by using the cord sticker ④ and the clamp ③ as shown in the right drawing.



<In case of FXD,FXDQ type>

❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

1. Attach the adapter
(1) Detach the aluminum tape of the installation box ① to insert the PCB supports. (Refer to Figure 1)
Adaptor
KRP1B56 ---------- Detach the aluminum tapes A.
KRP2A53,KRP4A54,KRP4A74,DTA104A53 --- Detach the aluminum tapes B.
Attach the adaptor in the installation box ① by the PCB supports.
(PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)
(2) Install the adapter PCB on the installation box ① using the PCB supports (4 pcs.). (Refer to Figure 2)
(3) Carry out wiring to the adapter PCB before installing on the installation box ①.
(4) Pass the high current wiring through the wiring through hole (high current), and pass the low current wiring through the wiring through hole (low current).
(5) Separate the high current wiring and the low current wiring with a distance of 50 mm or more, then place them.

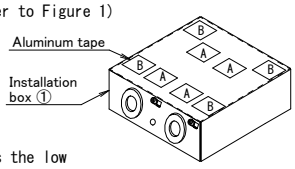


Figure 1

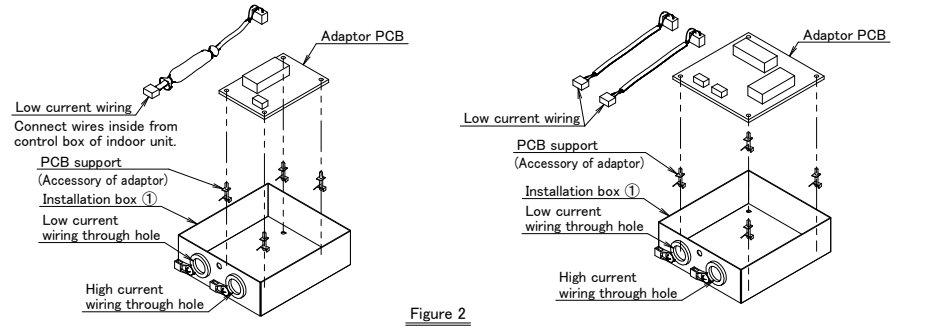


Figure 2

2. Attach the lid of installation box
(1) Insert spacers ⑦ (2 pcs.) into the holes in the thermal insulation material affixed to the lid of installation box ②. (Refer to Figure 3)
(2) Using screws ⑤ (2 pcs.), install the lid of installation box ② with inserted spacers ⑦ on the indoor unit. (Refer to Figure 4)
(3) If installing 2 adapter PCBs, install the second PCB. (Refer to Figure 4)
3. Attach the installation box
Attach the installation box ① into the lid of installation box ② with screws ⑥. (Refer to Figure 5)

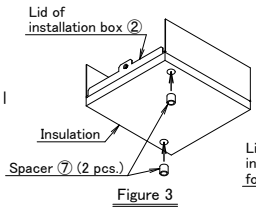


Figure 3

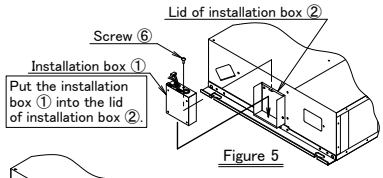


Figure 5

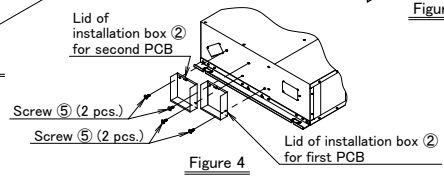


Figure 4

1P567551-1

❷ Method of wiring processing

1. For wiring to the indoor unit, follow the installation manual attached to the adapter PCB.
2. Secure the wiring with the cord stickers ④ (3 pcs.) and clamps ③ (total 3 pcs.). (Refer to Figure 1)
3. Cut off excess portions of the clamps ③.

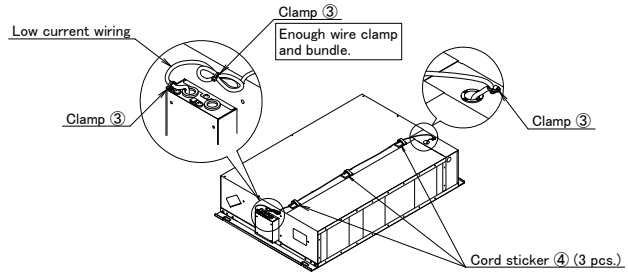


Figure 1

<In case of FXTQ,FTQ type>

❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

1. Attach the adaptor
   (1) Detach the aluminum tape of the installation box ① to insert the PCB supports.
   Adaptor : KRP1C75,KRP4A74,DTA104A53 --- Detach the aluminum tapes B.
   Attach the adaptor in the installation box ① by the PCB supports.(Refer to Figure 1)
   (PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)
   (2) Connect wires with the adaptor before attaching to the installation box ①. (Refer to Figure 2)
   Low voltage wires and high voltage wires should be kept space at least 50mm from each other.

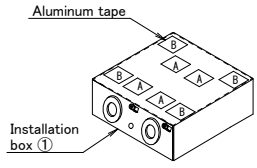


Figure 1

< In case of KRP1C75,KRP4A74,DTA104A53 type >

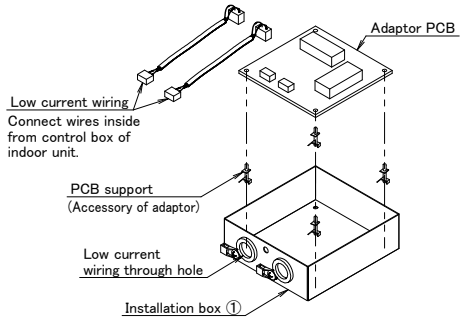


Figure 2

2. Attach the lid of installation box
   (1) Insert spacers ⑦ (2 pcs.) into the holes in the thermal insulation material affixed to the lid of installation box ②.
   (Refer to Figure 3)
   Do not mount the installation box directly on the unit.
   Mount the box near the local wiring outlet.
   (2) Attach the lid of installation box ② on the vertical rigid surface near the unit with screws ⑤ (2 pcs.).
   (Refer to Figure 4)
   If two adaptors are installed, the second adaptor is attached to side of first one.

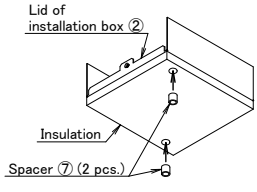
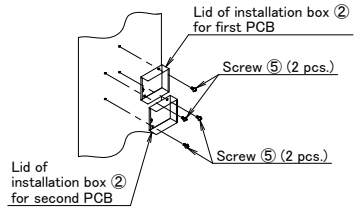


Figure 3



* If the attached screws (5) cannot be used due to the local conditions, procure the screws locally.

Figure 4

1P567553-1

3. Attach the installation box
   Attach the installation box ①
   into the lid of installation box ②
   with the screw ⑥.
   (Refer to Figure 5)

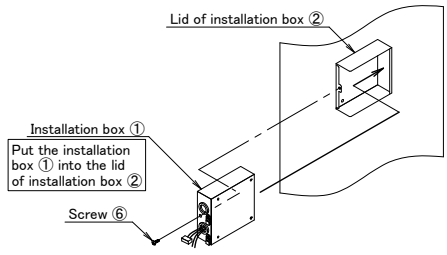
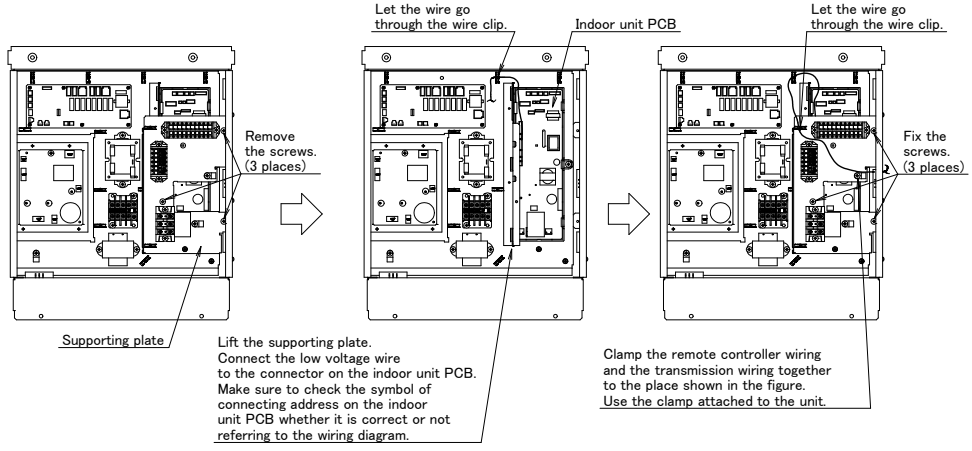


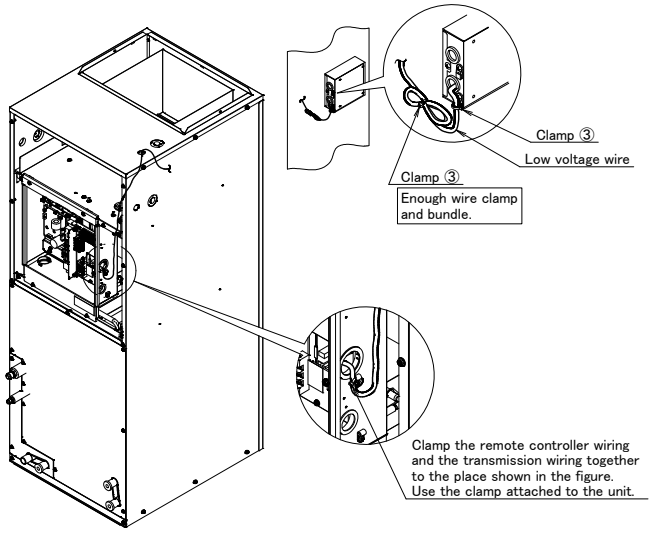
Figure 5

❷ Method of wiring processing

1. Connect wires with control box. (Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)
2. After connecting wires with the control box, clamp wires by using the clamps ③ as shown in the below drawing.

Detail view of control box





1P567553-1

1P567553-1

3.8 KRP1BA97 Installation Box for Adaptor PCB

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Daikin Air Conditioners

Adapter Mounting Box
Installation manual

KRP1B97・KRP1BA97・KRP1C97

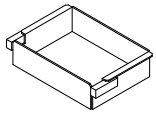
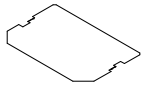
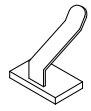
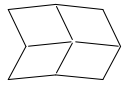
Carefully read these instructions before installation.

2P389469-1A

Caution

- This kit is installable to the ceiling flexible type (4-way blow ceiling suspended type)
- See also the installation manual attached to the indoor unit

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the unit.

Name	Mounting Box body	Mounting Box cover	Mounting screw	Code sticker	Installation manual
Shape			 M4 × 12		
Quantity	1	1	2	2	1

❶ Preparation for installation

(1) Remove a suction grille and open a cover of the electric component box (2 screws). Fig. 1-1
(2) disconnect the swing motor lead wire from the bell mouth. Fig. 1-1
(3) Remove the bell mouth from the indoor unit (4 screws). Fig. 1-2
(4) Cut a bell mouth wiring bracket (1 location) with a nipper or cutter, etc. Fig. 1-3
(5) Make 2 holes for mounting on the concave part of the bell mouth with a drill. Fig. 1-3

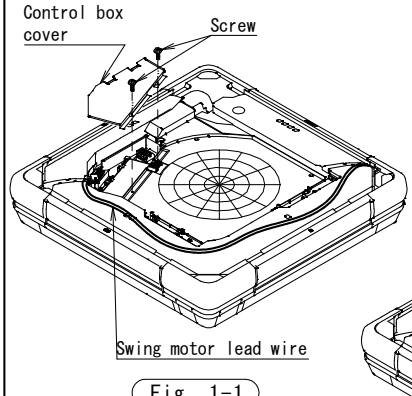


Fig. 1-1

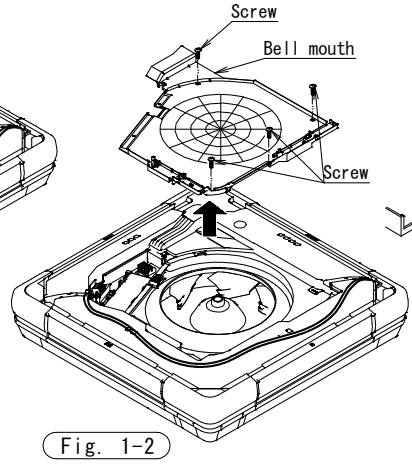


Fig. 1-2

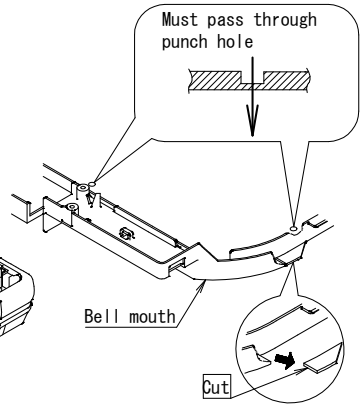


Fig. 1-3

2P389469-1A

❷ Adapter installation 〈See also the installation manual attached to the adapter.〉

(1) Attach 4 substrate supports in the holes on the mounting box before mounting an adapter Substrate supports are attached to the adapter. Fig. 2-1
(2) Install the adapter in accordance with the location of the substrate support Connect the external wiring to the adapter.
(3) Install the mounting box to the bell mouth with 2 mounting screws attached to the box. Fig. 2-2
(4) Bundle the wire harness and fix to the bell mouth with the clamp material attached to the adapter. Cut the extra clamp material. Fig. 2-3
(5) Attach the bell mouth to the indoor unit Fig. 2-3
(6) Reconnect the swing motor lead wire as before.

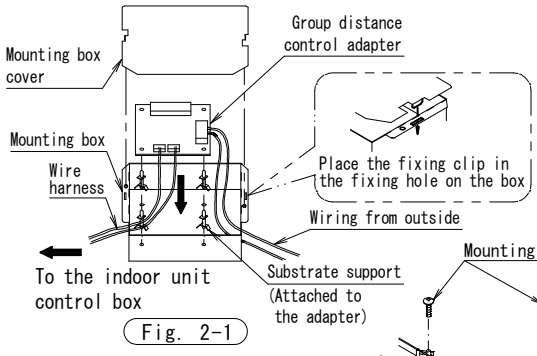


Fig. 2-1

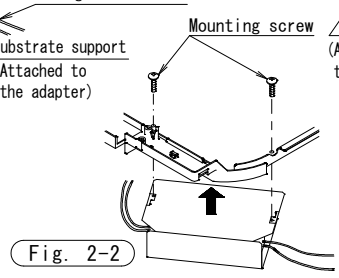


Fig. 2-2

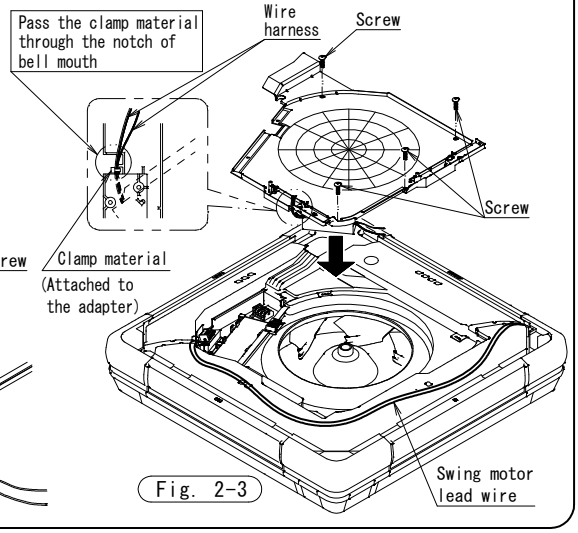


Fig. 2-3

❸ How to arrange the wiring

● Carry out electric wiring after reading the installation manual attached to the adapter

(1) Fix the wiring with the code sticker and clamp material attached to the adapter as shown in the Figure below after wiring work is finished. Fig. 3-1
- Make sure the wiring is pulled tight and follows the path shown in the diagram below.
- Cut the extra clamp material.
- Roll up the extra lead wire and arrange them neatly on the bell mouth as shown in the Fig.

(2) Attach the control box cover. Fig. 3-2
(3) Attach the suction grille.

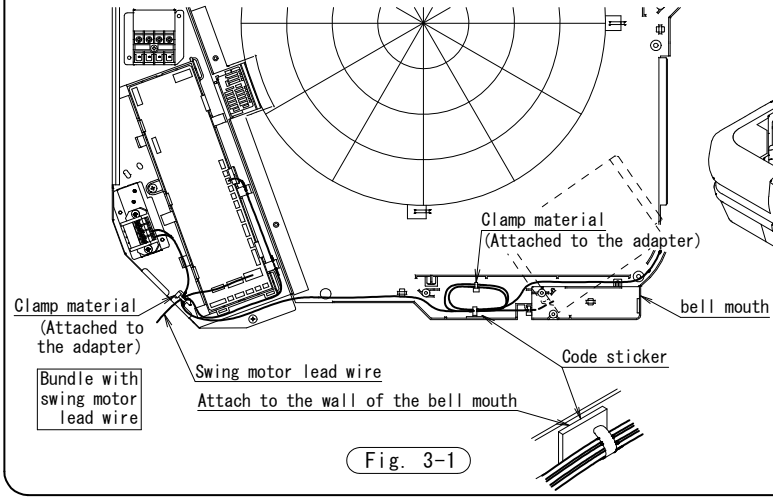


Fig. 3-1

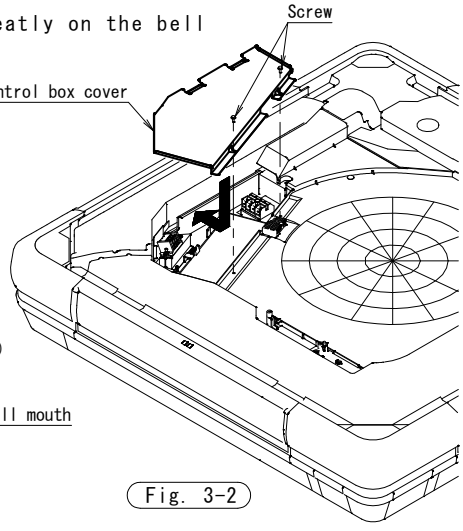


Fig. 3-2

2P389469-1A

2P389469-1A

3.9 KRP4A98 Installation Box for Adaptor PCB

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

DAIKIN AIR CONDITIONERS Installation Manual READ THESE INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLATION 3P400464-1A

Adaptor Plate KRP4A98

Precaution

- This is installable to the ceiling mounted duct type air conditioners and to the ceiling mounted cassette built-in type air conditioners.
- When mounting the adaptor plate, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adaptor printed circuit board mounting instruction.
- Fixing method is not in the installation manual attached to the adapter printed circuit board. Please follow directions on this sheet.

Accessories

- Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

〈Precaution〉

The accessories are required for the installation of the air conditioner.
Be sure to keep them until the installation work is completed.

Name	adaptor plate(1)	adaptor plate(2)	Screws(1)	Screws(2)	Sealing material	Clamp	(Others)
Quantity	1PC.	1PC.	4PCS.	1PC.	2PCS.	10PCS.	Installation Manual
Shape			 M4×8	 M4×10			(This copy)

1 Mounting the adaptor plate

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

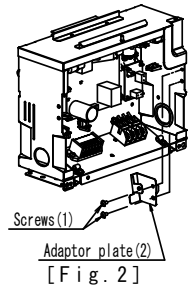
(1) Remove the control box lid. For built-in type, open the terminal block fixing plate.
(The control box can be removed if it is hard to work.)[Fig.1]
＊For terminal blocks for remote control wiring (X2M) or terminal blocks for power wiring (X1M) If wiring is required, refer to the installation instructions for the indoor unit, connect the wiring before, installing the adapter mounting plate.
(In the case of duct type and back suction of built-in type.)

(2) Connect the wiring attached to the adaptor printed board to the indoor unit.(The work is easier if the wiring is connected first.)
- Refer to the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for where to connect the wires.
- Refer to Fig.7 and 8. of ② **How to mount the adaptor printed circuit board and handle the wiring** **for the connector location.**

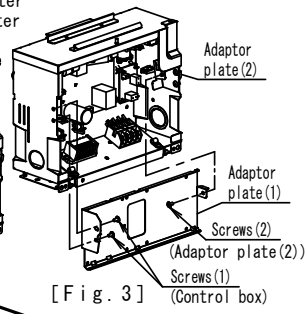
《Mounting the adaptor plate》

- When installing the adapter mounting plate after completing the wiring to the indoor unit
  (1) Fix the adaptor plate (2) to the control box with the attached screws (1) at 2 locations.[Fig.2]
  (2) Attach the adaptor plate (1) to the control box with the attached screw (1) and attach adaptor plate (1) and (2) to the control box with the attached screw (2).[Fig.3]
- When wiring to the indoor unit after installing the adapter mounting plate
  (1) Remove one of the mounting screws (1) on the adapter mounting plate (2), and then loosen the mounting screws (1) on the adapter mounting plate (1) and (2) respectively. [Fig.4]
  (2) Move the adapter mounting plates (1) and (2), and wire the ②**How to mount the adaptor printed circuit board and handle the wiring** and Perform the wiring according to the installation instructions supplied with the indoor unit. After installation, move the adapter mounting plates (1) and (2) and return them to their original positions.[Fig.5]
  (3) Follow the reverse procedure of (1), screwing the mounting screws (1) of the adapter mounting plate (2) in two places, and then screw the mounting screws (1) of the adapter mounting plate (1) in two places. [Fig.4]

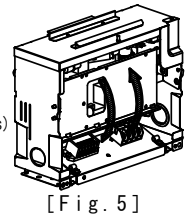
〈Caution〉Make sure that the screws are securely fastened. There is a possibility that the adapter mounting plate may come off.

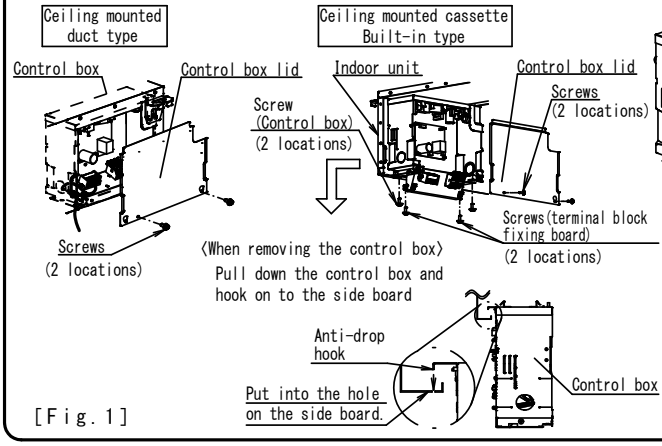


[Fig.2]

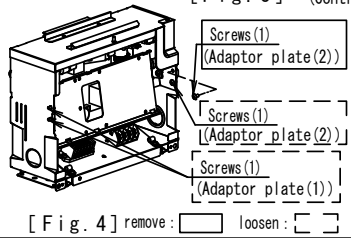


[Fig.3]


[Fig.5]



[Fig.1]



[Fig.4] remove : ▭ loosen : ⊏ ⊐

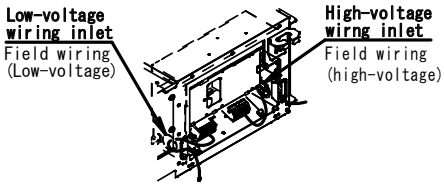
2 How to mount the adaptor printed circuit board and handle the wiring

《How to lead-in external wires》

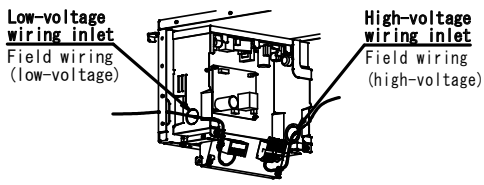
Lay the high-voltage and low-voltage wires in the control box separately through the wire inlet on the side of the control box.[Fig.6]

3P400464-1A

Ceiling mounted duct type



Ceiling mounted cassette Built-in type



[Fig. 6]

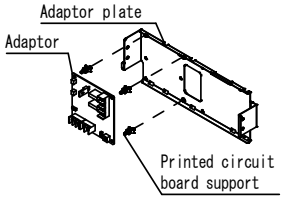
《How to mount the adaptor printed circuit board》

(1) Connect the wiring to the adaptor printed circuit board.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the printed circuit board first.)

●See the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for the connecting locations of wiring.

(2) Mount adaptor printed circuit board onto the adaptor plate in the direction as shown on Fig.7 and 8.

●Use printed circuit board supports attached to the adaptor PCB.



《Caution》 If adaptor PCB is mounted in a wrong direction, electric noise may cause malfunction of the system or may influence upon other devices.

Adaptor PCB		Location to mount
Adaptor plate for wiring	KRP1C64	[Fig. 7]
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices for group, Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(※1)	KRP4AA51 KRP2AA61	[Fig. 7]
External control adaptor (※1)	DTA104A61	[Fig. 8]

Adaptor(※1) Only one adaptor can be mounted.

《How to handle the wiring》

《Caution》 Do not make high-voltage and low-voltage wires run in parallel. Electric noise may cause malfunction of the system or may influence upon other devices.

(1) Fix the internal wiring. Fix the wiring to the adaptor plate with the attached clamps as shown on Fig.7 and 8. (Put clamps through the corner holes to fix wires.)

(2) Attach the control box terminal block fixing board and control box lid and wrap the wire sealing material around the wires so as to block the wire through hole. [Fig.9]

●Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.

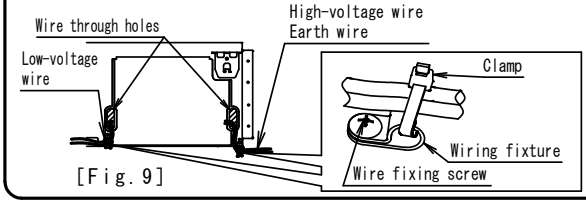
●Fill in any gaps in the through holes with putty or insulation (Procured locally) to prevent small animals and insects from entering the unit from outside, which may cause short circuits in the control box.

⚠Warning

Trim and lay the wiring neatly and attach the control box lid securely.
An electric shock or fire may result if the control box lid catches any wiring or the wires push up the lid.

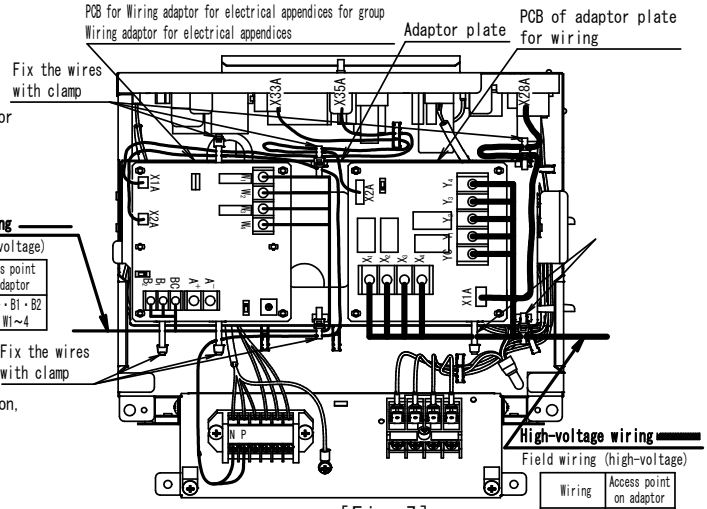
(3) Fix the wiring fixture attached to the indoor unit with the wire fixing screws.
Fix each wiring with the attached clamp materials. [Fig.9]

●See the instruction attached to the indoor unit.



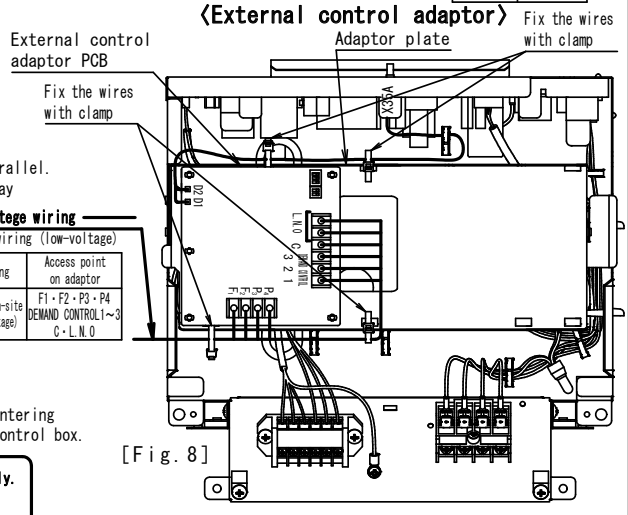
[Fig. 9]

《Adaptor for wiring, Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices for group, Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices》



[Fig. 7]

《External control adaptor》



[Fig. 8]

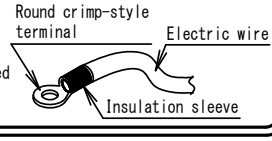
《Caution》

●Be sure to use round crimp-style terminal to connect to the terminal block. Provide insulation to the crimping part by attaching the insulation sleeve and such.

●Connect proper wires securely and fix the wires so that external force will not be imposed on the terminals.

●Use appropriate screwdriver to tighten the terminal screws. The screw heads may be damaged if the screwdriver is too small and terminal screws will not be tightend properly.

●Refer to the instruction attached to the indoor unit for the required tightening torque values of the terminal screws.



3P400464-1A

3P400464-1A

3.10 KRP4A96 Installation Box for Adaptor PCB

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Caution

- This plate is mountable on the ceiling mounted duct type unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this plate on the unit listed in the table shown bottom.
- When mounting the plate, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adaptor printed circuit board (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.
- Fixing method is not on the installation manual attached to the adapter printed circuit board . Please follow directions on this sheet.

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible		
KRP4A96	Ceiling mounted duct type unit	SkyAir	FBQ-PVJU
		VRV	FXMQ-PBVJU

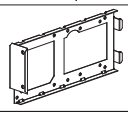
*See the DAIKIN catalog for the details

Accessories

- Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

<Precaution>

The accessories are required for the installation of the air conditioner. Be sure to keep them until the installation work is completed.

Name	Adaptor plate	Screw	Sealing material	Clamp	Installation manual
Quantity	1PC.	2PCS.	2PC.	8PCS.	1PC.
Shape		 M4×8			

<Caution>

- All field supplied parts and materials and electric works must conform to local codes.
- Use copper wire only.
- For electric wiring work, refer to also "Wiring diagram" attached to the control box lid.
- All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician.
- A circuit breaker capable of shutting down power supply to the entire system must be installed.

❶ Mounting the adaptor plate

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

① Remove the control box lid. [Fig. 1]

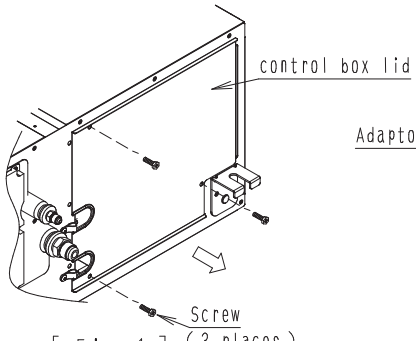
② Connect the wiring to the indoor unit. (The work is easier if the wiring is connected first.)

- See the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.
- Please see the connector location on (figure 1) on the ❷ How to mount the adaptor printed circuit board and handle the wiring .

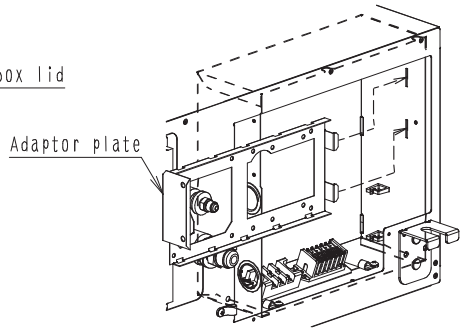
《Mounting the adaptor plate》

① Putting the claw of the adaptor plate into the hole of the box. [Fig. 2]

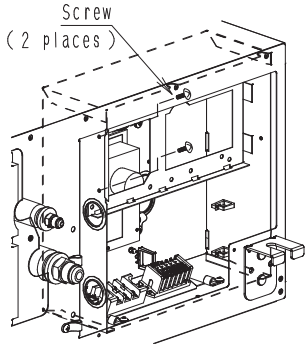
② Fix the box with the attached fixing screws at two places. [Fig. 3]



[Fig. 1]



[Fig. 2]

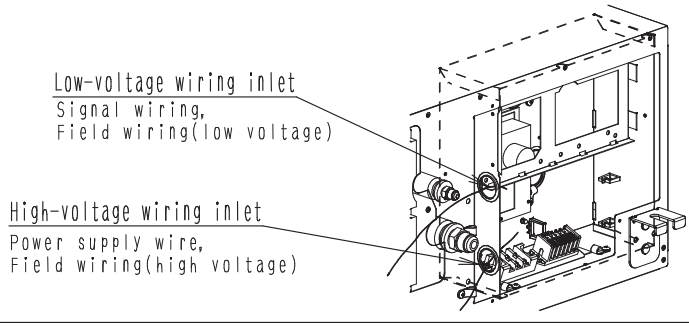


[Fig. 3]

❷ How to mount the adaptor printed circuit board and handle the wiring

《How To Lead-in External Wires 》

Lay the wires in the control box through the wire inlet on the side of the control box.

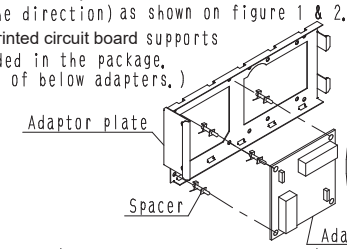


C: 2P226887

《How to mount the adaptor printed circuit board》

① Connect the wiring to the adaptor printed circuit board.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the printed circuit board first.)
● See the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for where to connect the wiring.

② Mount adapter printed circuit board onto the mounting plate (in the direction) as shown on figure 1 & 2.
● Use printed circuit board supports included in the package. (for any of below adapters.)

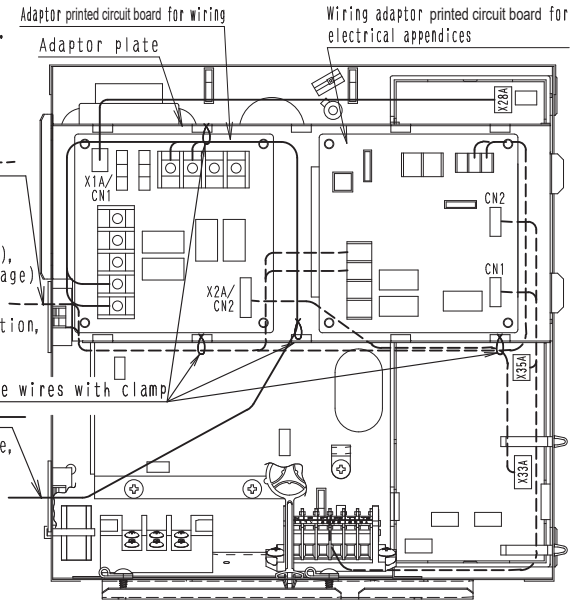


《Caution》If (adapter printed circuit board is) mounted in a wrong direction, electric noise may cause malfunction of the system, or may influence upon other devices.

Adaptor PCB		Place where to mount
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1C64	(Fig. 1)
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (※1)	KRP4AA51 KRP2A61	(Fig. 1)
External control adaptor for outdoor unit (※1)	DTA104A61	(Fig. 2)

(※1) adapter cannot be mounted 2 or more together.

〈Adaptor for wiring, Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices〉



(Fig. 1)

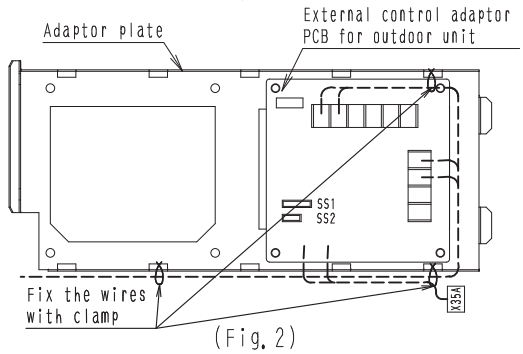
《How to handle the wiring》

《Caution》Do not make high-voltage and low-voltage wires run in parallel. Electric noise may cause malfunction of the system, or may influence upon other devices.

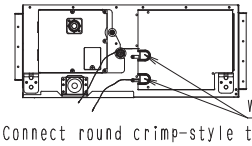
① Fix the internal wirings.
Bind the wiring from the adaptor plate to the indoor unit control box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp. (Put the clamping materials through the corner holes to fix wires.)
● Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

② Put the control box lid, and wrap the wire sealing material around the wires so as to block the wire through holes.
● Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.
● After all the wiring connections are done, fill in any gaps in the through holes with putty or insulation (procured locally) to prevent small animals and insects from entering the unit from outside. (If any do get in, they could cause short circuits in the control box.)

〈External control adaptor for outdoor unit〉

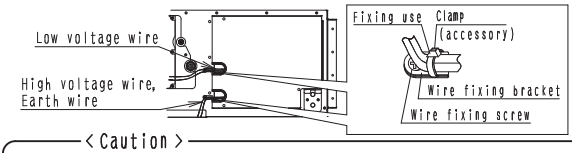


(Fig. 2)

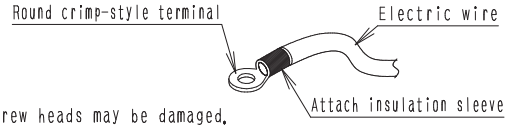


⚠Warning
Trim and lay the wiring neatly and attach the control box lid securely.
An electric shock or fire may result if the control box lid catches any wiring or the wires push up the lid.

③ Connect round crimp-style terminals provided with insulation sleeves to the terminal block for power supply.
● See the instruction attached to the indoor unit.



〈Caution〉
● Connect proper wires securely and fix the wires so that external force will not be imposed on the terminals.
● Use an appropriate screwdriver to tighten the terminal screws. The screw heads may be damaged if the screwdriver is too small and the terminal screws will not be tightened properly.
● Do not tighten the terminal screws excessively, or otherwise the screw heads may be damaged.
● Refer to the table below for the required tightening torque values of the terminal screws.



	Tightening torque (N・m)
Terminal block for remote controller and transmission wires	1.18 – 1.44
Terminal block for power supply, and wiring the units	1.18 – 1.44

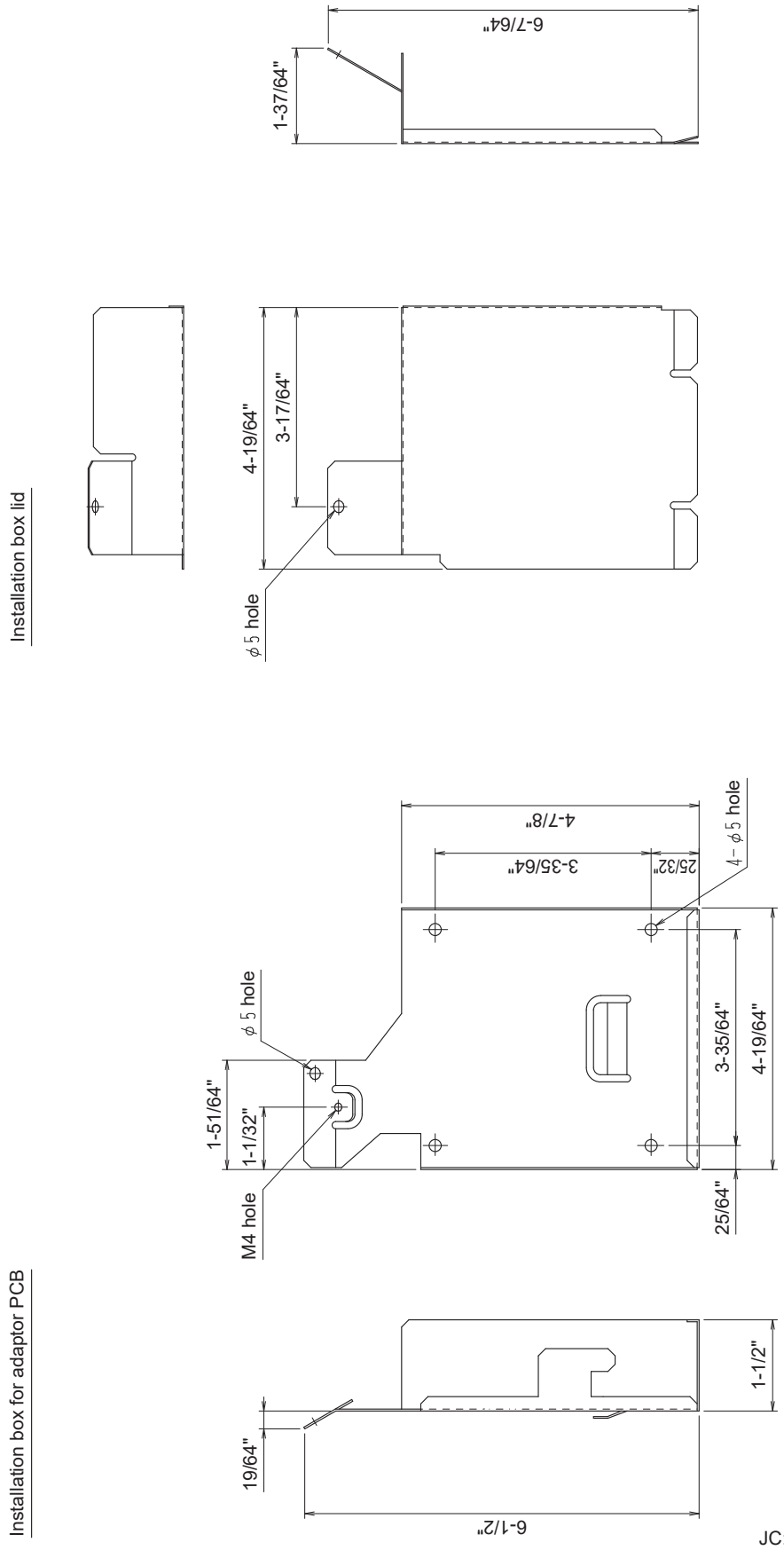
C: 2P226887

3.11 KRP1C93 Installation Box for Adaptor PCB

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

unit: in.

Specification
Materials: Galvanized steel plate
Accessories
Fixture : 2
Mounting screw : 4
Installation manual



JC: D3K3100

DAIKIN AIR CONDITIONERS Adapter Installation Box Installation Manual

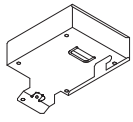
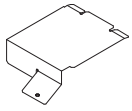
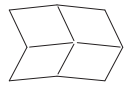
KRP1C93 • KRP1CA93

READ THESE INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLATION.
KEEP THIS MANUAL IN A HANDY PLACE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

NOTE:

- This box can be installed to the ceiling-hang type unit.
- Each adapter plate requires one kit.

Parts included: Check the following parts are include with your unit.

Part name	Installation box main body	Installation box lid	Installation screw	Fixing screw for lid	Fixture	Installation manual	Clamp
Shape			 M4 × 8	 M4 × 12			
Quantiity	1	1	2	2	2	1	4

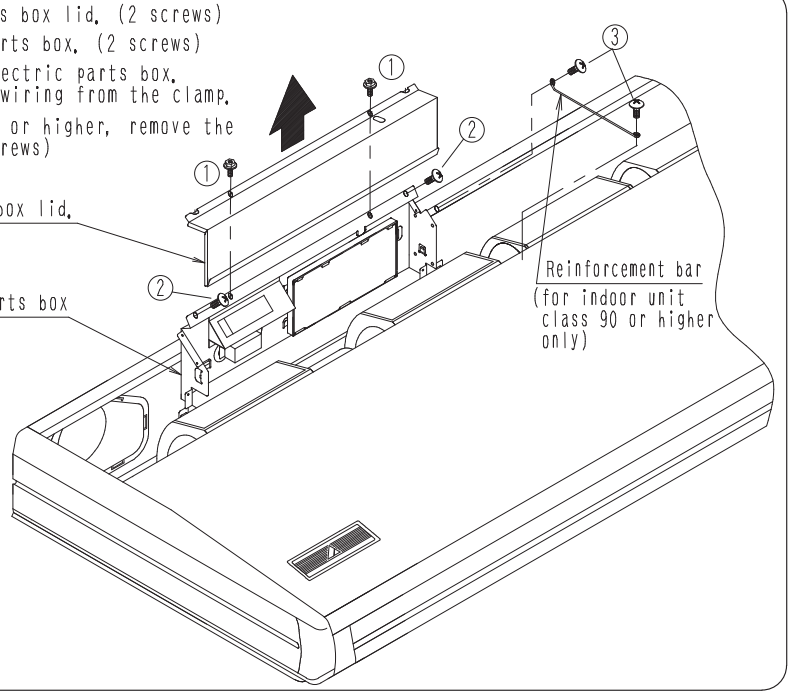
Applicable adapter plate

Adapter plate name	Kit name
(Group) Remote control adapter	KRP2A62, KRP4A52

1 Installation preparation

① Remove the electric parts box lid. (2 screws)
② Take out the electric parts box. (2 screws)
- Before taking out the electric parts box, disconnect the internal wiring from the clamp.

③ For indoor unit class 90 or higher, remove the reinforcement bar. (2 screws)



3K09595-1B

❷ Installation of Adapter Plate

①Install the fixture included with the kit to the electric parts box. (2 locations)

②Install the adapter plate to the adapter installation box.

- For installation direction of the adapter plate, refer to the installation manual included with the adapter plate.

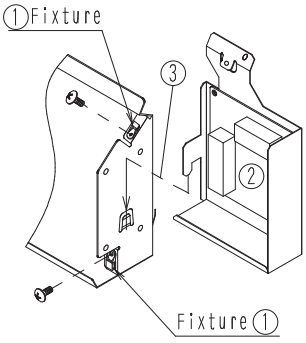
③Temporarily hang the adapter installation box on the electric parts box of the indoor unit.

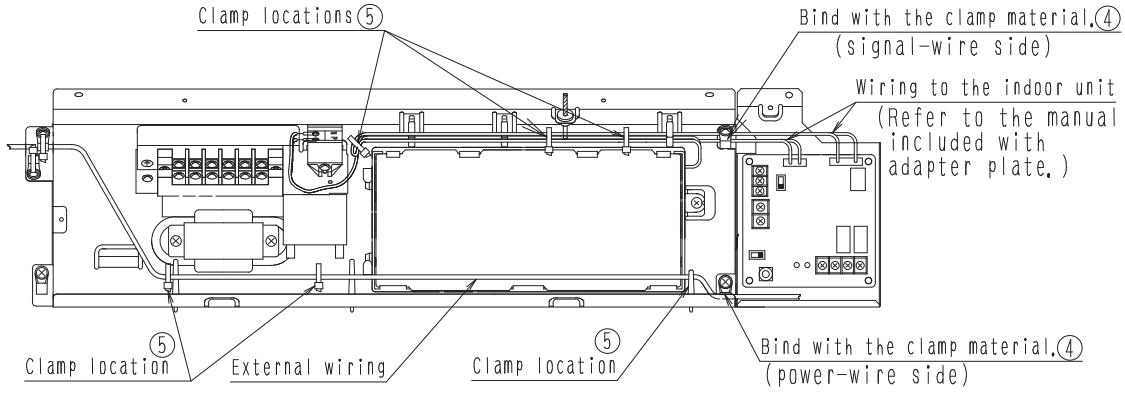
④Connect wires to the adapter plate and the indoor unit.

- For wiring locations, refer to the manual included with the adapter plate.
- Separate power wires and signal wires. Refer to the figure below on how to wire inside the electric parts box.
- Bind the wires taken out of the adapter plate together with the fixture installed in ① using the included clamp material.

⑤Fix the intemal wiring.

- Refer to the figure below on how to fix the wires inside the electric parts box to the clamp material.
- Bind the remaining wires with the clamp material, and house them inside the electric parts box.





❸ Installation to the Indoor Unit

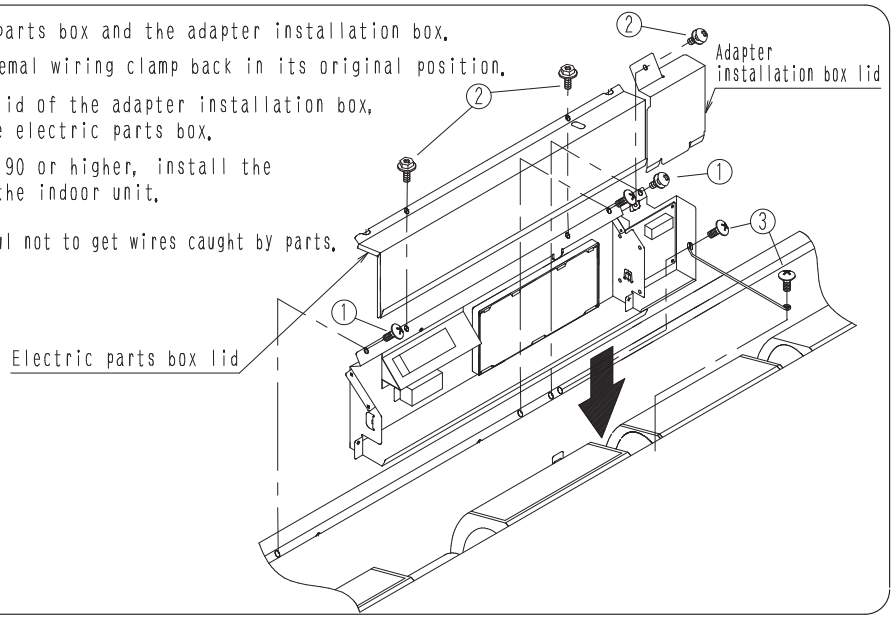
①Install the electric parts box and the adapter installation box.

- Place the removed intemal wiring clamp back in its original position.

②After installing the lid of the adapter installation box, install the lid of the electric parts box.

③For indoor unit class 90 or higher, install the reinforcement bar to the indoor unit.

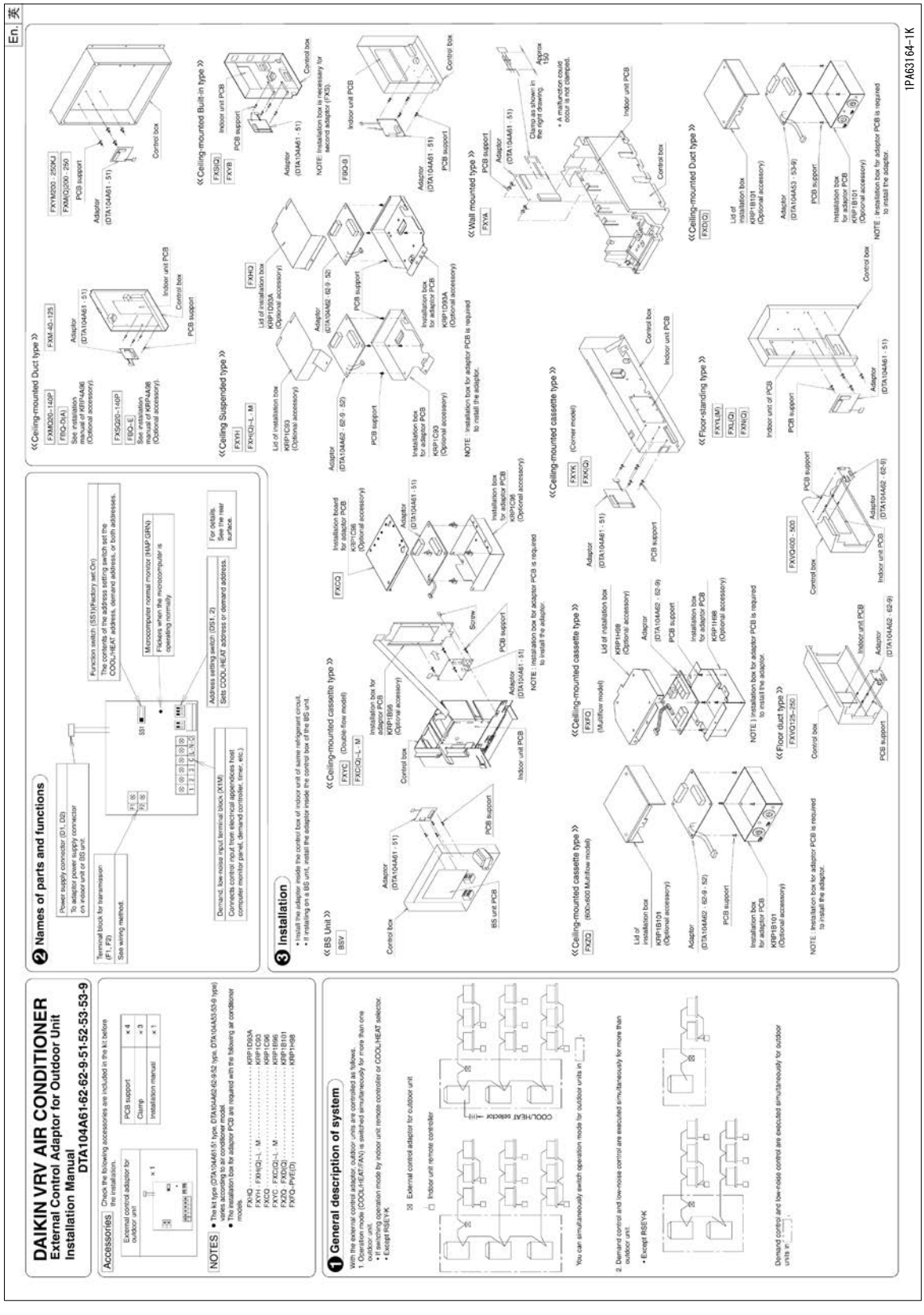
*When installing, be careful not to get wires caught by parts.



3K09595-1B

3.12 DTA104A53 / 61 / 62 External Control Adaptor for Outdoor Unit (Must be Installed on Indoor Units)

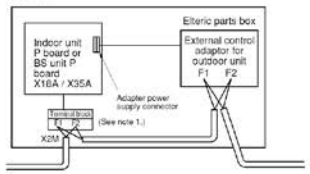
(Note) The drawing is released common for worldwide models. Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.



1PA63164-1K

4 Electrical wiring

① Connect the power supply wiring from the adapter to the adapter power supply connector on the PCB of the indoor unit or BS unit.
② Connect the transmission wiring to the various terminal blocks, and to the F1 and F2 terminals on the PCB. (Use double-core wiring with no polarity.)
③ Using the attached wiring ties, clamp the transmission wiring to weak field wiring, etc.



Note 1: If mounting on a BS unit, connect the BS unit's terminal block (F1 and F2,outdoor unit side) with F1 and F2 of the adapter.

NOTES

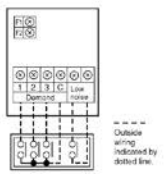
- (Transmission wiring specifications)

Sheathed wire (2 wire) 0.75 ~ 1.25mm²

- (Transmission wiring length)

Malfunction of transmission may occur if the following limits are exceeded.
(Total wiring length: Max. 1000m
No. of branches: Max. 16)

④ If carrying out demand or low-noise input, Connect the adapter's terminals an shown below.



Host computer monitor panel or demand controller

[Input signal]
Constant a contact
Input current is approx. 10mA per contact.
For the relay contact, use a weak current contact.
[Outside wiring specifications]
Recommended wiring: 0.75~2mm2sheathed wire
Wiring length: Within 150m
Keep a minimum 50mm from power supply wiring to prevent malfunction.

Demand input terminal

Short circuit between (Demand 1) – (C)... As a guideline, demand should be about 70%.
Short circuit between (Demand 2) – (C)... As a guideline, demand should be about 40%.
Short circuit between (Demand 3) – (C)... Forced thermo OFF

Low-noise input terminal

When terminals are short-circuited during cooling, capacity save (outdoor unit fan low-speed turn, compressor frequency control) is carried out.
Use only at night when load is slight.

How to set demand control in the field

1. Outdoor unit field setting
   - Setting mode 1... Turn ON low noise control as explained in the outdoor unit's service manual.
   - Setting mode 2... Match low noise and demand addresses to the external control address.
2. External control adapter settings
   - Function switch (SS1)
     Set SS1 to either "BOTH" or "DE".
   - Address setting switch (DS1, DS2)
     Match DS1 and DS2 to the low noise and demand addresses of the outdoor unit.

5 Field settings

1. The contents of the various settings for unified switching of the operation mode (cool, heat, fan) are as follows.

Setting switches cannot be switched unless the power is turned on. Be sure, therefore, to turn the power off after switching the switches.

Field setting start

Grouping the outdoor units by each operation mode. (Herein after refer to as "operation mode group"). Each group shall be required this adapter.

<Means of switching operation mode?>

COOL/HEAT selector

Indoor unit remote controller

Nominate the "MASTER" unit and "SLAVE" units per operation mode group and set them on the outdoor unit's P board ass'y.

Set SS1 of the P board of the outdoor unit set as "MASTER" to "OUT/D UNIT." (See the outdoor unit's CAUTION ON OPERATION.)

Designate and set outdoor units as "MASTER" and "SLAVE." (See the outdoor unit's CAUTION ON OPERATION.)

Set the 5-bit COOL/HEAT address of the adaptor and outdoor units. (See Note 1.)
Set the service/mode for the outdoor units by operating the switches on the P board ass'y. (See fig. 2.)
The adaptor is set by DS1, 2. (See fig. 1.)

Set SS1 of the P board of the outdoor unit set as "MASTER" to "IN/D UNIT." (See the outdoor unit's CAUTION ON OPERATION.)

Note 1: Match the address of the adaptor and outdoor units for each control unit.

Field setting complete

2. The contents of the various settings for unified switching of demand and low noise operation are as follows.

Field setting start

Divide the outdoor units for demand control and low-noise control into units to be switched together (Herein after refer to as "demand control group"). An adapter is required for each unit.

Set the 5-bit demand address of the adapter and outdoor units. Set the service mode for the outdoor units by operating the switches on the P board ass'y. (See fig. 3.)
The adaptor is set by DS1, 2. (See fig. 1.)

Field setting complete

3. To carry out operation mode switching and demand control simultaneously
You can carry out operation mode switching and demand control simultaneously by setting function switch SS1 on the adaptor to "BOTH." Only one address, however, can be set on the adapter, so the "operation mode switch unit" and "demand control unit" are the same.

SS1

BOTH	C/H	DE
FUNCTION		

Factory set to "BOTH."

Set the COOL/HEAT address, demand address and low noise address, or both as needed.

Left (BOTH) Middle (C/H) Right (DE • LOW NOISE)

Note 2: The outdoor unit can have an independent "COOL/HEAT address" and "demand address". You can therefore set the "operation mode group" and "demand control group" to defferent ranges.

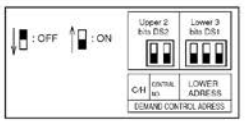


Fig. 1 Setting of 5-bit cool/heat address by DS1, 2.

Designate and set cool/heat addresses 0 – 31 for each operation mode switch unit.

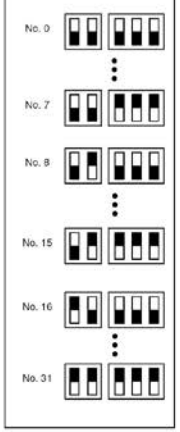


Fig. 2 (Ex.) To set the outdoor unit's cool/heat address to No. 15:

● — Off ○ — On ◑ — Flicker

Procedure	Setting contents	MODE	TEST	5-bit C/H SELECT IND	5-bit C/H SELECT MASTER	5-bit C/H SELECT SLAVE	L.N.O.P.	SEQ. START
When power turned on	Setting mode (factory set)	● LED20	● LED21	○ LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	○ LED26
Hold down next page button for 5 secs.	Enters address setting.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push operation button one time.	Enters cool/heat address setting.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	○ LED26
Push confirmation button one time.	Make sure cool/heat address has been entered.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push operation button 15 times. (Address No. = Times pushed.)	Sets cool/heat address.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	◑ LED23	◑ LED24	◑ LED25	◑ LED26
Push confirmation button two times.	Check cool/heat address.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push next page button one time.	Returns to set mode.	● LED20	● LED21	○ LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	○ LED26

Fig. 3 (Ex.) To set the outdoor unit's demand address to No. 7:

● — Off ○ — On ◑ — Flicker

Procedure	Setting contents	MODE	TEST	5-bit C/H SELECT IND	5-bit C/H SELECT MASTER	5-bit C/H SELECT SLAVE	L.N.O.P.	SEQ. START
When power turned on	Setting mode (factory set)	● LED20	● LED21	○ LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	○ LED26
Hold down next page button for 5 secs.	Enters address setting.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push operation button two times.	Enters demand address setting.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	○ LED25	● LED26
Push confirmation button one time.	Make sure demand address has been entered.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push operation button 7 times. (Address No. = Times pushed.)	Sets demand address.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	◑ LED24	◑ LED25	◑ LED26
Push confirmation button two times.	Check demand address.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push next page button one time.	Returns to set mode.	● LED20	● LED21	○ LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	○ LED26

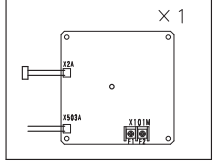
1PA63165-1B

3.13 DTA109A51 DIII-NET Expander Adaptor

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Accessories Check the following accessories are included in the kit before the installation

Adapter



PCB support	×4
Clamp	×3
Installation Manual	×1

NOTE This adapter does not apply to salt damege resistsnce.

1 General description of system

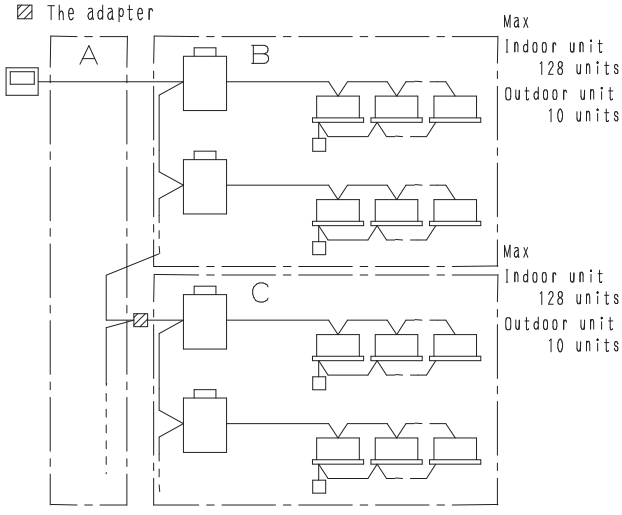
The adapter allows easy system expansion as long as restrictions are observed.

1. The below systems can be controlled on the Super Wiring System when using the adapter.

(1) Up to 1024 units can be centrally controlled in 64 different groups.
(With 2 central remote controllers, up to 1024 units can be controlled in 128 groups.)
Restrictions on the number of units that can be connected to the Super Wiring System apply to each adapter.

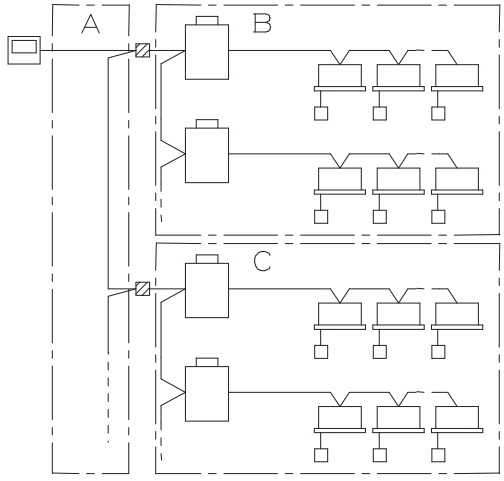
(2) Wiring restrictions (max. length : 1000m, total wiring length : 2000m, max. number of branches : 16) apply to each adapter.

▨ The adapter



A maximum of 128 indoor units and 10 outdoor units can be connected in each group B and C.

▨ The adapter

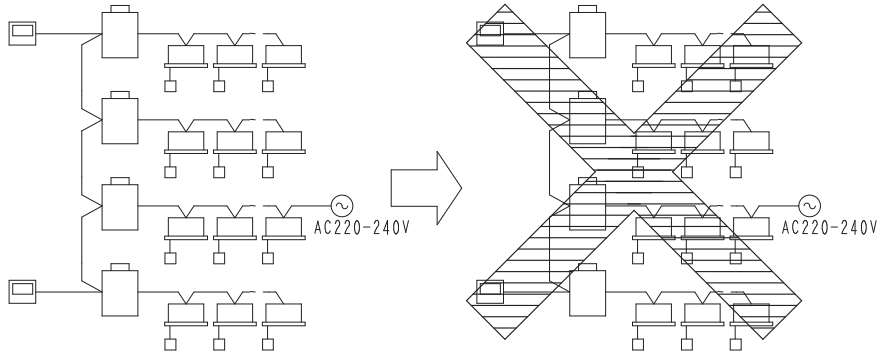


Each group A, B and C can have a maximum wiring length of 1000m, total wiring length of 2000m and a maximum 16 branches.

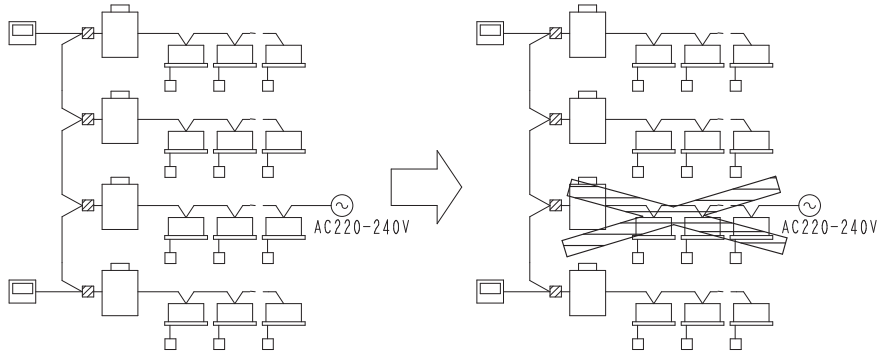
1P013360A

(3)Setups risky for centralized control systems are possible.

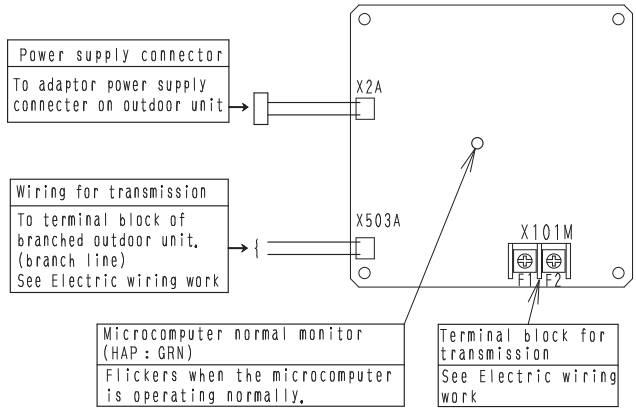
Conventional System Misswiring such as apply 220-240V to circuits could possibly shut down the entire system.



With the adapter Should trouble occur, only units below the adapter are shut down. Thus, it is possible to avoid a total system shutdown.



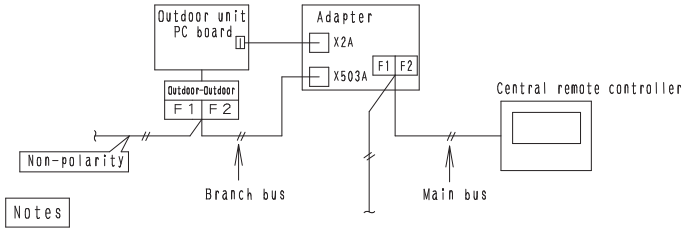
2 Names of parts and functions



1P013360A

③Electric wiring work

(1)Connect the wire from the adapter to the adapter power connector on the outdoor unit's PC board.
(For connector Nos., see the electric wiring diagrams for the indoor and function units.)
(2)Connect transmission wires between outdoor units (Outdoor-Outdoor terminal board).
(3)Wire transmission wires to terminal boards as shown below.



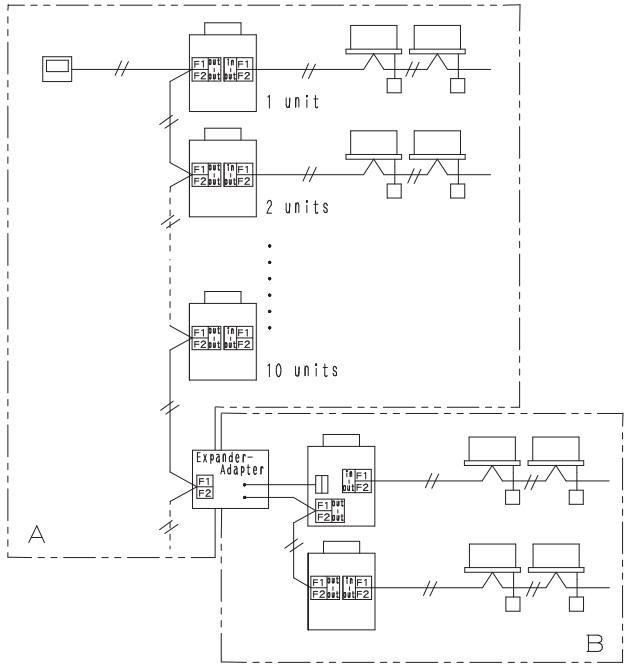
Notes

(Transmission wiring specifications)
- 0.75～1.25mm² sheathed wire (2 wire).

(Transmission wiring length)
- Observe the following limits on transmission wires. The limits apply to each adapter. If you exceed the limits, it may cause malfunction.
  (Total length : 2000m
  Max. length···1000m
  Max. number of branches : 16)
- At least one outdoor unit and one optional controller for centralized control are required for every main bus and branch bus.
- Up to 8 adapters can be connected in one system.
- Do not locate adapters downstream of other adapters(i.e. : on a branch bus).
- If not used with a central control device, the expander adapter cannot be used with the wiring adapter for electrical appendices(KRP2A) or the schedule timer(DST301B51).
- The external control adapter for outdoor units controls group cooling and demand for each adapter. (Anything beyond the expansion control falls outside the control domain.)
- Do not turn the system ON/OFF rapidly from the optional controller for centralized control. This can cause temporary erroneous displays.
- Sequential starts is controlled by each expander adapter.

④Wiring example

System with more than 10 outdoor units.



Note Wiring restrictions (see"Electric wiring work") apply to each group A and B.

1P013360A

3.14 KRP1C76 / 77 Wiring Adaptor PCB

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

En. 英

Wiring Adaptor PCB Installation Manual

KRP1C76・77

Accessories

Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

Name	Adaptor PCB	Harness	PCB support	Clamp	Installation manual
Shape					
Quantity	1	1	4	3	1

Note

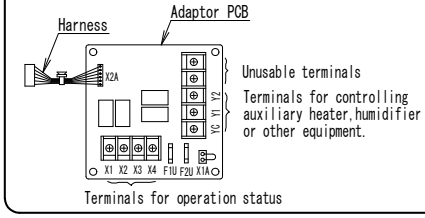
- Kits vary according to applicable models.
- A special adaptor plate or installation box for adaptor PCB is required for the following models.

FXFQ~AA, FCQ~AA ・・・KRP1H98A
FXFQ~AA, FCQ~AA(Self-cleaning filter panel) ・・・KRP1J98A
FXZQ~TB ・・・KRP1BB101
FXSQ~TB, FXMQ~TB, FBQ~TB ・・・KRP4A98

〈Caution〉

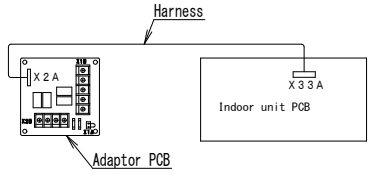
- All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- For electric wiring work, refer to "Wiring diagram" attached to the control box cover of indoor unit and this manual. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- All wiring must be worked after shutting down power supply. Touching the live part may result in electric shock.
- All field supplied parts and materials and electric works must conform to local codes.
- A circuit breaker capable of shutting down power supply to the entire system must be installed.
- When wiring, use the specified wires to make secure connections, and securely fasten the wires to the terminal connections so that no external force is applied to the wires. Incomplete connection or fixing may result in electric shock, heat generation or fire.
- When wiring, position the wires so that the control box cover can be securely fastened. Improper positioning of the control box cover may result in electric shock or fire.

❶ Names of parts



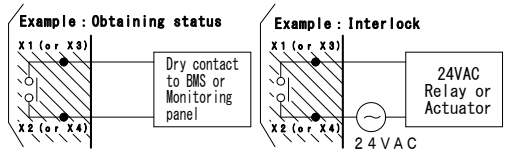
❷ Electric wiring

- Refer to the wiring diagram attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual included in Installation box for adaptor PCB or Adaptor plate for detailed information such as wiring routing and treatment before attempting to wire.
  (Make sure wires to units do not pass over this adaptor PCB when wiring.)
- Wire the adaptor PCB to the indoor unit as shown below.



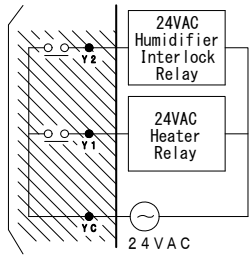
① Thermo-ON and Fan ON status

- Thermo-ON status
  Contact terminals X1 and X2 close while the indoor unit is Thermo-ON (call for cooling or heating).
- Fan ON status
  Contact terminals X3 and X4 close when indoor unit fan is ON.



② Interlocking Humidifier and Heater

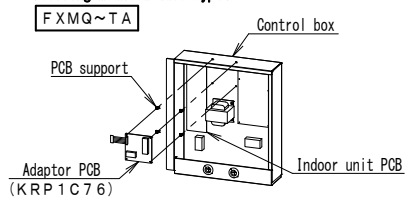
- Humidifier output(Y2-YC)
  - Energized while heating Thermo-ON (call for heating).
- Heater output(Y1-YC)
  - Auxiliary heater output with heat pump heating
  - Primary heater output when heat pump lockout enabled.



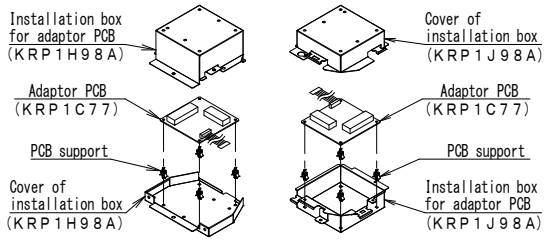
❸ Installation

- Installation differs according to models as shown below.
- Install according to the installation manual included in Installation box for adaptor PCB or Adaptor plate.
- Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any excess wires with the attached clamps so as to keep loose wires off the indoor unit PCB.

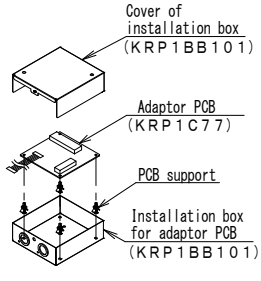
〈Ceiling mounted duct type〉
FXMQ~TA



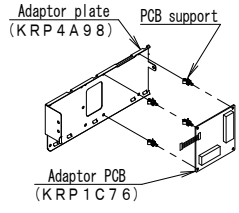
〈Ceiling mounted cassette type〉
FXFQ~AA FCQ~AA



〈Ceiling mounted cassette type(2×2)〉
FXZQ~TB



〈Ceiling mounted duct type〉
FXSQ~TB FXMQ~TB
FBQ~TB



2P731137－1

2P731137-1

3.15 KRP1C74 / 75 Wiring Adaptor PCB

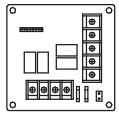
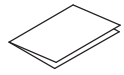
Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Wiring Adaptor Installation Manual

KRP1C74 • 75

Accessories

Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

Name	Adaptor for wiring	Harness	PCB support	Clamp	Installation manual
Shape					
Quantity	× 1	× 1	× 4	× 3	× 1

Notes

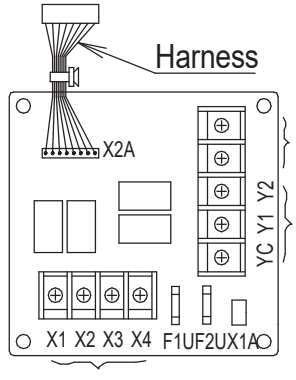
- Kits vary according to applicable models.
- A special adaptor fixing plate and box are required for the following models.

FXHQ-MVJU ····· KRP1C93
FXMQ-PBVJU ····· KRP4A96
FXSQ-TAVJU ····· KRP4A98
FXFQ-TVJU ····· KRP1J98A, KRP1H98A
FXEQ-PVJU, FXDQ-MVJU ····· KRP1B101
FXZQ-TAVJU, FXEQ-PVJU, FXTQ-TAVJUA, FXTQ-TAVJUD ····· KRP1BA101

〈Caution〉

- All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician.
- For electric wiring work, refer to also "Wiring diagram" attached to the control box lid and this manual.
- All wiring must be worked after shutting down power supply.
- All field supplied parts and materials and electric works must conform to local codes.
- A circuit breaker capable of shutting down power supply to the entire system must be installed.

1 Names of parts



This function can not be used.

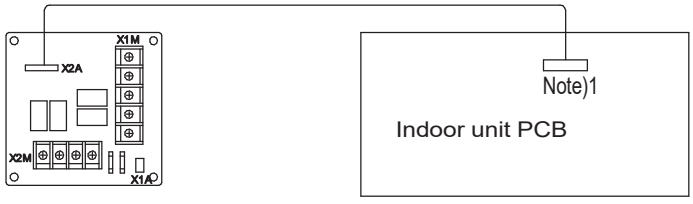
Terminals for controlling auxiliary heater,humidifier, and other equipment.

Terminals for operation status

C: 2P263038F

2 Electric wiring

- Refer to the wiring diagram attached to the indoor unit before attempting to wire.
  [Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PCB when wiring.]
- Wire the adaptor to the indoor unit as shown below.

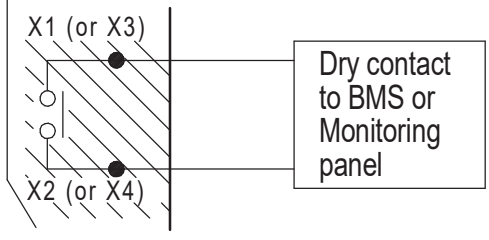


Note)1 Connector No.
X16A:FXLQ-MVJU, FXNQ-MVJU,
FXDQ-MVJU, FXHQ-MVJU
X33A:FXFQ-TVJU, FXZQ-TAVJU, FXEQ-PVJU,
FXSQ-TAVJU, FXMQ-PBVJU,
FXTQ-TAVJUA, FXTQ-TAVJUD

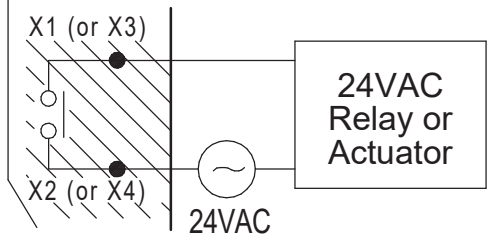
① Thermo-ON and Fan ON status

- Thermo-ON status
  Contact terminals X1 and X2 close while the indoor unit is Thermo-ON (call for cooling or heating)
- Fan ON status
  Contact terminals X3 and X4 close when indoor unit fan is ON

Example : Obtaining status

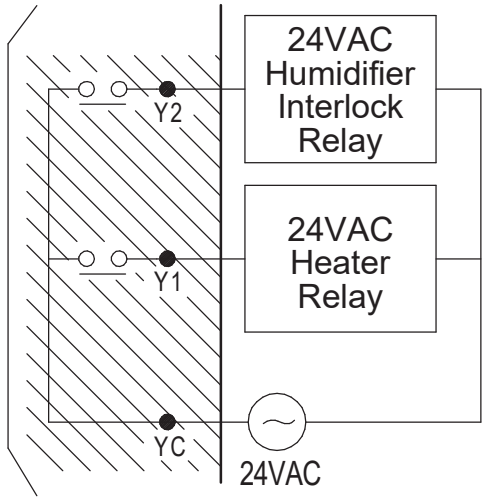


Example : Interlock



② Interlocking Humidifier and Heater

- Humidifier output(Y2-YC)
  • Energized while heating Thermo-ON (call for heating)
- Heater output(Y1-YC)
  • Auxiliary heater output with heat pump heating
  • Primary heater output when heat pump lockout enabled



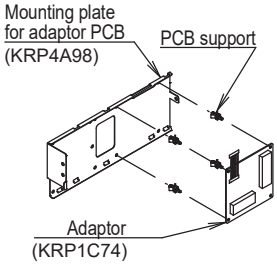
C: 2P263038F

❸ Installation

- Installation differs according to models as shown below.
- Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any excess wires with the attached clamps so as to keep loose wires off the indoor unit PCB.

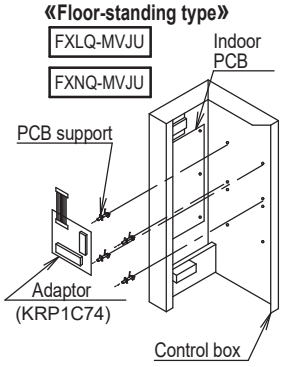
《Ceiling mounted duct type》

FXSQ-TAVJU



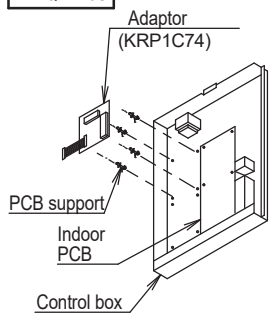
《Floor-standing type》

FXLQ-MVJU
FXNQ-MVJU



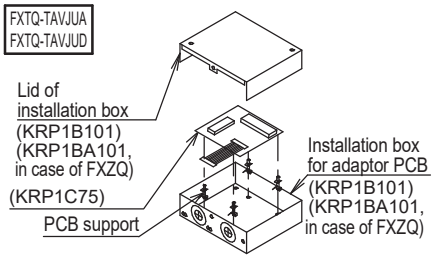
《Ceiling mounted duct type》

FXMQ~MVJU



《Ceiling mounted duct type》
《Ceiling mounted cassette type (2'X2')》
《Air handling unit type》
《One way blow cassette type》

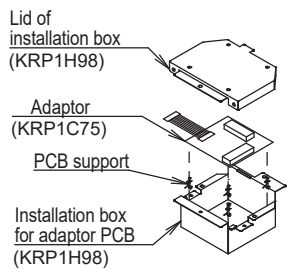
FXDQ-MVJU FXZQ-TAVJU
FXTQ-TAVJUA
FXTQ-TAVJUD



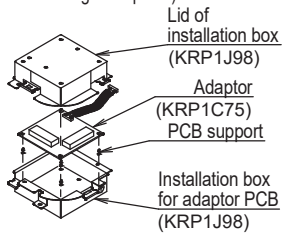
《Ceiling mounted cassette type》

FXFQ-TVJU

Insert the edge of the adaptor into the groove in the adaptor box.



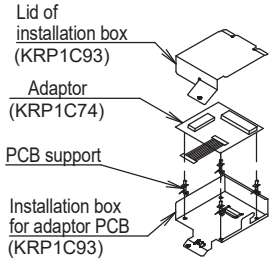
(In case of installing Self cleaning deco panel)



NOTE) Installation box for adaptor PCB is necessarry for installing wiring adaptor. Install the adaptor at Installation box side by using PCB support.

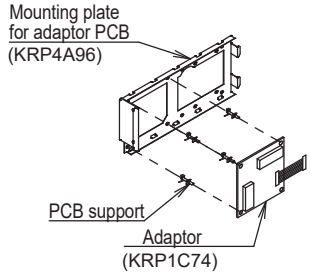
《Ceiling suspended type》

FXHQ-MVJU



《Ceiling mounted duct type》

FXMQ-PBVJU



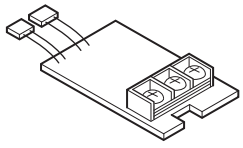
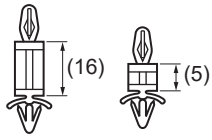
C: 2P263038F

3.16 KRP50-2 Wiring Adaptor for Remote Contact / Humidifier

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Item \ Model		KRP50-2
Applicable Model		VAM-GVJU
Dimensions (in.)	W	3-11/32"
	H	1-59/64"
	D	1-1/16"
Applicable load		AC250V 0.01~1A
Component parts		PCB, PCB stand offs, Installation manual

Components

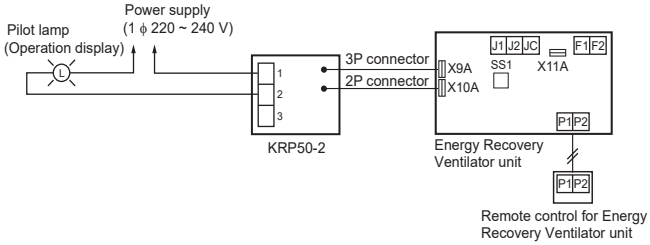
1. KRP50-2 PCB (×1)	2. PCB stand offs (4 large, 4 small)
	 Either large or small stand offs are used, depending on the model
Tie wrap(×1)	Manual(×1)

Installation guide

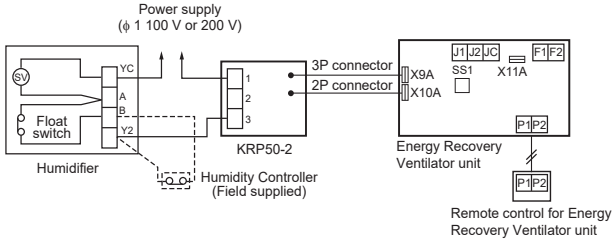
1 The KRP50-2 can be connected to Energy Recovery Ventilator units as follows to send the operation signal (pilot lamp etc.) to remote locations.

Electric wiring is as follows.

- For Remote contact



- For Humidifier



2 KRP50-2 can also be connected to SkyAir indoor unit for the interlocked operation with Energy Recovery Ventilator units.

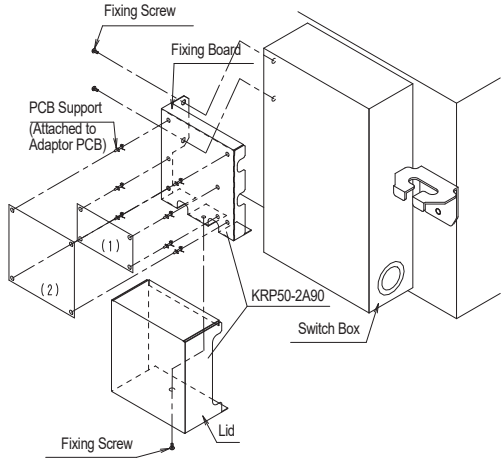
Components

See the right for components.

Fixing Screw	3 PCS.
Clamp	2 PCS.

Installation

Install the Adaptor PCB to the outside of switch box for Energy Recovery Ventilator unit as show below.



Applicable adaptor

	Adapter name	Kit name
(1)	Adaptor PCB for Humidifier	KRP50-2
(2)	Adaptor PCB for Remote control	KRP2A21

C: 4P055444

3.17 KRP4A71 / 72 / 73 / 74 Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2)

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

DAIKIN VRV HEAT PUMP

Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (Group Control Adaptor)

Installation Manual KRP4A71 • 72 • 73 • 74

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

Adaptor	Relay harness
×1	(1) ×1 each
	(2)

PCB support	×4
Clamp	×3
Installation manual	×1

Notes
- Kits vary according to applicable models.
- A special adaptor fixing plate and box are required for the following models.

FXAQ	KRP4A93
FXFQ • FCQ	KRP1H98
FXHQ • FHQ	KRP1C93
FXDQ • FXZQ • FXTQ • FTQ	KRP1B101
FXMQ～P • FBQ	KRP4A96

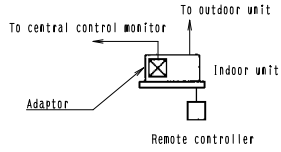
1 System outline

This kit enables remote control (ON/OFF control, temperature setting, operation display, error display) and can be used with the following systems though it cannot be used in conjunction with other optional controllers for centralized control.

1. Individual control (Each indoor unit is controlled individually.)

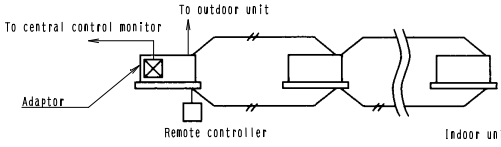
This system requires the following parts.
- Adaptor..... KRP4A71 • 72 • 73 • 74 Any one kit
- Remote controller..... BRC1E71 (For operation control)

(Ex.)When individually controlling 8 FXSQ12MVJU units
KRP4A71×8 kits
BRC1E71×8 kits

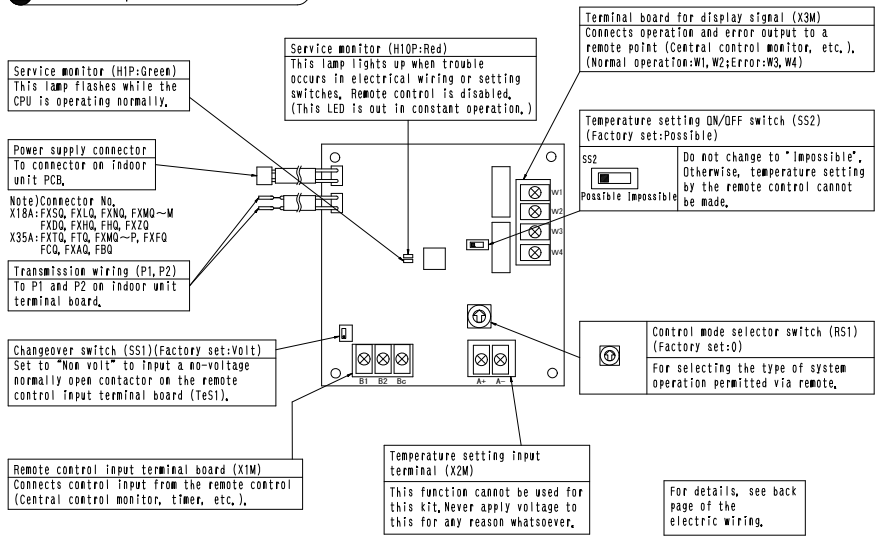


2. Group control (Multiple indoor units are controlled as a group.)

This system requires the following parts.
- Adaptor..... KRP4A71 • 72 • 73 • 74 Any one kit
- Remote controller (For operation control)..... BRC1E71



2 Names of parts and function



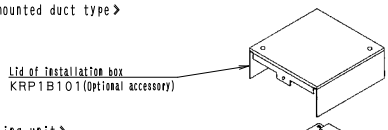
1P161220-1B

En. 英

❸Installation

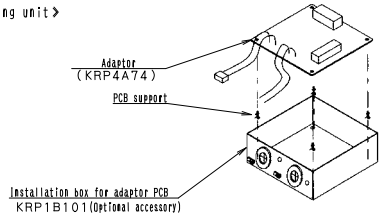
《Ceiling-mounted duct type》

FXDQ
FXZQ



《Air handling unit》

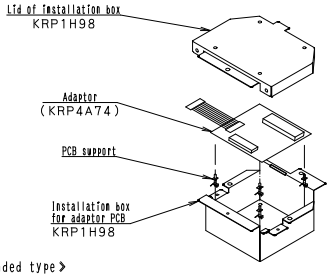
FXTQ
FTQ



Note: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

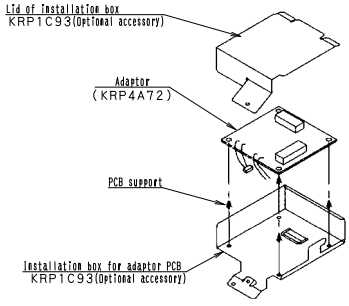
《Ceiling-mounted cassette type》

FXFQ (Fit the edge of the adaptor PCB into the grooves on the adaptor box.)
FCQ



《Ceiling-suspended type》

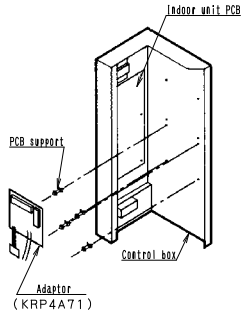
FXHQ
FHQ



Note: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

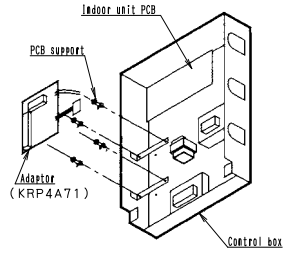
《Floor-standing type》

FXLQ
FXNQ



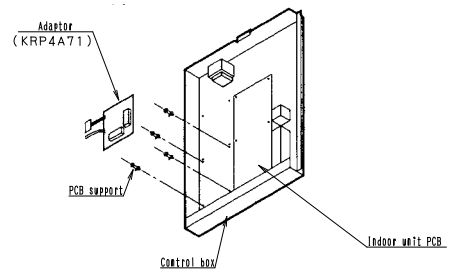
《Ceiling-mounted built-in type》

FXSQ



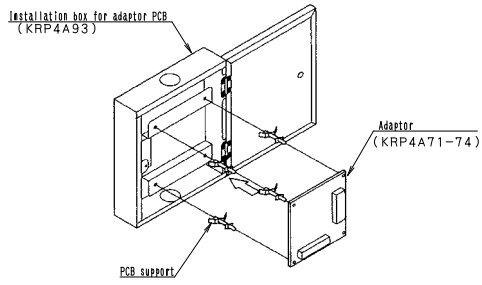
《Ceiling-mounted duct type》

FXMQ~M



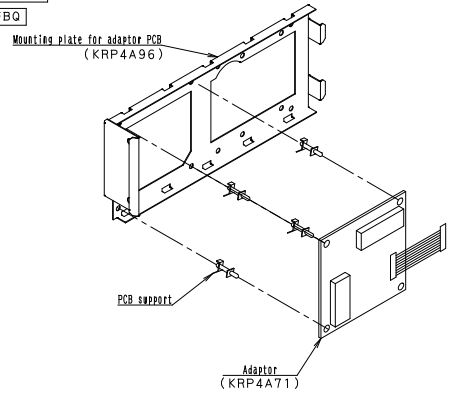
《Wall-mounted type》

FXAQ



《Ceiling-mounted duct type》

FXMQ~P
FBQ



1P161220-1B

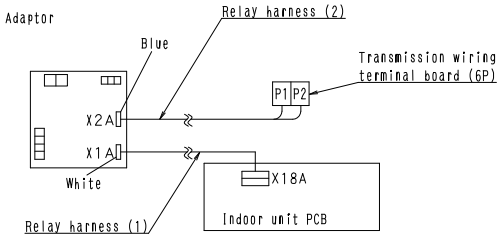
1P161220-1B

4 Electric wiring

① First, wire between the indoor and outdoor units, and then to the separate power sources, and finally between the indoor units and the remote controllers. Then, check if they operate properly.
(If wiring for group control by remote controller, check crosswires.)
For details, see the installation manual of the indoor and outdoor units.

② Next, wire between outside units such as the central control monitor, etc. and make the necessary settings.
For details, see Wiring to outside units(Central control monitor).

Wiring to indoor units



Make connections as shown adove, using the sttached relay harnesses (1) and (2).

- Connect relay harness (1) to the connector (X18A) on the indoor unit PCB.
- Relay harness (2) has no polarity. Connect it to terminals P1 and P2 on the transmission wiring terminal board inside the indoor unit electric parts box.

Wiring to outside units (Central control monitor)

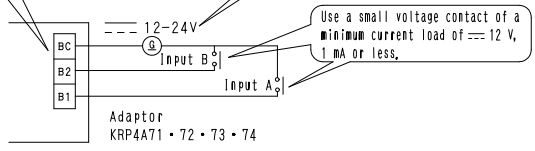
1. Remote control input (Operation control)
Wire as described below. Wiring differs depending on whether using a voltage or no-voltage input.

For voltage input

Set the changeover switch (SS1) to "Volt". (Factory set : Volt)

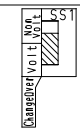
Connect the control input to the common contact (No polarity).

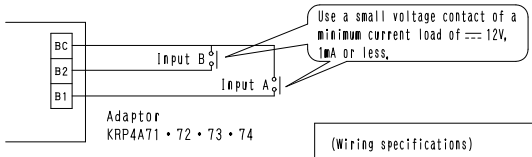
Use an external ⎓ 12 – 24V power supply. Each contact requires approximately 10 mA, therefore carefully select power supply capacity.



For Non volt input

Set the changeover switch (SS1) to "Non volt".





(Wiring specifications)
Wiring ・・・Sheathed vinyl cord or cable
Gauge ・・・AWG24-16
Length ・・・Max. 490ft

<Note>
Keep transmission wiring away from power supply wiring to avoid malfunctions.

1P161221-1B

2. Setting the control mode selector switch (RS1)

Using the control mode selector switch (RS1), select the control mode as described below.

(Factory set)
"0" position

① For specifying individual display

Position	Function
0	Individual display (Input ignored)

② When operating the unit with constant input at input A

Position	Function	When input A is ON	When input A is OFF
1	ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller	Operation (Normally ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller)	OFF + ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller
2	Centralized	Operation + ON/OFF control possible by remote controller	
3	OFF control possible by remote controller	Operation + OFF control possible by remote controller (ON control impossible by remote controller)	
4	ON/OFF control possible by remote controller	ON/OFF control possible by remote controller (Operation impossible by optional controller)	

〈Note〉

- Input B is for forced ON/OFF input. When input B is ON, OFF control is possible but ON/OFF control by the remote controller is impossible, and input A is ignored. When it is OFF, input A is ignored even if selected, it is necessary to reselect input A.

③ When operating the unit using instantaneous input at input A
(Use an instantaneous input of 200 msec or longer ON time).

Position	Function	Input A	Input B capacity
5	ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller	Turns OFF system with ON input Turns ON system with ON input	Input B is for forced OFF input (when ON, OFF control is possible but ON/OFF control by remote controller is impossible, and input A is ignored)
6	Individual	Turns OFF system with ON input Turns ON system with ON input (Normally ON/OFF control possible by remote controller)	

★ For thermostat control using input B

Position	When input A is ON	When input B is ON
C	ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller (Same as position 5)	Forced thermostat OFF command
D		Energy saving command (✱)
E	Individual (Same as position 6)	Forced thermostat OFF command
F		Energy saving command (✱)

- Forced thermostat OFF command
  Indoor unit fan only operates.
- Energy saving command (✱)
  The indoor unit operates at 4° F higher (cooling)/lower (heating) the set temperature.

〈Note〉

- In such case, even if input A is ON, thermostat control is turned OFF, and all units in the same group will stop.

④ When operating the unit using instantaneous input at input A and B
(Use an instantaneous input of 200 msec or longer ON time).

Position	Function	When input A is ON	When input A is OFF
7	ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller	Operation (Normally ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller)	OFF + ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller
8	Centralized	Operation + ON/OFF control possible by remote controller	
9	OFF control possible by remote controller	Operation + OFF control possible by remote controller (ON control impossible by remote controller)	
A	ON/OFF control possible by remote controller	ON/OFF control possible by remote controller (Operation impossible by optional controller)	
B	Individual	Operation (Normally ON/OFF control possible by remote controller)	OFF (Normally ON/OFF control possible by remote controller)

〈Note〉

- When set to position 7-A, and using the constant mode for input B, forced stop capacity is enabled (Input A is ignored).
- At position B, the constant mode for input B is not used.

En. 英

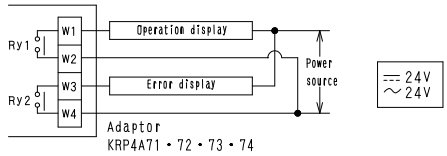
3. Cancelling display signals

Operation output terminals (W1 and W2) and error output terminals (W3 and W4) are no-voltage normally constant contacts.

(Allowed electric current per contact is between 10 mA and 3 A.)

Normal operation output (Ry1)
ON when the indoor unit is operating normally.

Error output (Ry2)
ON when the indoor unit stops because of malfunction or when a transmission error occurs between the adaptor and the indoor unit.



Display output is as described below.

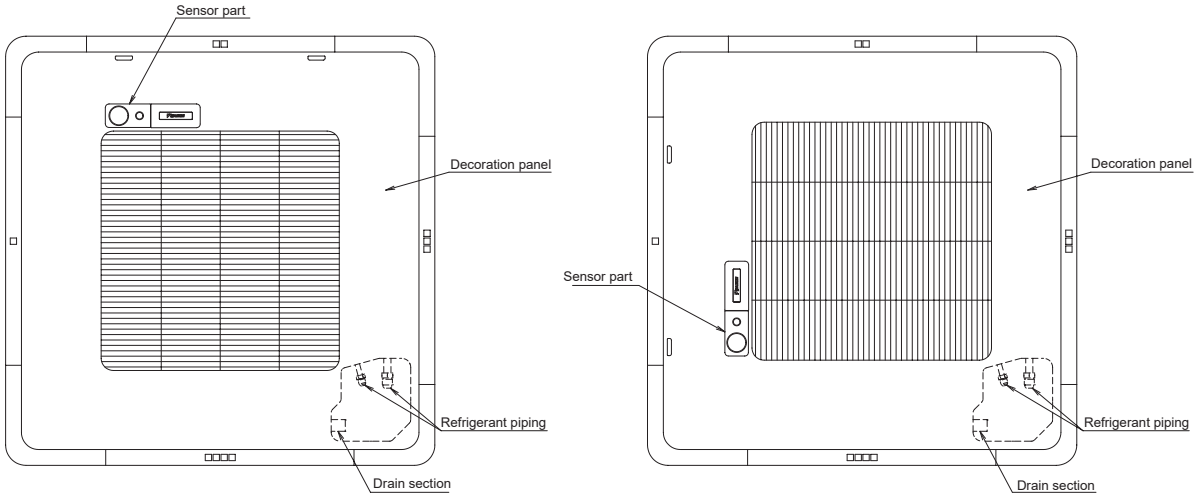
Output	Both Ry1 and Ry2 OFF	Only Ry1 ON	Only Ry2 ON
Display	OFF	Normal operation	System stopped due to malfuction or transmission error generated between adaptor and indoor unit

1P161221-1B

3.18 BRE49B2F / BRE49B1F Sensor Unit (Sensor Kit)

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

• Installation of sensor part



C: 3D075714M

Daikin Air Conditioners Sensor kit installation manual

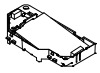
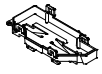
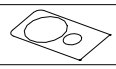
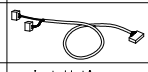
Read this manual before installation and follow the instruction

BRE49B1(F)(K), BRE49B2(F)(K) 1P383776-1B

Note to the installer ● After installation, make sure the sensor can activate the swing flap operation.

Note ● Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

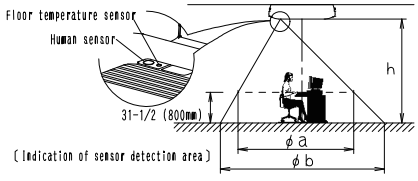
Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Sensor assembly		1 set	Sensor cover		1	Brand name plate		1	Fixing screw		1
						Wire harness (Long)		1	Wire harness (Short)		1
Clamp material (Large)		5	Clamp material (Small)		1	Others	Installation manual (This manual)	1			

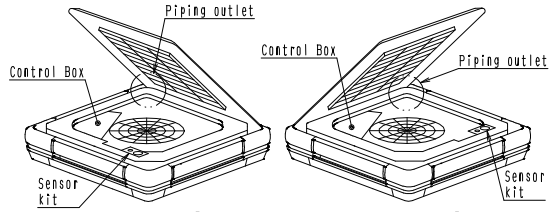
1P383776-1B

❶ Before installation

(1) It is easier to assemble the sensor kit before suspending an indoor unit.
(2) Sensor kit is installable to 2 locations in accordance with the direction of suction grille shown in the figure on the right. Install the kit after checking the customers request.

<Note>
- When the local temperature sensed by the floor sensor and the room air temperature are extremely different, it may affect judgment of the floor temperature sensor. (e.g. Location where floor heater or high-heat generating machine is installed.)
- When the height of ceiling is 8.9ft (2.7m), Human sensor detects the temperature of the area of 31-1/2inch (800mm) from the floor. Floor temperature sensor detects the temperature of floor surface. The center of detection range is the same as the center of the product.





Height of the indoor unit installed h [ft (m)]	8.9 (2.7)	11.5 (3.5)	13.2 (4.0)
Human sensor φa [ft (m)]	approx. 28 (8.5)	approx. 38 (11.5)	approx. 44 (13.5)
Floor temperature sensor φb [ft (m)]	approx. 36 (11)	approx. 46 (14)	approx. 52 (16)

✽Value shows maximum.

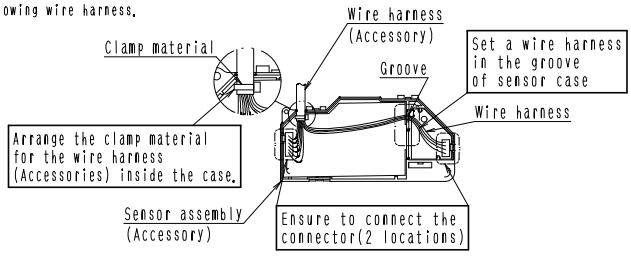
❷ Sensor unit assembling

(1) Connect wire harness to sensor assembly.
In accordance with the location determined on ❶Before installation, use a following wire harness.
If the installation location of sensor kit is Example 1., use short wire harness.
If the installation location of sensor kit is Example 2., use long wire harness.

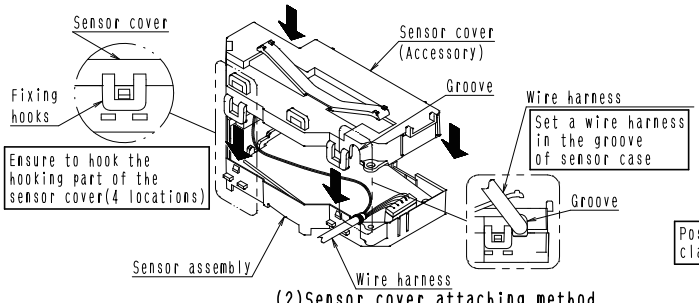
① Be sure to connect the connector of the wire harness to the connectors (2 locations) of the sensor assembly. (Be careful not to drop PCB from the sensor assembly.)
② Straighten the wire harness as shown in the figure.

(2) Attach the sensor cover to the sensor assembly.
① Attach the sensor cover in accordance with the shape of the sensor assembly. Ensure that the clamp material for the wire harness is inside the case and wire harness is not located between the sensor cover and sensor assembly. Ensure that 4 fixing hooks are secured.

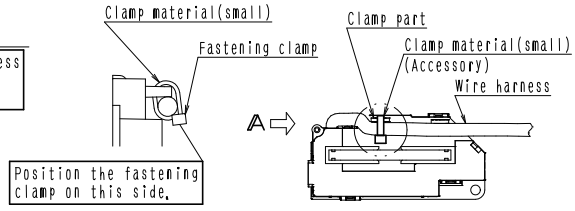
(3) Arrange the wire harness.
① Pass the wire harness inside the clamp part of the sensor cover and band to the clamp material of sensor cover using the clamp material (small). The fastening part should come to Arrow view A location. After bundled, cut off the extra clamp material. (Ensure that there is no clearance between the sensor assembly and sensor cover.)



(1)Wire harness connecting method



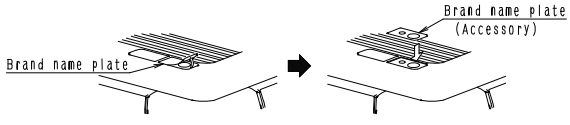
(2)Sensor cover attaching method



Arrow view A (3)Wire harness clamping method

❸ Applying Brand name plate

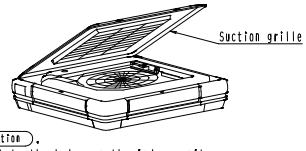
<Applying Brand name plate>
- Remove the brand name plate stuck with adhesive material.
- Apply the attached brand name plate. Align with the hole and indent on the suction grille.)

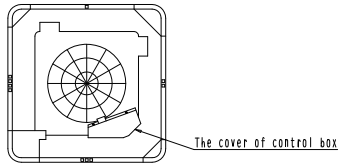


1P383776-1B

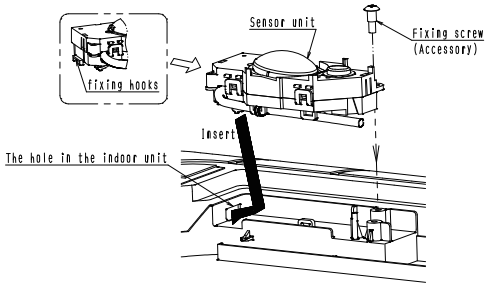
❹ Mounting a sensor unit

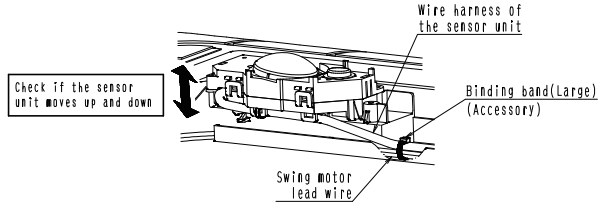
(1)Remove the suction grille and a cover of the control box In accordance with the Installation manual attached to the indoor unit.



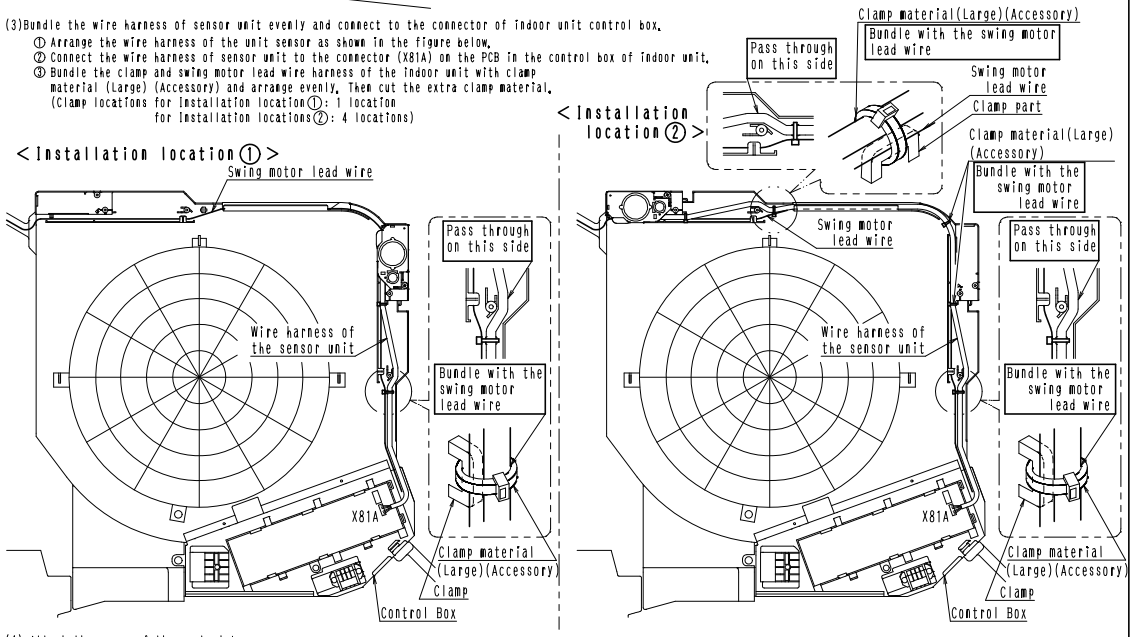


(2)Attach the sensor unit to the indoor unit.
For the mounting location, see ❶ Before Installation .
① Insert the fixing hooks on the sensor unit to the holes on the indoor unit.
② Mount the sensor unit with fixing screws attached with this kit.
③ Bundle the wire harness of the sensor unit to the swing motor lead wire harness of the indoor unit with the binding band(Large)attached with this kit.
Ensure that the sensor unit can move up and down.





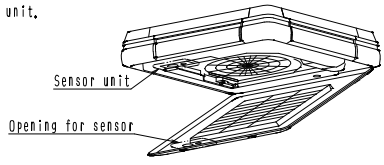
(3)Bundle the wire harness of sensor unit evenly and connect to the connector of indoor unit control box.
① Arrange the wire harness of the unit sensor as shown in the figure below.
② Connect the wire harness of sensor unit to the connector (X81A) on the PCB in the control box of indoor unit.
③ Bundle the clamp and swing motor lead wire harness of the indoor unit with clamp material (Large) (Accessory) and arrange evenly. Then cut the extra clamp material.
(Clamp locations for Installation location①: 1 location
for Installation locations②: 4 locations)



(4) Attach the cover of the control box

❺ Mounting suction grills

●Mount the suction grille in accordance with the installation manual attached to the indoor unit, make sure that the opening for the sensor on the suction grille and the location of the sensor unit are matched.



❻ Test operation

<Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit as well as the operation and installation manuals attached to the remote controller.>

●Make sure that all installation work for the indoor unit has been completed.

Sensor kit connection check

●Perform the following steps to confirm that the sensor kit is correctly connected.
1. After turning on the power, confirm that no infrared presence or infrared floor sensor errors (error codes: CE-01 through CE-04) are present upon pressing the ON/OFF button on the remote controller.
2. Operate the remote controller to confirm that the functions only supported on models equipped with an infrared presence sensor listed in the "Main Menu List" or "Full Menu" in the remote controller operation manual are indicated on the remote controller menu. (Example: "Auto airflow", "Draft prevention", etc.)
3. Confirm that the functions as confirmed in step 2 above operate correctly.
(Note) Swing control using the infrared presence sensor is not available when using the air conditioner for frontal air discharge only by means of flexible ducts or other accessories.

1P383776-1B

1P383776-1B

3.19 BRYQ60AAW Sensor Kit

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

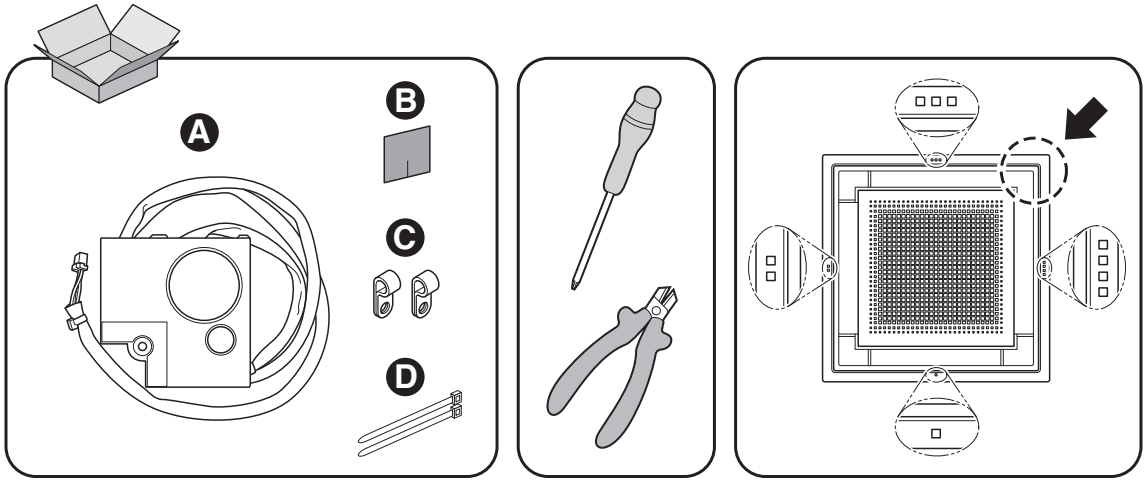
DAIKIN

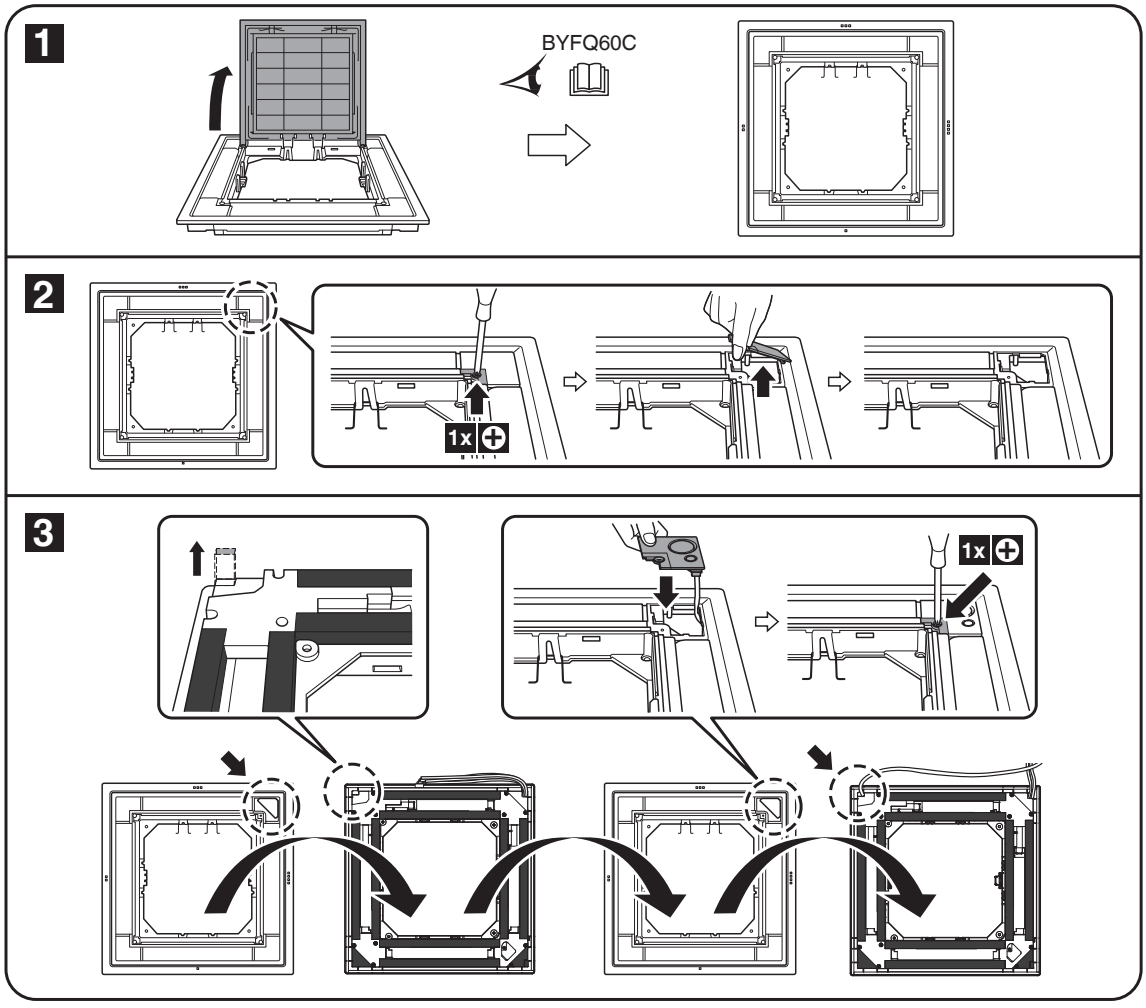
3P609715-1A

BRYQ60AAW

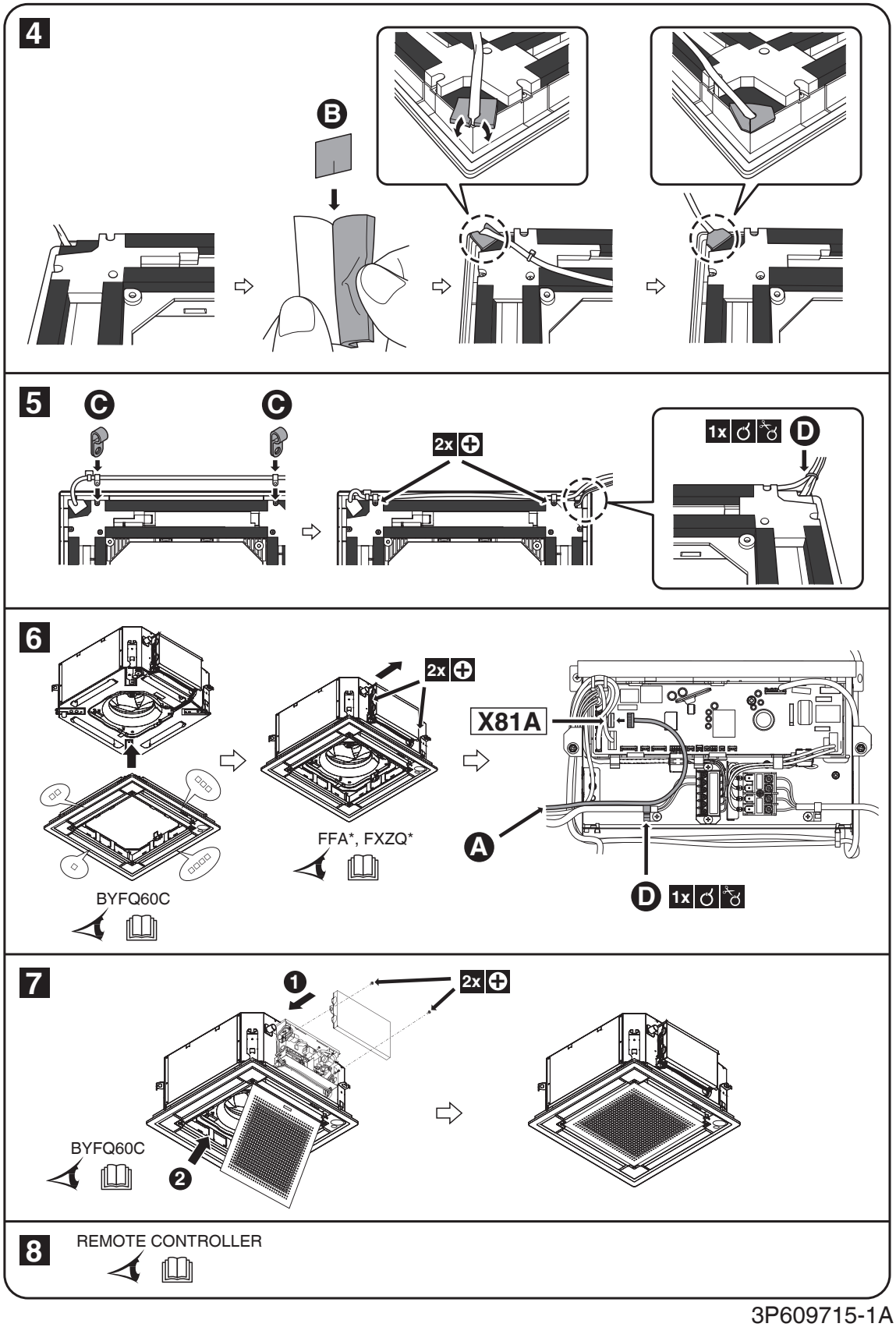
SENSOR KIT
INSTALLATION MANUAL

The two-dimensional bar code is a manufacturing code.





3P609715-1A



3P609715-1A

3P609715-1A

3.20 DTA114A61-9 Adaptor for Multi Tenant

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Daikin Air Conditioner **Adaptor for Multi tenant Installation Manual**

DTA114A61 • 61-9

Accessories Check that the following accessories are provided with the adaptor before installation.

Adaptor for Multi tenant

PCB support	4 pcs.
Tiewrap	4 pcs.
Relay harness	4 pcs. (see the table on the right-hand side for applicable models)
Installation Manual	1 pc.

Applicable models	Relay harness
FXFQ~P	700 mm, White, White, 4 pins, UL electric wire
FXMQ~P	350 mm, White, White, 4 pins, UL electric wire
BSVQ~P	260 mm, White, Blue, 3 pins, UL electric wire
FXAQ~M	1900 mm, White, White, 3 pins, VCTF electric wire

Note

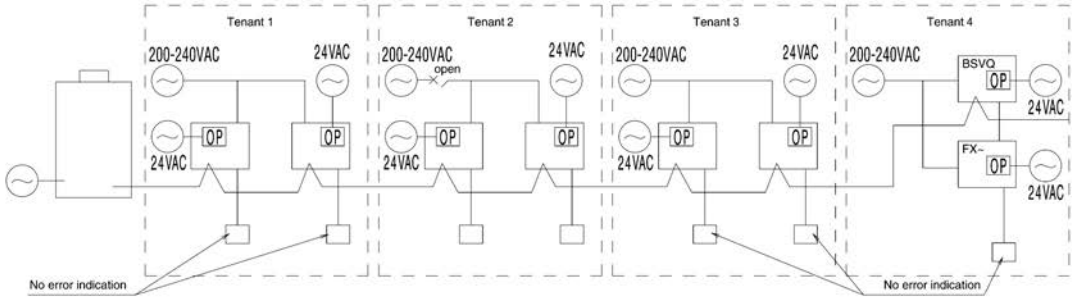
- An adaptor mounting plate and mounting box are required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor to the following models.

FXFQ~P: KRP1H98
FXMQ~P: KRP4A96
FXAQ~M: KRP4A93

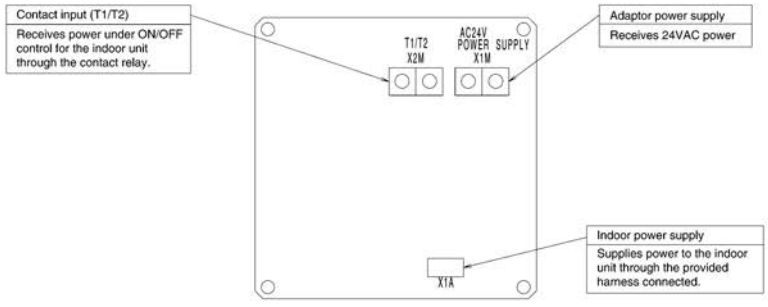
- Both ends of harness are for connection of PCB of indoor unit (or BS unit) and for connection of adaptor for multi tenant. Be careful when connecting them.

❶ GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

- The use of this adaptor allows the system to operate with no system error indication in the event of the interruption of power supply to other indoor units. (In the case of the following diagram, there will be no error indication on the remote controllers of tenant 1 or tenant 3 or tenant 4 in the event of the interruption of power supply to tenant 2.)



❷ NAMES AND FUNCTIONS

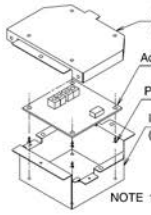


1P223254B

❸ INSTALLATION

⟨⟨Ceiling-mounted Cassette Round-flow Type⟩⟩

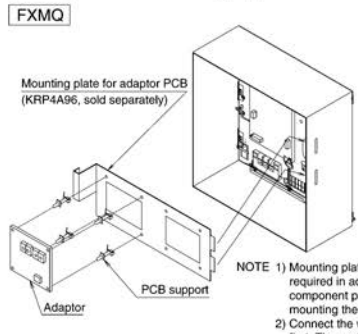
FXFQ



NOTE 1) Installation box for adaptor PCB is required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor.
2) Connect the wiring to the adaptor PCB first. The work will be easier.
(Refer to ❺ METHOD OF WIRING.)

⟨⟨Ceiling-mounted Duct Type⟩⟩

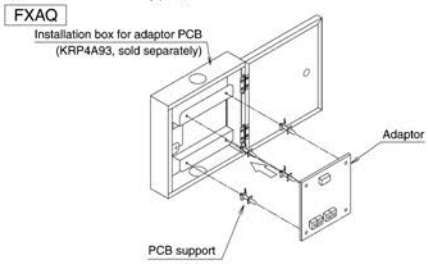
FXMQ



NOTE 1) Mounting plate for adaptor PCB is required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor.
2) Connect the wiring to the indoor PCB first. The work will be easier.
(Refer to ❺ METHOD OF WIRING.)

⟨⟨Wall-mounted type⟩⟩

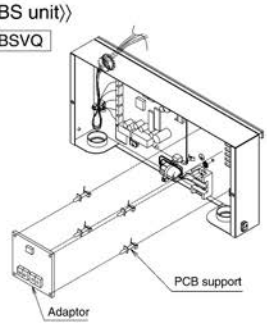
FXAQ



NOTE) Installation box for adaptor PCB is required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor.

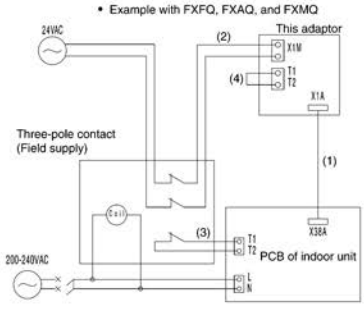
⟨⟨BS unit⟩⟩

BSVQ



❹ ELECTRIC WIRING

• Example with FXFQ, FXAQ, and FXMQ

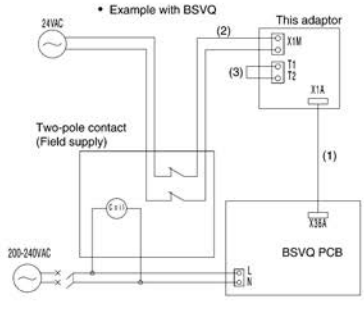


(1) Connect this adaptor and the PCB of the indoor unit with the provided relay harness (varying with each indoor unit model).
(2) Connect the 24VAC (±20%) power supply to the X1M terminals of the adaptor through the normally closed contacts of the relay. Be sure to contact the relay contacts to both poles of the power supply so that the positive and negative lines of the power supply will be turned off simultaneously. A transformer may be used for the 24VAC power supply provided for each adaptor on the condition that the transformer has a capacity of 24VA or over.
(3) Provide a relay (with a normally closed contact) between the T1 and T2 terminals of the PCB.

Minimum contact load: 1mA normally closed contact at 15VDC
Rated current: 3 A min.
Wire specifications: Vinyl cord with sheath or cable (2 wire)
Wiring thickness: 0.75 to 1.25 mm²
Wiring length: 100 m max.

(4) Short-circuit the T1 and T2 terminals of the adaptor.

• Example with BSVQ



(1) Connect the adaptor and BSVQ PCB through the relay harness.
(2) Connect the 24VAC (±20%) power supply to the X1M terminals of the adaptor through the normally closed contacts of the relay. Be sure to contact the relay contacts to both poles of the power supply so that the positive and negative lines of the power supply will be turned off simultaneously. A transformer may be used for the 24VAC power supply provided for each adaptor on the condition that the transformer has a capacity of 24VA or over.

(3) Short-circuit the T1 and T2 terminals of the adaptor.

Minimum contact load: 1mA normally closed contact at 15VDC
Rated current: 3 A min.
Wire specifications: Vinyl cord with sheath or cable (2 wire)
Wiring thickness: 0.75 to 1.25 mm²
Wiring length: 100 m max.

1P223254-1B

1P223254B

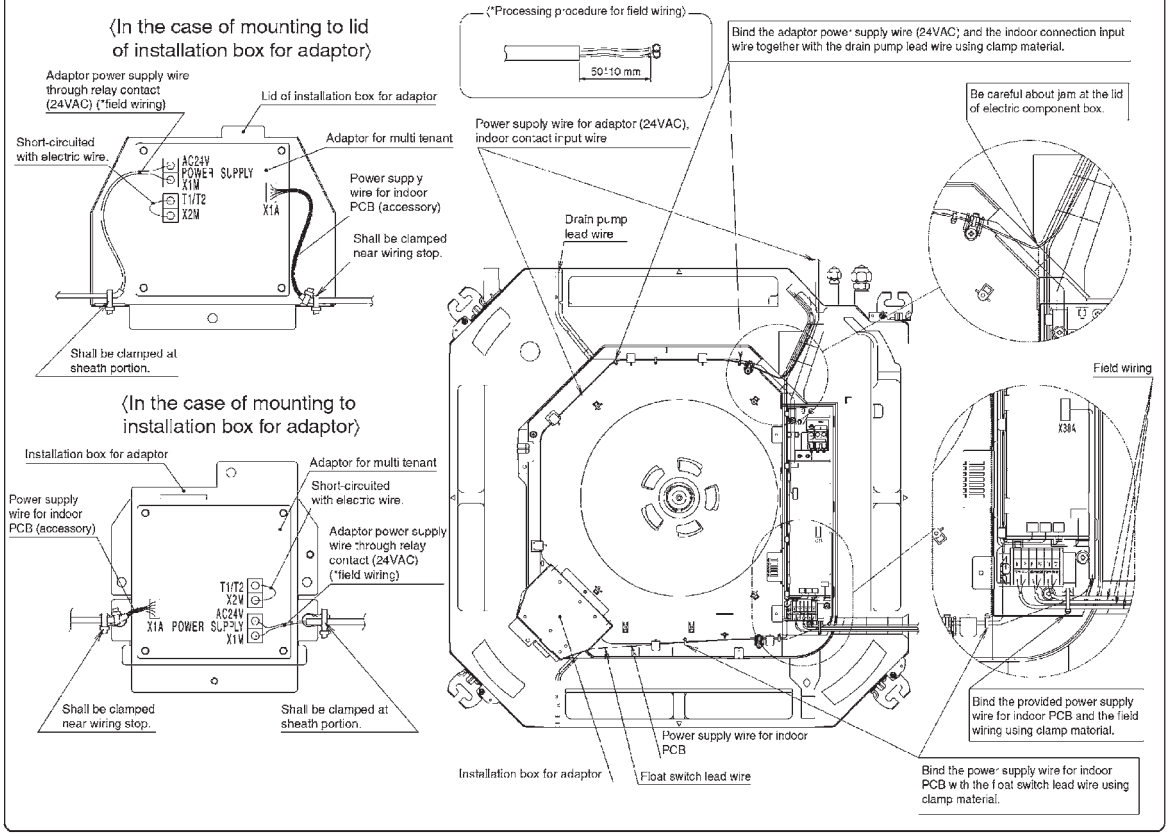
5 METHOD OF WIRING

〈CAUTION〉

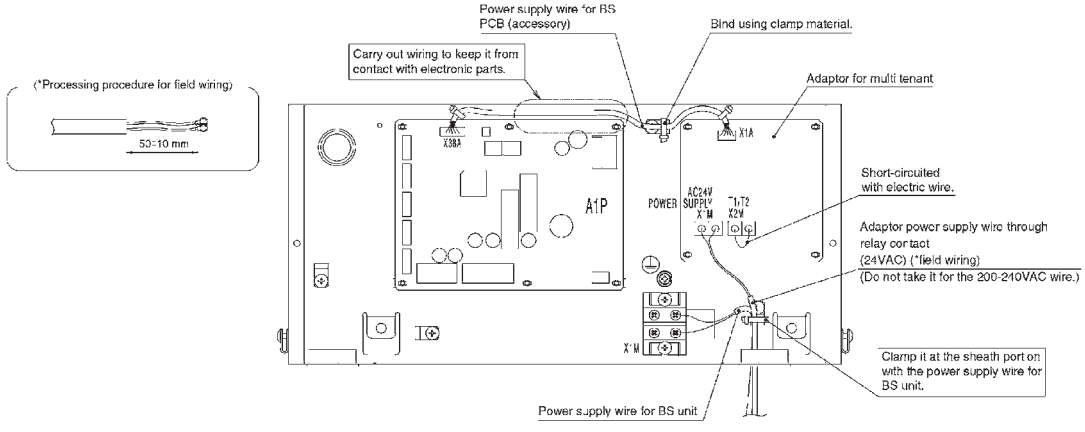
- For connection to the terminal block, be sure to use a ring type crimp style terminal. Also insulate the crimping portion, for example, by mounting an insulation sleeve.
- For wiring, use the specified wire to connect it securely and fix it so that external force is not applied to the terminal.
- For tightening the terminal screw, use a proper screwdriver. A smaller size screwdriver may damage the screw head, resulting in improper tightening.
- If the terminal screw is secured too tightly, the screw may be damaged. For tightening torque for terminal screw, see the table on the right-hand side.

	Tightening torque (N・m)
Terminal block of adaptor for multi tenant (X1M, X2M)	1.18~1.44

● FXFQ-TVJU〈Ceiling-mounted Cassette Round-flow Type)

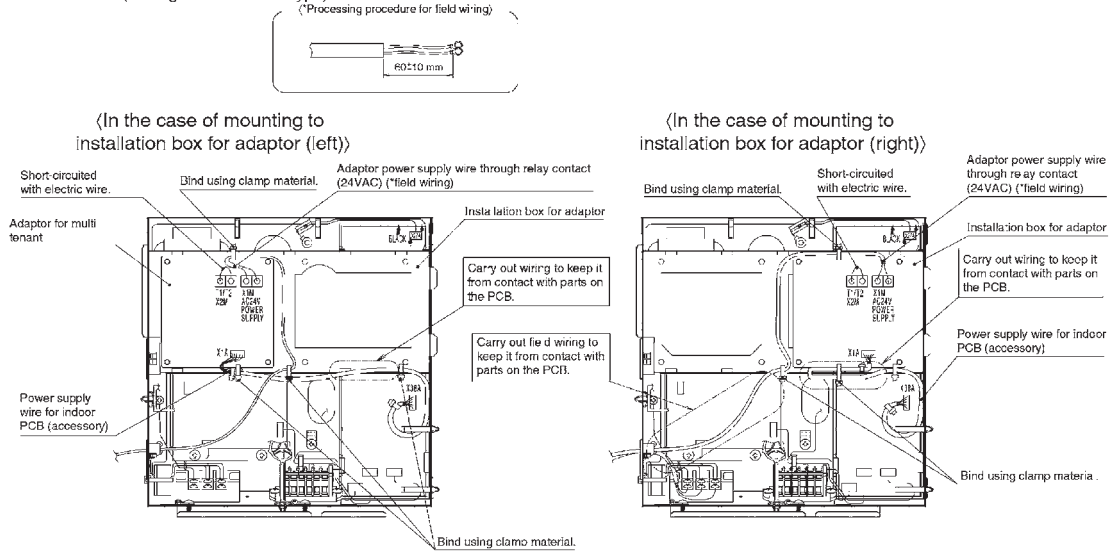


● BSQ-TVJ, BS-Q54TVJ (BS unit)

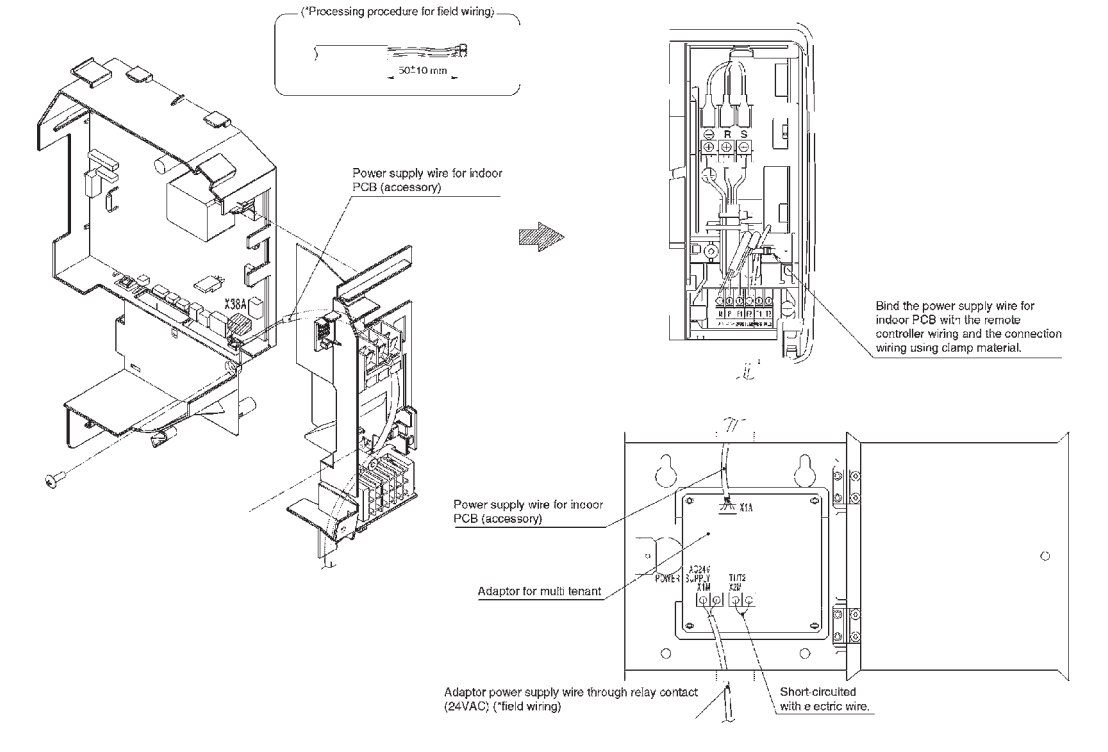


C: 1P224646A

● FXMQ-PBVJU (Ceiling-mounted Duct Type)

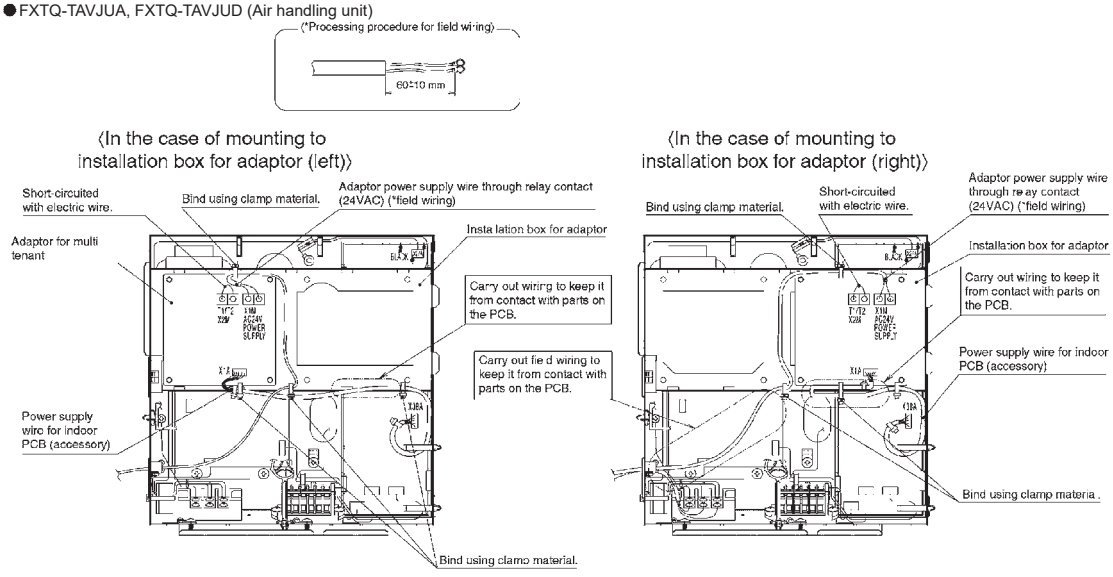


● FXAQ-PVJU (Wall-mounted type)



C: 1P224646A

● FXTQ-TAVJUA, FXTQ-TAVJUD (Air handling unit)



⑥ FIELD SETTING

Follow the "FIELD SETTING" in the installation manual of the remote controller for the indoor unit and make a necessary field setting in the remote controller after turning the air conditioner ON.

- Set the remote controller to field set mode, select Mode No. "12", and set the FIRST CODE NO. to "1" and the SECOND CODE NO. to "04".
  (The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01".)
  Note: The remote control terminals (T1 and T2) of the indoor unit is for multi-tenant use. Therefore, the COMPUTERIZED CONTROL of the indoor unit is not available.

C: 1P224646A

3.21 DTA118A71 BACnet MS/TP adaptor

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A71 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

MODEL COMPATIBILITY:

Compatible with VRV, VAM** and SkyAir models that is using DIII-Net communication.

Compatible Mini split/Multi-split units	
FFQ_LVJU	Requires Interface Adaptor DTA112BA51
FTXS, CTXS, CTXG, FTXG, FDXS, CDXS, FVXS	Requires DIII-Net Adapter KRP928BB2S**
FTX, FTXN, FTK, and FTKN	Requires DIII-Net Adapter KRP928BB2S** and an Interface adaptor KRP067A41E/KRP980B1/KRP980B2E
FDMQ, FFQ_Q	Use F1-F2 connection on the indoor unit.

*FTK_AXVJU, FTKB_AXVJU, FTX_AXVJU and FTXB_AXVJU units are not compatible.
** Requires at least one VRV unit or an VRV centralized controller in the DIII-Net network.

SPECIFICATIONS:

Model	DTA118A71
Description	DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor
Maximum Connections	32 Indoor Units / 4 Outdoor Units
Communication Wire (DIII-Net)	18AWG-2, No polarity Stranded, Non-shielded
Communication Wire (BACnet)	18 AWG, polarity sensitive
Total Wiring Length (BACnet)	1,640 ft. (500 m)
Communication Protocol	BACnet MS/TP / DIII-Net
Communication Speed (BACnet)	9600bps/19200bps/38400bps
Indoor unit Group Address Range	(1-00 to 2-15) or (3-00 to 4-15)
Outdoor unit Airnet Address Range	00-04,05-08,08-12,13-16,17-20,21-24,25-28,29-32,33-36,37-40,41-44,45-48,49-52,53-56,57-60,61-63
BACnet MS/TP MAC Address Range	0-127
BACnet devices in the network	32
Power	16VDC supplied by Outdoor Unit (1.58VA maximum)
Operating Temp Range	-4 to 149°F (-20 to 65°C)
Operating Humidity Range	95% or less (RH) (w/o condensation)
Dimensions (WxH)	3.94 x 3.94 inch (100 x 100 mm)
Weight (Mass)	0.18 lbs. (80 g)

PRODUCT IMAGE:

Daikin Comfort Technologies North America, Inc., 19001 Kermier Road, Waller, TX, 77484
www.daikinac.com www.daikincity.com

(Daikin's products are subject to continuous improvements. Daikin reserves the right to modify product design, specifications and information in this data sheet without notice and without incurring any obligations)

Page **1** of **7**

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A71 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

FEATURES:

- Direct connection to the BMS using BACnet MS/TP protocol
- BTL Certified device
- Easy commissioning using DIP switches & BACnet Objects.
- Each adaptor can connect to 4 outdoor units and 32 indoor units.
- BACnet virtual router function implemented: Individual BACnet device ID assigned to each indoor unit group address and outdoor unit Airnet address.
- Independent heating and cooling setpoints.
- Can be mounted to indoor unit or outdoor units (Select models only)
- BACnet objects for operation data (compatible outdoor units and indoor unit data).
- Supports Celsius or Fahrenheit for temperature values.
- Independent BACnet object error status for indoor unit and outdoor unit.

POINTS LIST:

- **System Configuration points**

Point Name	Description
D3 control address indoor	Sets the range of indoor unit address to monitor and control.
D3 control address outdoor	Sets the range of outdoor unit address to monitor and control.
Device instance method	Sets BACnet device instance method of virtual devices.
Adaptor device instance	Sets adaptor BACnet device instance.
Network number	Sets the BACnet network number for virtual device.
Baud rate	Sets BACnet baud rate
Sets scale	Sets the temperature scale for BACnet Objects

- **Indoor unit points**

Point Name	Description
Unit On_Off Status	Monitors and displays indoor unit On or Off status
Unit On/Off Command	Command indoor unit On or Off
Alarm Status	Monitors whether the indoor unit is operating normally and issues an alarm if the indoor unit has a malfunction. Error Code is shown in the description.
Operation Mode (Note 3,4)	Command and monitor indoor unit operation mode
Ventilation Mode	Command and monitor ventilation unit operation mode
Ventilation Rate	Command and monitor ventilation unit airflow rate
Fresh Up	Command and monitor fresh up setting for a ventilation unit.
Room Temperature	Monitor the room temperature of the indoor unit
Cooling Setpoint (Note 2)	Command and monitor the indoor unit cooling setpoint
Heating Setpoint (Note 2)	Command and monitor the indoor unit heating setpoint
Fan Speed	Sets the indoor unit fan speed and monitors the latest setting
Airflow Direction	Command and monitor the indoor unit airflow direction (louver control)
Remote Controller Prohibit (On_Off)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's On/Off

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A71 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

Remote Controller Prohibit (Operation Mode)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's operation mode
Remote Controller Prohibit (On_Off)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's setpoint
Filter Sign Status	Monitors and displays the filter run time and provides service alert.
Filter sign Reset	Clears the filter sign status
Indoor Unit Fan Status	Monitors and displays indoor unit fan status
Communication Status	Monitor if the communication is Normal or in Alarm
Thermo On status	Monitors and displays whether the indoor unit is actively cooling or heating.
Compressor Status	Monitors and displays if the compressor of the outdoor unit is On/Off/Defrost
Aux Heater Status	Monitors if the external heater controlled by the indoor unit is operating
Forced Thermo Off	Command Forced Thermo Off for the target indoor unit.
Indoor unit changeover option	Monitors if the indoor unit can change modes between heating and cooling
Return air temperature (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the return air temperature
Discharge air temperature (Note 5,7)	Monitors and displays the discharge air temperature of the FXMQ_PB indoor unit only.
Liquid pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature.
Gas pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the gas pipe temperature.
EV position (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the expansion valve position.
OU airnet address (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays outdoor unit Airnet address.
Forced Stop status	Monitors and displays forced stop status
Energy saving command (Setpoint shift)	Control and monitor energy savings command.

1. Refer to design guide & submittal datasheet for the indoor unit point combability.
2. The Mini-Splits have varied setpoints ranges (64F – 90F in cooling and 50F – 86F in heating). In the event a value outside of the available setpoint range is sent from the BACnet building management system via BACnet Adaptor, the indoor unit will ignore the out of range setpoint command (However, in the above case, the BACnet Adaptor can only send the cooling setpoint value and heating setpoint value of between 64F-82F.)
3. Only Ventilation cleaning on VAM.
4. Fan, Dry, and Auto are not supported when using the KRP928 adaptor for Mini-split integration to the DIII-Net.
5. Unit types other than those supported display an invalid value (0)
6. The data is invalid for models that do not support the target data.
7. For FXDQ, FXHQ and FHQ units a valid value cannot be displayed.

- **Outdoor unit points**

Point Name	Description
Communication Status	Monitors and displays the communication status
Operation Mode	Monitors and displays the operation mode (Cool, Heat, Fan or Heat &Cool)
Outdoor unit Alarm Status	Monitors whether the outdoor unit is operating normally
Special Modes	Monitors and displays if a unit is defrost/oil-return/pump down or restart standby sequence.
Electric Power	Monitors and displays the electric power (calculated)
Electric Current	Monitors and displays the electric current (calculated).
Outdoor Air Temperature	Monitors and displays the outdoor air temperature
Backup Operation	Monitors and displays if the outdoor unit is in backup operation
Stepdown control	Monitors and displays if the outdoor unit is in stepdown control.
Condensing Pressure	Monitors and displays the condensing pressure
Evaporating Pressure	Monitors and displays the evaporating pressure
Condensing Temperature	Monitors and displays the condensing temperature

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A71 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

Evaporating Temperature	Monitors and displays the evaporating temperature
Inverter Compressor 1 Speed	Monitors and displays the speed of the inverter compressor 1
Inverter Compressor 2 Speed	Monitors and displays the speed of the inverter compressor 2
Fan Step	Monitors and displays the fan step
EV Position 1	Monitors and displays the position of the expansion valve 1
EV Position 2	Monitors and displays the position of the expansion valve 2
Hot Gas Temperature (Compressor 1)	Monitors and displays the hot gas temperature of the compressor 1
Hot Gas Temperature (Compressor 2)	Monitors and displays the hot gas temperature of the compressor 2
Liquid Pipe Temperature	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature
Sub Compressor Body Temperature	Monitors and displays the compressor body temperature.
Liquid Pipe Temperature (HX Upper)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature for the upper HX
Liquid Pipe Temperature (HX Lower)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature for the lower HX
Liquid Pipe Temperature (Deicer)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature for the de-icer
Gas Pipe Temperature (HX Upper	Monitors and displays the gas pipe temperature for the upper HX
Gas Pipe Temperature (HX Lower)	Monitors and displays the gas pipe temperature for the lower HX
Suction Temperature	Monitors and displays the suction temperature
Compressor Suction Temperature	Monitors and displays the compressor's suction temperature
Subcool Inlet Temperature	Monitors and displays the subcool inlet temperature
Subcool Outlet Temperature	Monitors and displays the subcool outlet temperature
Compressor Body Temperature	Monitors and displays the sub compressor body temperature
Receiver Inlet Temperature	Monitor and displays the Receiver Inlet Temperature.
Subcool EV Position	Monitors and displays the subcool expansion valve position
4WayValve	Monitors and displays the 4 Way valve position
Compressor1 current	Monitors and displays the Compressor 1 current (calculated)
Compressor2 current	Monitors and displays the compressor 2 current (calculated)

Compatible outdoor units.

- VRV4: RXYQ_T(A), REYQ_T(A), RXLQ_T(A), RELQ_T(A)
- VRV 4X: REYQ_XA, RXYQ_XA
- VRV4S: RXTQ_TA
- VRV LIFE: RXSQ_TA
- VRVW (T): RWEQ_T
- RWEYQ72PCTJ & RWEYQ72PCYD

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A71 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

FUNCTION COMPATIBILITY:

The following centralized controller can be installed with the DTA118A71.

- INTELLIGENT TOUCH CONTROLLER (ITC / ITOUCH) [DCS601C71]
- INTELLIGENT TOUCH MANAGER (ITM) [DCM601A71]
- UNIFIED ON/OFF CONTROL [DCS301C71]
- CENTRALIZED REMOTE CONTROL [DCS302C71]
- SCHEDULE TIMER [DST301BA61]
- DIII-NET ADAPTOR FOR MULTI/MINI SPLITS [KRP928B2S]

The following centralized controller cannot be installed with the DTA118A51 in the same DIII-Net network.

- MODBUS ADAPTOR [DTA116A51]
- GROUP CONTROL ADAPTOR [KRP4A]
- WIRING ADAPTOR FOR ELECTRICAL APPENDICES [KRP2A516]
- OUTDOOR UNIT MODE CHANGEOVER / DEMAND CONTROL [DTA104]
- SYSTEM ON/OFF FROM A CONTROL SYSTEM [DCS302A]
- BACNET INTERFACE [DMS502B71]
- LONWORKS® INTERFACE [DMS504C71]
- ITM BACNET SERVER GATEWAY OPTION [DCM014A51]

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A71 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

SUPPORTED MODELS AND OBJECTS

Point Name	VRV Indoor	SkyAir indoor unit, FDMQ,FFQ_Q (except FTXS)	VAM	Outdoor air processing unit	Mini-Split & SkyAir FTXS indoor units (KRP928)
Unit On_Off Status	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Unit On/Off Command	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Alarm Status	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Operation Mode (Note 3,4)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ventilation Mode	Invalid	Invalid	✓	Invalid	Invalid
Ventilation Rate	Invalid	Invalid	✓	Invalid	Invalid
Fresh Up	Invalid	Invalid	✓	Invalid	Invalid
Room Temperature	✓	✓	Invalid	Entering Air	✓
Cooling Setpoint (Note 2)	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	✓
Heating Setpoint (Note 2)	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	✓
Fan Speed	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Airflow Direction	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Remote Controller Prohibit (On_Off)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Remote Controller Prohibit (Operation Mode)	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	✓
Remote Controller Prohibit (Setpoint)	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	✓
Filter Sign Status	✓	✓	✓	✓	Invalid
Filter sign Reset	✓	✓	✓	✓	Invalid
Indoor Unit Fan Status	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Communication Status	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Thermo On status	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Compressor Status	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Aux Heater Status	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Forced Thermo Off	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Indoor unit changeover option	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	✓
Return air temperature (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Discharge air temperature (Note 5,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Liquid pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Gas pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
EV position (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
OU Airnet address (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Forced Stop status	✓	✓	✓	✓	Invalid
Energy saving command (Setpoint shift)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid

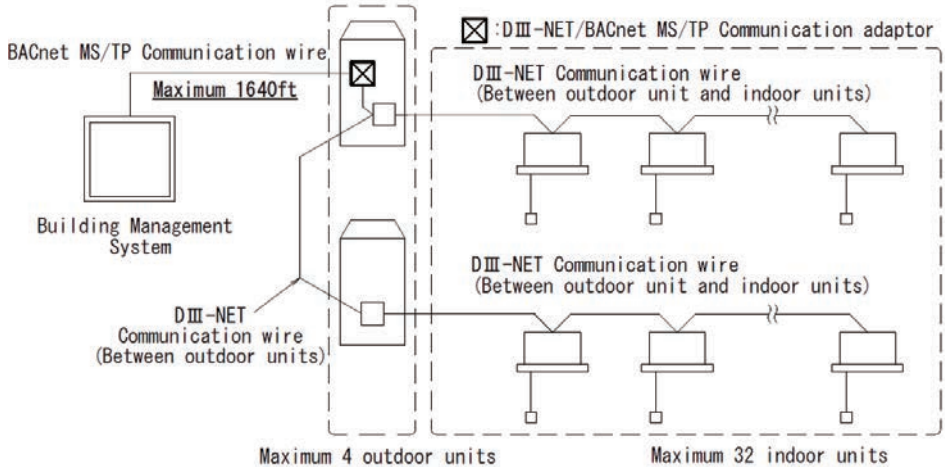
Daikin Comfort Technologies North America, Inc., 19001 Kermier Road, Waller, TX, 77484
www.daikinac.com www.daikincity.com

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A71 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

SYSTEM DIAGRAM:



Note

- The total wiring length of the BACnet MS/TP Communication wire must be within 1640ft.
- A maximum of 32 indoor units and 4 outdoor units can be controlled and monitored using the adaptor.
- A maximum of two adaptors can be connected to one DIII-Net network.
- A maximum of 32 devices can be connected to the same BACnet MS/TP network as the adaptor.
- D III-NET Expansion Adaptor (DTA109) cannot be connected between ADP and indoor / outdoor units on DIII line
- The adaptor requires another Daikin controller or VRV outdoor unit to able to integrate units other than VRV indoor unit.
- Mounting:
  - **RXYQ72 XA or T(A), REYQ72 XA or T(A), RWE**, RXTQ**, RXSQ**:** The adaptor cannot be mounted inside the outdoor unit. The adaptor is mounted at the indoor or at externally in the building using a suitable enclosure.
  - **REYQ_AA/RXYQ_AA:** The adaptor can be mounted inside the E-box of the outdoor unit.
  - **REYQ_XA/RXYQ_XA, REYQ_T(A)/RXYQ_T(A), RELQ_TA/RXLQ_TA:** The adaptor can be mounted inside the E-box of the outdoor unit using the BKS26A-US mounting plate.

DOCUMENTATION:

Documentation available on www.daikincity.com and/or www.daikinac.com:

- Submittal
- Installation Manual
- Guide Specification

3.22 DTA118A72 BACnet MS/TP adaptor

Please ask your DAIKIN dealer for more specific information such as applicable models.

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A72 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

MODEL COMPATIBILITY:

Compatible with VRV, VAM** and SkyAir models that are using DIII-Net communication.

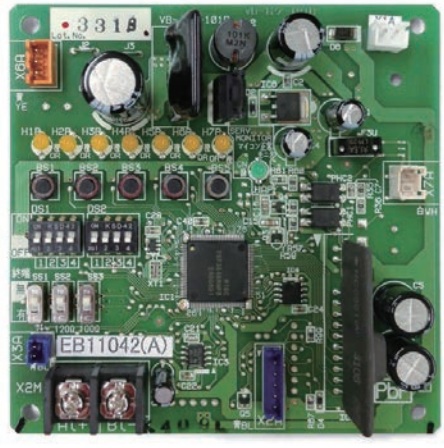
Compatible Mini split/Multi-split units	
FFQ_LVJU	Requires Interface Adaptor DTA112BA51
FTXS, CTXS, CTXG, FTXG, FDXS, CDXS, FVXS, FTXR	Requires DIII-Net Adapter KRP928BB2S**
FTX, FTXN, FTK, and FTKN	Requires DIII-Net Adapter KRP928BB2S** and an Interface adaptor KRP067A41E/KRP980B1/KRP980B2E
FDMQ, FFQ_Q	Use F1-F2 connection on the indoor unit.

*FTK_AXVJU, FTKB_AXVJU, FTX_AXVJU,FTXB_AXVJU, CTX_AXVJU, FTK_BXVJU, FTX_BXVJU_FTXB_BXVJU units are not compatible.
** Requires at least one VRV outdoor unit, SkyAir outdoor unit (RZQ/RZR) or a VRV centralized controller in the DIII-Net network.

SPECIFICATIONS:

Model	DTA118A72
Description	DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Communication Adaptor
Maximum Connections	32 Indoor Units / 4 Outdoor Units
Communication Wire (DIII-Net)	18 AWG-2, No polarity Stranded, Non-shielded
Communication Wire (BACnet)	18 AWG, polarity sensitive
Total Wiring Length (BACnet)	1,640 ft. (500 m)
Communication Protocol	BACnet MS/TP / DIII-Net
Communication Speed (BACnet)	9600bps/19200bps/38400bps
Indoor unit Group Address Range	(1-00 to 2-15) or (3-00 to 4-15)
Outdoor unit Airnet Address Range	00-04,05-08,08-12,13-16,17-20,21-24,25-28,29-32,33-36,37-40,41-44,45-48,49-52,53-56,57-60,61-63
BACnet MS/TP MAC Address Range	0-127
BACnet devices in the network	32
Power	16VDC supplied by Outdoor Unit (1.58VA maximum)
Operating Temp Range	-4 to 149°F (-20 to 65°C)
Operating Humidity Range	95% or less (RH) (w/o condensation)
Dimensions (WxH)	3.94 x 3.94 inch (100 x 100 mm)
Weight (Mass)	0.18 lbs. (80 g)

PRODUCT IMAGE:



Daikin Comfort Technologies North America, Inc., 19001 Kermier Road, Waller, TX, 77484
www.daikinac.com www.daikincity.com

(Daikin's products are subject to continuous improvements. Daikin reserves the right to modify product design, specifications and information in this data sheet without notice and without incurring any obligations)

Page **1** of **7**

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A72 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

FEATURES:

- Direct connection to the BMS using BACnet MS/TP protocol.
- BTL Certified device
- Easy commissioning using DIP switches & BACnet Objects.
- Each adaptor can connect to 4 outdoor units and 32 indoor units.
- BACnet virtual router function implemented: Individual BACnet device ID assigned to each indoor unit group address and outdoor unit Airnet address.
- Independent heating and cooling setpoints.
- Can be mounted to indoor unit or outdoor units (Select models only)
- BACnet objects for operation data (compatible outdoor units and indoor unit data).
- Supports Celsius or Fahrenheit for temperature values.
- Independent BACnet object error status for indoor unit and outdoor unit.

POINTS LIST:

- **System configuration points**

Point Name	Description
D3 control address indoor	Sets the range of indoor unit address to monitor and control.
D3 control address outdoor	Sets the range of outdoor unit address to monitor and control.
Device instance method	Sets BACnet device instance method of virtual devices.
Adaptor device instance	Sets adaptor BACnet device instance.
Network number	Sets the BACnet network number for virtual device.
Baud rate	Sets BACnet baud rate
Sets scale	Sets the temperature scale for BACnet Objects

- **Indoor unit points**

Point Name	Description
Unit On_Off Status	Monitors and displays indoor unit On or Off status
Unit On/Off Command	Command indoor unit On or Off
Alarm Status	Monitors whether the indoor unit is operating normally and issues an alarm if the indoor unit has a malfunction. Error Code is shown in the description.
Operation Mode (Note 3,4)	Command and monitor indoor unit operation mode
Ventilation Mode	Command and monitor ventilation unit operation mode
Ventilation Rate	Command and monitor ventilation unit airflow rate
Fresh Up	Command and monitor fresh up setting for a ventilation unit.
Room Temperature	Monitor the room temperature of the indoor unit
Cooling Setpoint (Note 2)	Command and monitor the indoor unit cooling setpoint
Heating Setpoint (Note 2)	Command and monitor the indoor unit heating setpoint
Fan Speed	Sets the indoor unit fan speed and monitors the latest setting
Airflow Direction	Command and monitor the indoor unit airflow direction (louver control)
Remote Controller Prohibit (On_Off)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's On/Off

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A72 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

Remote Controller Prohibit (Operation Mode)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's operation mode
Remote Controller Prohibit (On_Off)	Permits or prohibits the remote controller to control the indoor unit's setpoint
Filter Sign Status	Monitors and displays the filter run time and provides service alert.
Filter sign Reset	Clears the filter sign status
Indoor Unit Fan Status	Monitors and displays indoor unit fan status
Communication Status	Monitor if the communication is Normal or in Alarm
Thermo On status	Monitors and displays whether the indoor unit is actively cooling or heating.
Compressor Status	Monitors and displays if the compressor of the outdoor unit is On/Off/Defrost
Aux Heater Status	Monitors if the external heater controlled by the indoor unit is operating
Forced Thermo Off	Command Forced Thermo Off for the target indoor unit.
Indoor unit changeover option	Monitors if the indoor unit can change modes between heating and cooling
Return air temperature (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the return air temperature
Discharge air temperature (Note 5,7)	Monitors and displays the discharge air temperature of the FXMQ_PB indoor unit only.
Liquid pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature.
Gas pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the gas pipe temperature.
EV position (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays the expansion valve position.
ODU Airnet address (Note 6,7)	Monitors and displays outdoor unit Airnet address.
Forced Stop status	Monitors and displays forced stop status
Energy saving command (Setpoint shift)	Control and monitor energy savings command.

1. Refer to design guide & submittal datasheet for the indoor unit point combability.
2. The Mini-Splits have varied setpoints ranges (64F – 90F in cooling and 50F – 86F in heating). In the event a value outside of the available setpoint range is sent from the BACnet building management system via BACnet Adaptor, the indoor unit will ignore the out of range setpoint command (However, in the above case, the BACnet Adaptor can only send the cooling setpoint value and heating setpoint value of between 64F-82F.)
3. Only Ventilation cleaning on VAM.
4. Fan, Dry, and Auto are not supported when using the KRP928 adaptor for Mini-split integration to the DIII-Net.
5. Unit types other than those supported display an invalid value (0)
6. The data is invalid for models that do not support the target data.
7. For FXDQ, FXHQ and FHQ units a valid value cannot be displayed.

- **Outdoor unit points**

Point Name	Description
Communication Status	Monitors and displays the communication status
Operation Mode	Monitors and displays the operation mode (Cool, Heat, Fan or Heat &Cool)
Outdoor unit Alarm Status	Monitors whether the outdoor unit is operating normally
Special Modes	Monitors and displays if a unit is defrost/oil-return/pump down or restart standby sequence.
Electric Power	Monitors and displays the electric power (calculated)
Electric Current	Monitors and displays the electric current (calculated).
Outdoor Air Temperature	Monitors and displays the outdoor air temperature
Backup Operation	Monitors and displays if the outdoor unit is in backup operation
Stepdown control	Monitors and displays if the outdoor unit is in stepdown control.
Condensing Pressure	Monitors and displays the condensing pressure
Evaporating Pressure	Monitors and displays the evaporating pressure

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A72 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

Condensing Temperature	Monitors and displays the condensing temperature
Evaporating Temperature	Monitors and displays the evaporating temperature
Inverter Compressor 1 Speed	Monitors and displays the speed of the inverter compressor 1
Inverter Compressor 2 Speed	Monitors and displays the speed of the inverter compressor 2
Fan Step	Monitors and displays the fan step
EV Position 1	Monitors and displays the position of the expansion valve 1
EV Position 2	Monitors and displays the position of the expansion valve 2
Hot Gas Temperature (Compressor 1)	Monitors and displays the hot gas temperature of the compressor 1
Hot Gas Temperature (Compressor 2)	Monitors and displays the hot gas temperature of the compressor 2
Liquid Pipe Temperature	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature
Sub Compressor Body Temperature	Monitors and displays the compressor body temperature.
Liquid Pipe Temperature (HX Upper)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature for the upper HX
Liquid Pipe Temperature (HX Lower)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature for the lower HX
Liquid Pipe Temperature (Deicer)	Monitors and displays the liquid pipe temperature for the de-icer
Gas Pipe Temperature (HX Upper	Monitors and displays the gas pipe temperature for the upper HX
Gas Pipe Temperature (HX Lower)	Monitors and displays the gas pipe temperature for the lower HX
Suction Temperature	Monitors and displays the suction temperature
Compressor Suction Temperature	Monitors and displays the compressor's suction temperature
Subcool Inlet Temperature	Monitors and displays the subcool inlet temperature
Subcool Outlet Temperature	Monitors and displays the subcool outlet temperature
Compressor Body Temperature	Monitors and displays the sub compressor body temperature
Receiver Inlet Temperature	Monitor and displays the Receiver Inlet Temperature.
Subcool EV Position	Monitors and displays the subcool expansion valve position
4WayValve	Monitors and displays the 4 Way valve position
Compressor1 current	Monitors and displays the Compressor 1 current (calculated)
Compressor2 current	Monitors and displays the compressor 2 current (calculated)

Compatible outdoor units.

- VRV4: RXYQ_T(A), REYQ_T(A), RXLQ_T(A), RELQ_T(A)
- VRV 4X: REYQ_XA, RXYQ_XA
- VRV4S: RXTQ_TA
- VRV LIFE: RXSQ_TA
- VRVW (T): RWEQ_T
- RWEYQ72PCTJ & RWEYQ72PCYD
- VRV Emerion: REYQ_AA, RXYQ_AA

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A72 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

FUNCTION COMPATIBILITY:

The following centralized controller can be installed with the DTA118A72.

- INTELLIGENT TOUCH CONTROLLER (ITC / ITOUCH) [DCS601C71]
- INTELLIGENT TOUCH MANAGER (ITM) [DCM601A71]
- UNIFIED ON/OFF CONTROL [DCS301C71]
- CENTRALIZED REMOTE CONTROL [DCS302C71]
- SCHEDULE TIMER [DST301BA61]
- DIII-NET ADAPTOR FOR MULTI/MINI SPLITS [KRP928B2S]

The following centralized controller cannot be installed with the DTA118A72 in the same DIII-Net network.

- MODBUS ADAPTOR [DTA116A51]
- GROUP CONTROL ADAPTOR [KRP4A]
- WIRING ADAPTOR FOR ELECTRICAL APPENDICES [KRP2A516]
- OUTDOOR UNIT MODE CHANGEOVER / DEMAND CONTROL [DTA104]
- SYSTEM ON/OFF FROM A CONTROL SYSTEM [DCS302A]
- BACNET INTERFACE [DMS502B71]
- LONWORKS® INTERFACE [DMS504C71]
- ITM BACNET SERVER GATEWAY OPTION [DCM014A51]

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A72 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

SUPPORTED MODELS AND OBJECTS

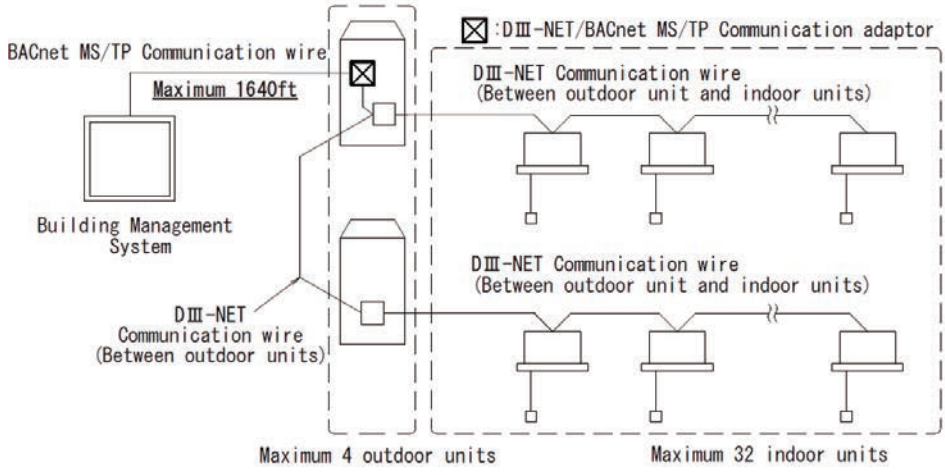
Point Name	VRV Indoor	SkyAir indoor unit, FDMQ,FFQ_Q (except FTXS)	VAM	Outdoor air processing unit	Mini-Split & SkyAir FTXS indoor units (KRP928)
Unit On_Off Status	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Unit On/Off Command	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Alarm Status	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Operation Mode (Note 3,4)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ventilation Mode	Invalid	Invalid	✓	Invalid	Invalid
Ventilation Rate	Invalid	Invalid	✓	Invalid	Invalid
Fresh Up	Invalid	Invalid	✓	Invalid	Invalid
Room Temperature	✓	✓	Invalid	Entering Air	✓
Cooling Setpoint (Note 2)	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	✓
Heating Setpoint (Note 2)	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	✓
Fan Speed	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Airflow Direction	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Remote Controller Prohibit (On_Off)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Remote Controller Prohibit (Operation Mode)	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	✓
Remote Controller Prohibit (Setpoint)	✓	✓	Invalid	Invalid	✓
Filter Sign Status	✓	✓	✓	✓	Invalid
Filter sign Reset	✓	✓	✓	✓	Invalid
Indoor Unit Fan Status	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Communication Status	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Thermo On status	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Compressor Status	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Aux Heater Status	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Forced Thermo Off	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	Invalid
Indoor unit changeover option	✓	✓	Invalid	✓	✓
Return air temperature (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Discharge air temperature (Note 5,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Liquid pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Gas pipe temperature (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
EV position (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
OU Airnet address (Note 6,7)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Forced Stop status	✓	✓	✓	✓	Invalid
Energy saving command (Setpoint shift)	✓	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid

Submittal Data Sheet

DTA118A72 – DIII-Net/BACnet MS/TP Adaptor

Project Name:	
Location:	Approval:
Engineer:	Date:
Submitted to:	Construction:
Submitted by:	Unit #:
Reference:	Drawing #:

SYSTEM DIAGRAM:



Note

- The total wiring length of the BACnet MS/TP Communication wire must be within 1640ft.
- A maximum of 32 indoor units and 4 outdoor units can be controlled and monitored using the adaptor.
- A maximum of two adaptors can be connected to one DDIII-Net network.
- A maximum of 32 devices can be connected to the same BACnet MS/TP network as the adaptor.
- DIII--NET Expansion Adaptor (DTA109) cannot be connected between ADP and indoor / outdoor units on DIII- line
- The adaptor requires another Daikin controller or VRV outdoor unit to able to integrate units other than VRV indoor unit.
- Mounting:
  - **RXYQ72 XA or T(A), REYQ72 XA or T(A), RWE**, RXTQ**, RXSQ**:** The adaptor cannot be mounted inside the outdoor unit. The adaptor is mounted at the indoor or externally in the building using a suitable enclosure.
  - **REYQ_AA/RXYQ_AA:** The adaptor can be mounted inside the E-box of the outdoor unit.
  - **REYQ_XA/RXYQ_XA, REYQ_T(A)/RXYQ_T(A), RELQ_TA/RXLQ_TA:** The adaptor can be mounted inside the E-box of the outdoor unit using the BKS26A-US mounting plate.

DOCUMENTATION:

Documentation available on www.daikincity.com and/or www.daikinac.com:

- Submittal
- Installation Manual
- Guide Specification

4. Trademark Disclaimer

BACnet™ is a trademark of ASHRAE.
LONWORK® is a registered trademark of Echelon Corporation.
Modbus® is a registered trademark of Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
WAGO® is a registered trademark of WAGO KONTAKTTECHNIK GMBH
The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks are under license.
Google, Google Assistant, and all related logos are trademarks of Google, or its affiliates.
Amazon, Alexa, and all related logos are trademarks of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.

Warning

- Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install this product. Do not try to install the product yourself. Improper installation can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Use only those parts and accessories supplied or specified by Daikin. Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install those parts and accessories. Use of unauthorised parts and accessories or improper installation of parts and accessories can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Read the user's manual carefully before using this product. The user's manual provides important safety instructions and warnings. Be sure to follow these instructions and warnings.

If you have any inquiries, please contact your local importer, distributor and/or retailer.

Cautions on product corrosion

1. Air conditioners should not be installed in areas where corrosive gases, such as acid gas or alkaline gas, are produced.
2. If the outdoor unit is to be installed close to the sea shore, direct exposure to the sea breeze should be avoided. If you need to install the outdoor unit close to the sea shore, contact your local distributor.

●Specifications, designs and other content appearing in this brochure are current as of March 2024 but subject to change without notice.